NEMA Standards Publication TS 2-1998
Amendment 1 (Approved November 29, 2001)

Traffic Controller Assemblies with NTCIP Requirements

Published by:

National Electrical Manufacturers Association
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1847
Rosslyn, VA 22209

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association. All rights including translation into other languages, reserved under the Universal Copyright Convention, the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works, and the International and Pan American Copyright Conventions.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NOTICE AND DISCLAIMER

The information in this publication was considered technically sound by the consensus of persons engaged in the development and approval of the document at the time it was developed. Consensus does not necessarily mean that there is unanimous agreement among every person participating in the development of this document.

The National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) standards and guideline publications, of which the document contained herein is one, are developed through a voluntary consensus standards development process. This process brings together volunteers and/or seeks out the views of persons who have an interest in the topic covered by this publication. While NEMA administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the development of consensus, it does not write the document and it does not independently test, evaluate, or verify the accuracy or completeness of any information or the soundness of any judgments contained in its standards and guideline publications.

NEMA disclaims liability for any personal injury, property, or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential, or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, application, or reliance on this document. NEMA disclaims and makes no guaranty or warranty, express or implied, as to the accuracy or completeness of any information published herein, and disclaims and makes no warranty that the information in this document will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. NEMA does not undertake to guarantee the performance of any individual manufacturer or seller's products or services by virtue of this standard or guide.

In publishing and making this document available, NEMA is not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity, nor is NEMA undertaking to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to someone else. Anyone using this document should rely on his or her own independent judgment or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances. Information and other standards on the topic covered by this publication may be available from other sources, which the user may wish to consult for additional views or information not covered by this publication.

NEMA has no power, nor does it undertake to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this document. NEMA does not certify, test, or inspect products, designs, or installations for safety or health purposes. Any certification or other statement of compliance with any health or safety–related information in this document shall not be attributable to NEMA and is solely the responsibility of the certifier or maker of the statement.

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TS 2-1998 Amendment 1

The text of TS 2-1998, Section 8, Bus Interface Unit, pages 8-1 through 8-8, has been revised. Additional information has been provided on the pages for the following clauses:

8.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS

8.5.1 Initialization

8.7.1 Communications Port Electrical Requirements

8.8.4 Outputs

8.8.4.1.4 TX Output Shorts

8.8.5.2 Opto Inputs

8.8.5.4 24 Volt Signal Inputs

8.8.5.4.2 Function Inputs

8.8.5.5 Data Receive Input (RX) for BIU Type BIU2

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Section 8
BUS INTERFACE UNIT

8.1 GENERAL

The BIU performs the interface between Port 1 at the CU and the TF, Loop Detector Rack(s), and other devices. Its functions include controlling load switch outputs, Detector Resets, communicating with Inductive Loop Detectors and other devices (BIU2), and the conditioning and conversion of TF and Loop Detector call inputs for the CU.

8.2 PHYSICAL

8.2.1 Material

All ferrous metal parts shall be protected against corrosion. All materials shall be moisture and fungus resistant.

8.2.2 Printed Circuits

Printed circuits shall meet the requirements of **3.2.3**.

8.2.3 Dimensions

The BIU shall be 59.436 mm (2.34 in.) W x 114.3 mm (4.50 in.) H x 165.1 mm (6.50 in.) D as illustrated in Figure 8-1.

The BIU assembly shall slide freely into two card guides, each having a nominal slot width of 1.905 mm (.075 in.) and a maximum slot depth of 3.175 mm (.125 in.). The edges of the BIU assembly shall be clear of protrusions on both sides for an area of 3.175 mm (.125 in.) in height for the entire length of the assembly. The nominal thickness of the edges of the BIU assembly shall be 1.575 mm (.062 in.) $\pm$ 0.203 mm (.008 in.).

8.3 CONFIGURATIONS

This standard covers Bus Interface Unit configurations as shown in Table 8-1. The BIU type shall be shown on the front panel of the BIU.

Table 8-1
BIU TYPES

NEMA BIU Designation	Rack Communication Port RX & TX
BIU	No
BIU2	Yes

The two BIU types are not keyed differently. It is up to the user to ensure the correct BIU type required for the user's application is inserted into the rack. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

8.4 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

The BIU shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in Section 2, Environmental Requirements.

8.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS

The BIU shall require a nominal supply voltage of 24 VDC $\pm$ 2 VDC. A voltage of 16 VDC or less shall be considered loss of power and a voltage of 18 VDC or more shall be considered adequate for operation. On initial application of power, current draw shall be limited to a maximum of 1.25 amperes peak. Upon reaching steady state, the BIU shall require no more than 200 mA over the voltage range of 16 to 30 VDC.

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

For testing, a short of +24VDC IN to LOGIC GROUND is considered one form of a loss of power.

The BIU shall not be damaged by insertion to or removal from a powered BIU Rack or Detector Rack.

8.5.1 Initialization

a. Upon application of DC power, the BIU shall be fully functional within 1000 milliseconds. The initialized state of the BIU shall set all outputs to the 24 volt level.

b. During the loss of DC power to the BIU for 700 milliseconds or less, the BIU shall maintain the control state of its outputs. If DC power is restored to the BIU within 700 milliseconds following the loss of DC power, the BIU shall maintain the state of its outputs until they are updated by valid Port 1 activity.

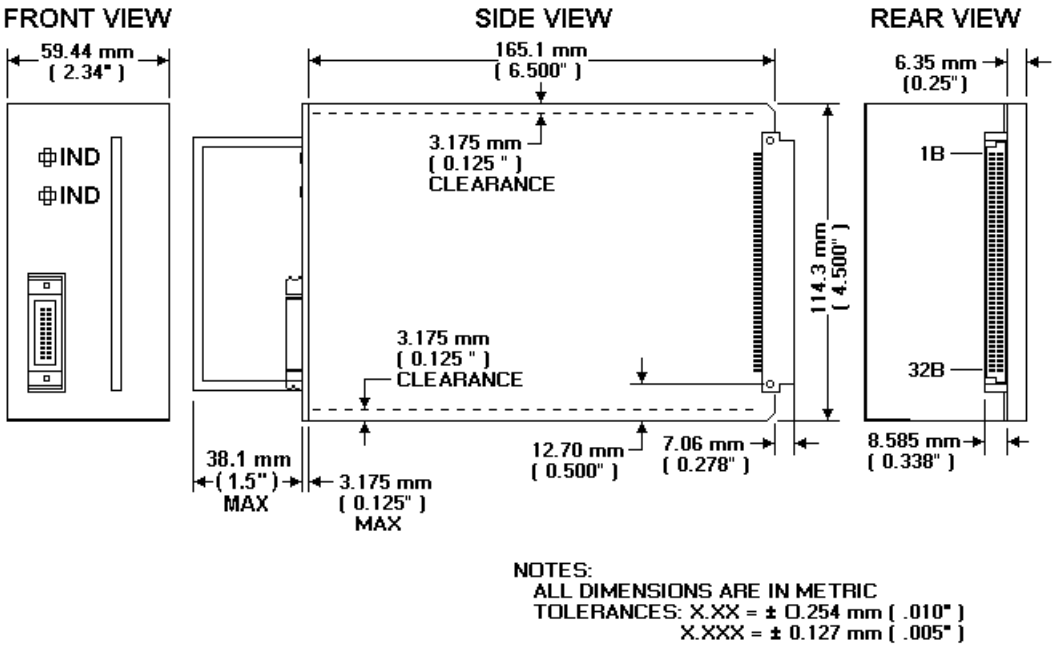


Figure 8-1
BUS INTERFACE UNIT

c. Following the loss of DC power to the BIU for more than 700 milliseconds and less than 1.5 seconds, the BIU shall operate in accordance with 8.5.1.2 or 8.5.1.4.

d. Following the loss of DC power to the BIU for 1.5 seconds or greater, the BIU shall turn off all of its outputs and reinitialize all internal operations upon restoration of DC power.

e. Within 8 milliseconds of loss of power, the BIU shall cease Port 1 Communications. If DC power is restored to the BIU within 700 milliseconds following the loss of DC power, the BIU shall resume Port 1 Communications within 200 milliseconds of restoration of power.

8.6 INDICATORS

The BIU shall have two status indicators to represent adequate supply voltage, internal operations, and valid communications.

8.6.1 Power On Indicator

This indicator shall illuminate when the applied DC voltage is considered adequate as described in 0 and the BIU internal logic is operating properly. This indicator shall be OFF if either of these conditions are false.

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.6.2 Port 1 Indicator

This indicator shall illuminate for a duration not less than 20 milliseconds and not more than 50 milliseconds each time the BIU transmits on its Port 1 output.

8.6.3 Rack TX Indicator (BIU2 Only)

This indicator shall illuminate for a duration not less than 20 milliseconds and not more than 50 milliseconds each time the BIU transmits on its rack TX output.

8.7 BIU-TO-RACK COMMUNICATION PORT FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS (BIU2 ONLY)

The protocol for this communication port is under definition.

8.7.1 Communication Port Electrical Requirements

This port (RX and TX and Logic Ground) is an unbalanced, +5 volt nominal, NRZ (Non-Return To Zero) format, asynchronous serial communication port. See BIU Data Receive Input (RX) 8.8.5.5 for RX specification details and Data Transmit Output (TX) in 8.8.4.1 for TX specification details.

8.7.2 Baud Rate

The port shall be capable of operation at a baud rate of 9600 bps ±1%. The width of 1 bit shall be the reciprocal of the baud rate.

8.8 INTERFACE REQUIREMENTS

8.8.1 Port 1 Communications

Defined in **3.3.1**.

8.8.2 Port 1 Connector

The Port 1 connector shall be a 15 pin metal shell “D” sub miniature type. The connector shall utilize female contacts with 15 millionths of an inch minimum gold plating in the mating area. The connector shall be equipped with latching blocks. The connector shall intermate with a 15 pin D type connector, Amp Incorporated part number 205206-1, or equivalent, which is equipped with spring latches, Amp Incorporated part number 745012-1, or equivalent.

8.8.2.1 Port 1 Connector Pin Assignments

Pin	Function
1	Rx Data +
2	Logic Ground
3	Rx Clock +
4	Logic Ground
5	Tx Data +
6	Logic Ground
7	Tx Clock +
8	Logic Ground
9	Rx Data -
10	Not Used
11	Rx Clock -
12	Earth Ground
13	Tx Data -
14	Reserved
15	Tx Clock -

NOTE - Tx pins at the BIU = Rx pins at the CU; Rx pins at the BIU = Tx pins at the CU.

8.8.3 Card Rack Connector

The BIU card rack connector shall be a male 64 pin DIN 41612 type B series. The connector shall be centered at the edge of the circuit board and oriented with pin 1 located at the top of the unit. The circuit board edge shall align with the connector per DIN 41612.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.8.3.1 Connector Pin Assignments for BIU Type BIU

Pin	Row A Function	Row B Function
1	+24 VDC IN	+24 VDC IN
2	Output 1	Output 2
3	Output 3	Output 4
4	Output 5	Output 6
5	Output 7	Output 8
6	Output 9	Output 10
7	Output 11	Output 12
8	Output 13	Output 14
9	Output 15	Input / Output 1
10	Input / Output 2	Input / Output 3
11	Input / Output 4	Input / Output 5
12	Input / Output 6	Input / Output 7
13	Input / Output 8	Input / Output 9
14	Input / Output 10	Input / Output 11
15	Input / Output 12	Input / Output 13
16	Input / Output 14	Input / Output 15
17	Input / Output 16	Input / Output 17
18	Input / Output 18	Input / Output 19
19	Input / Output 20	Input / Output 21
20	Input / Output 22	Input / Output 23
21	Input / Output 24	Input 1
22	Input 2	Input 3
23	Input 4	Input 5
24	Input 6	Input 7
25	Input 8	Opto Input 1
26	Opto Input 2	Opto Input 3
27	Opto Input 4	Opto Common
28	Address Select 0	Address Select 1
29	Address Select 2	Address Select 3
30	Reserved	Reserved
31	Earth Ground	Line Frequency Reference
32	Logic Ground	Logic Ground

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.8.3.2 Connector Pin Assignments for BIU Type BIU2

Pin	Row A Function	Row B Function
1	+24 VDC IN	+24 VDC IN
2	Output 1	Output 2
3	Output 3	Output 4
4	Output 5	Output 6
5	Output 7	Output 8
6	Output 9	Output 10
7	Output 11	Output 12
8	Output 13	Output 14
9	Output 15	Input / Output 1
10	Input / Output 2	Input / Output 3
11	Input / Output 4	Input / Output 5
12	Input / Output 6	Input / Output 7
13	Input / Output 8	Input / Output 9
14	Input / Output 10	Input / Output 11
15	Input / Output 12	Input / Output 13
16	Input / Output 14	Input / Output 15
17	Input / Output 16	Input / Output 17
18	Input / Output 18	Input / Output 19
19	Input / Output 20	Input / Output 21
20	Input / Output 22	Input / Output 23
21	Input / Output 24	Input 1
22	Input 2	Input 3
23	Input 4	Input 5
24	Input 6	Input 7
25	Input 8	Opto Input 1
26	Opto Input 2	Opto Input 3
27	Opto Input 4	Opto Common
28	Address Select 0	Address Select 1
29	Address Select 2	Address Select 3
30	Data Transmit Output (TX)	Data Receive Input (RX)
31	Earth Ground	Line Frequency Reference
32	Logic Ground	Logic Ground

8.8.4 Outputs

BIU pins labeled Output (n) and Input / Output (n) shall provide output from the BIU to the TF and Detector Racks as programmed in the respective Command Frame (**3.3.1.4**). The **On** (**Low**) state for an output shall require a logic **1** bit in the respective Command Frame, and the **Off** (**High**) state for an output shall require a logic **0** bit in the respective Command Frame.

Output characteristics shall be as follows:

a. The **Low** (operate) voltage shall be between 0 and 4 volts.

b. Current sinking capability in the **Low** state (**True**) shall be at least 50 milliamperes.

c. With an external impedance of 100k ohms or greater, the transition from 4 to 16 volts (and vice versa) shall be accomplished within 0.1 millisecond.

d. The **High** state (**False**) impedance shall not exceed 11 K ohms to +24 volts DC. The High (False) output voltage may track the +24 VDC input.

e. Any external steady-state voltage applied to an output terminal shall not exceed +30 volts DC, nor shall it cause flow of more than 3 milliamperes into the terminal, when the output is in the **High** state.

f. Any valid **True** output signal, except Load Switch Driver outputs when Dimming is enabled (**3.3.1.4**), shall dwell in this state for at least 50 milliseconds.

g. For the purpose of synchronizing all outputs of TF BIUs, Command Frames shall be transferred to the BIU output pins only upon receipt of a Type 18 Frame. The Type 18 Frame is received simultaneously by all BIUs. All TF BIUs shall update their outputs within 20 milliseconds after the receipt of the Type 18 Frame.

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.8.4.1 Data Transmit Output (TX) for BIU Type BIU2

This output shall have 2 states: Mark and Space. The state shall be a Mark when no data transmissions are taking place. The Transition Region shall be defined as any voltage between a Mark and a Space.

8.8.4.1.1 Mark State (Binary 1)

During Mark, the TX output shall be less than 0.5 VDC when sinking 4 milliamps DC current.

8.8.4.1.2 Space State (Binary 0)

During Space, the TX output shall be greater than 3.5 VDC when sourcing 4 milliamps DC current.

8.8.4.1.3 Output Impedance During Power Off

When power is OFF, the output impedance shall be greater than 300 ohms when measured with an applied voltage not greater than 2 volts in magnitude to circuit common.

8.8.4.1.4 TX Output Shorts

The TX output shall not be damaged when shorted to Logic Ground or + 5 VDC:

a. The TX output shall be capable of withstanding a continuous short to Logic Ground.

b. The TX output shall be capable of withstanding a continuous short to +5 VDC.

8.8.4.1.5 Rise/Fall Time

The transition time from the Space to the Mark voltage or from the Mark to the Space voltage shall be less than 2.5 microseconds or 4% of the bit time, whichever is less. This shall apply with 3750 picofarads attached to the TX output. There shall be no reversal of the direction of voltage change while the signal is in the Transition Region. The Transition Region shall not be reentered until the next change of signal condition.

8.8.4.1.6 Transient Withstand

The TX output shall not be damaged by application of the transients described in **2.1.7.1** through **2.1.7.5**.

8.8.5 Inputs

Type 138–141 Frames from a BIU shall report logic **0** bits for **False** (24V) inputs, and shall report logic **1** bits for **True** (ground) inputs. Opto Inputs 1 through 4 shall report logic 0 bits when inactive, and shall report logic 1 bits when active.

BIU Response Frame frequency is discussed in **3.3.1.5**. The states of the inputs reported by the BIU shall be the states of those inputs at the time the Positive Acknowledge Frame is prepared for sending.

Input signal recognition times allow more than 1 valid BIU input state between BIU input Response Frame. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

8.8.5.1 Opto Common

The **Opto Common** input is the common reference pin for four Optically Isolated Inputs.

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

8.8.5.2 Opto Inputs

The **Opto** inputs are intended to provide optical isolation for Pedestrian Detector and Remote Interconnect Inputs. The **Opto** inputs are intended to connect through external 27 K ohm, 1 Watt resistors for 120 VAC operation, and are intended for direct connection to 12 VAC from the cabinet power supply for Pedestrian Detector applications. These inputs may alternatively be used for low-true DC applications when the **Opto Common** pin is connected to the 24 volt supply. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

a. The **Opto** inputs shall provide electrical isolation of 10 megohms minimum resistance and 1000 VAC RMS minimum breakdown to all connector pins except the **Opto Common** pin.

b. These inputs shall exhibit a nominal impedance to the **Opto Common** pin of 5000 ohms $\pm$ 10% to the opto common input.

c. The **Opto** inputs shall not recognize 3 volts RMS (AC sinusoid or DC) or less relative to the common input.

d. The **Opto** inputs shall recognize 8 volts RMS (AC sinusoid or DC) or more relative to the common input.

e. Any steady state voltage applied between an **Opto** input and the **Opto Common** shall not exceed 35 VAC RMS.

f. **Opto** inputs shall not be acknowledged when active for 25 milliseconds or less, and shall be acknowledged when active for 50 milliseconds or more.

g. The **Opto** inputs to the BIU shall conform to **3.3.5.1.2** for voltage transient immunity.

8.8.5.3 Line Frequency Reference

The **Line Frequency Reference** input pin receives a square wave signal from the cabinet power supply for the purpose of synchronizing BIU outputs with the AC line.

Electrical characteristics for this input shall be as follows:

a. A voltage between 0 and 8 volts shall be considered the **Low** state, and shall occur when the AC line is in the positive half cycle.

b. A voltage between 16 and 26 volts shall be considered the **High** state, and shall occur when the AC line is in the negative half cycle.

c. The **Line Frequency Reference** input shall exhibit a nominal impedance of 10 K ohms $\pm$ 10% to the +24 VDC input, and shall not have more than 1000 picofarads of load capacitance.

d. The rise and fall time of the signal connected to this input shall not exceed 50 microseconds.

T&F BIUs shall exclude dimming operation when no transition occurs in the **Line Frequency Reference** input between Frame 18 transfers.

8.8.5.4 24 Volt Signal Inputs

The 24 Volt Signal Inputs to the BIU shall conform to **3.3.5.1.2** and **3.3.5.1.3** except as noted herein.

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.8.5.4.1 Address Select Inputs

The **Address Select** input bits define the logical position of each BIU. The pins are left open or floating for a logical **False**, and are connected to **Logic Ground** for a logical **True**. There shall be 16 unique address positions selected with a binary code, using bit 0 as least significant and bit 3 as most significant. Address bit connections are illustrated in Section 5, TF.

8.8.5.4.2 Function Inputs

When the **Address Select 3** input to the BIU is inactive, the BIU pins labeled Input (n) and Input/Output (n) shall provide input to the BIU from the TF as required in **5.3.1.2**.

When the **Address Select 3** input to the BIU is active (activating Detector Mode), the Function Input timing shall accommodate Loop Detector Calls and channel status as follows:

a. A Detector Call signal dwelling in a defined logic state for less than 0.25 milliseconds shall not be recognized.

b. A Detector Call signal dwelling in a defined logic state for 2 milliseconds or more shall be recognized.

c. Each Call input shall activate a time stamp feature within the BIU to enable accurate pulse width measurement. Details on this time stamp may be found in **3.3.1.4.2.6**.

d. Detector Channel Status shall be derived from pulse width modulation encoding. These shall conform to the eight status states as outlined in **6.5.2.26.3**.

e. The BIU shall have sufficient buffering to accumulate multiple states of Detector Channel Status between the once-per-second polls. Channel Status pulse width sequences already in process at the time of Type 152–155 Frames shall not be missed or truncated due to asynchronous polling, but shall be sent in the next poll.

8.8.5.5 Data Receive Input (RX) for BIU Type BIU2

The data receive input, RX, shall have an input impedance 3 Kohm to 7 Kohm and an input capacitance less than 250 picofarads. This input impedance shall terminate to Logic Ground. The input's open circuit voltage shall be less than 0.9 VDC. This input shall be functional when voltages over the range of ±25 VDC are applied to it. The Transition Region is any voltage between a Mark and a Space.

8.8.5.5.1 Mark State (Binary 1)

During Mark, the RX input shall recognize as a Mark voltages less than 0.9 VDC.

8.8.5.5.2 Space State (Binary 0)

During Space, the RX input shall recognize as a Space voltages greater than 3.0 VDC.

8.8.5.5.3 Transient Withstand

The RX input shall not be damaged by application of the transients described in **2.1.7.1** through **2.1.7.5**.

8.8.5.6 +24 VDC Input

The **+24 VDC** input connects to the cabinet power supply 24 volt output to the BIU.

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.8.5.7 Earth Ground

The **Earth Ground** input connects only to exposed electrically conductive panels or covers on the BIU. This input connects to **Earth Ground** in the TF, and shall not connect to **Logic Ground** within the BIU.

8.8.5.8 Logic Ground

This pin supplies the current return path to the power supply and all 24 volt inputs and outputs, and shall not connect to **Earth Ground** within the BIU.

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

<This page is intentionally left blank.>

© Copyright 2002 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NEMA Standards Publication TS 2-1998

Traffic Controller Assemblies
with NTCIP Requirements

Published by

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION

1300 N. 17th Street
Rosslyn, Virginia 22209

© Copyright 1998 by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association. All rights including translation into other languages, reserved under the Universal Copyright Convention, the Berne Convention or the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works, and the International and Pan American Copyright Conventions.

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

CONTENTS

Page

FOREWORD ..... **XVIII**

SCOPE ..... **XIX**

HISTORY ..... **XXII**

1. SECTION DEFINITIONS **1-1**

1.1 CONTROL EQUIPMENT 1-1
1.1.1 Auxiliary Equipment 1-1
1.1.2 Barrier 1-1
1.1.3 Cabinet 1-1
1.1.4 Call 1-1
1.1.4.1 Serviceable Conflicting Call 1-1
1.1.5 Check 1-1
1.1.6 Connector 1-1
1.1.6.1 Not Used Connections 1-1
1.1.6.2 Reserved Connections 1-2
1.1.6.3 Spare Connections 1-2
1.1.7 Controller Assembly 1-2
1.1.7.1 Flasher Controller Assembly 1-2
1.1.7.2 Full-Traffic-Actuated Controller Assembly 1-2
1.1.7.3 Isolated Controller Assembly 1-2
1.1.7.4 Master Controller Assembly 1-2
1.1.7.5 Master-Secondary Controller Assembly 1-2
1.1.7.6 Occupancy Controller Assembly (Lane-Occupancy Controller Or Demand Controller, And Presence Controller) 1-2
1.1.7.7 Pedestrian-Actuated Controller Assembly 1-2
1.1.7.8 Pretimed Controller Assembly 1-2
1.1.7.9 Secondary Controller Assembly (Slave) 1-2
1.1.7.10 Semi-Traffic-Actuated Controller Assembly 1-3
1.1.7.11 Traffic-Actuated Controller Assembly 1-3
1.1.8 Controller Unit 1-3
1.1.8.1 Digital Controller Unit 1-3
1.1.8.2 Multi-Ring Controller Unit 1-3
1.1.8.3 Single-Ring Controller Unit 1-3
1.1.9 Coordination 1-3
1.1.10 Coordinator 1-3
1.1.11 Cycle 1-3
1.1.11.1 Cycle Length 1-3
1.1.12 Density 1-3
1.1.13 Detector 1-3
1.1.14 Device 1-3
1.1.14.1 Electromechanical Device 1-3
1.1.14.2 Electronic Device 1-3
1.1.14.3 Solid-State Device 1-4
1.1.15 Dial 1-4
1.1.16 Dwell 1-4
1.1.17 Extension, Unit 1-4
1.1.18 Entry 1-4

© NEMA

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

1.1.18.1 Dual Entry 1-4
1.1.18.2 Single Entry 1-4
1.1.19 Flasher 1-4
1.1.20 Force Off 1-4
1.1.21 Gap Reduction 1-4
1.1.22 Hold 1-4
1.1.23 Interconnect 1-4
1.1.24 Interval 1-4
1.1.24.1 Minimum Green Interval 1-4
1.1.24.2 Pedestrian Clearance Interval 1-4
1.1.24.3 Red Clearance Interval 1-4
1.1.24.4 Sequence, Interval 1-5
1.1.24.5 Yellow Change Interval 1-5
1.1.25 Manual 1-5
1.1.25.1 Manual Operation 1-5
1.1.25.2 Manual Pushbutton 1-5
1.1.26 Maximum Green 1-5
1.1.27 Memory 1-5
1.1.27.1 Detector Memory 1-5
1.1.27.2 Nonlocking Memory 1-5
1.1.27.3 Non-Volatile Memory 1-5
1.1.27.4 Volatile Memory 1-5
1.1.27.5 Random Access Memory (RAM) 1-5
1.1.27.6 Read Only Memory (ROM) 1-5
1.1.27.7 Programmable Read Only Memory (PROM) 1-5
1.1.27.8 Programmable Read Only Memory (EPROM) 1-5
1.1.28 Malfunction Management Unit 1-5
1.1.29 Modular Design 1-6
1.1.30 Offset 1-6
1.1.31 Omit, Phase (Special Skip, Force Skip) 1-6
1.1.32 Overlap 1-6
1.1.33 Passage Time 1-6
1.1.34 Pattern 1-6
1.1.35 Phase 1-6
1.1.35.1 Traffic Phase 1-6
1.1.35.2 Conflicting Phases 1-6
1.1.35.3 Nonconflicting Phase 1-6
1.1.35.4 Pedestrian Phase 1-6
1.1.35.5 Phase Sequence 1-6
1.1.35.6 Parent Phase 1-6
1.1.35.7 Vehicular Phase 1-6
1.1.36 Portion 1-6
1.1.36.1 Extensible Portion 1-6
1.1.36.2 Initial Portion 1-7
1.1.36.3 Interval Portion 1-7
1.1.37 Preemption 1-7
1.1.38 Preemptor, Traffic Controller 1-7
1.1.39 Preferred Sequence 1-7
1.1.40 Progression 1-7
1.1.41 Red Indication, Minimum (Red Revert) 1-7
1.1.42 Rest 1-7
1.1.43 Ring 1-7
1.1.44 Split 1-7
1.1.45 Suppressors 1-7
1.1.45.1 Suppressor, Radio Interference 1-7

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.1.45.2 Suppressor, Transient 1-8
1.1.46 Switch 1-8
1.1.46.1 Auto/Manual Switch 1-8
1.1.46.2 Flash Control Switch 1-8
1.1.46.3 Power Line Switch (Disconnect Switch) 1-8
1.1.46.4 Recall Switch 1-8
1.1.46.5 Signal Load Switch 1-8
1.1.46.6 Signal Shut-Down Switch 1-8
1.1.47 Time Base Control 1-8
1.1.48 Terminals, Field 1-8
1.1.49 Timing 1-8
1.1.49.1 Analog Timing 1-8
1.1.49.2 Concurrent Timing 1-8
1.1.49.3 Digital Timing 1-8
1.1.49.4 Timing Plan 1-8
1.1.50 Yield 1-8
1.2 DETECTORS 1-8
1.2.1 Actuation 1-8
1.2.2 Antenna 1-9
1.2.3 Call 1-9
1.2.4 Detection 1-9
1.2.4.1 Advisory Detection 1-9
1.2.4.2 Passage Detection 1-9
1.2.4.3 Presence Detection 1-9
1.2.5 Detector 1-9
1.2.5.1 Bidirectional Detector 1-9
1.2.5.2 Calling Detector 1-9
1.2.5.3 Classification Detector 1-9
1.2.5.4 Directional Detector 1-9
1.2.5.5 Extension Detector 1-9
1.2.5.6 Infrared Detector 1-9
1.2.5.7 Light-Sensitive Detector 1-9
1.2.5.8 Loop Detector 1-9
1.2.5.9 Magnetic Detector 1-10
1.2.5.10 Magnetometer Detector 1-10
1.2.5.11 Nondirectional Detector 1-10
1.2.5.12 Pedestrian Detector 1-10
1.2.5.13 Pneumatic Detector 1-10
1.2.5.14 Pressure-Sensitive Detector 1-10
1.2.5.15 Radar Detector 1-10
1.2.5.16 System Detector 1-10
1.2.5.17 Side-Fire Detector 1-10
1.2.5.18 Sound-Sensitive Vehicle Detector 1-10
1.2.5.19 Ultrasonic Detector 1-10
1.2.6 Detector Mode 1-10
1.2.7 Inductive Loop Detector System 1-10
1.2.8 Inductive Loop Detector Unit 1-11
1.2.9 Lead-in Cable 1-11
1.2.10 Output 1-11
1.2.10.1 Extension Output 1-11
1.2.10.2 Delayed Output 1-11
1.2.11 Probe 1-11
1.2.12 Sensor 1-11
1.2.13 Vehicle Detector System 1-11
1.2.14 Zone of Detection (Sensing Zone) 1-11

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.3 SIGNAL 1-11
1.4 CROSS-REFERENCE DEFINITIONS 1-11

2. SECTION ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS 2-1

2.1 ENVIRONMENTAL AND OPERATING STANDARDS 2-1
2.1.1 Definitions of Major Units of the Controller Assembly 2-1
2.1.2 Operating Voltage 2-1
2.1.3 Operating Frequency 2-1
2.1.4 Power Interruption 2-1
2.1.4.1 Field Terminal Outputs 2-1
2.1.5 Temperature and Humidity 2-2
2.1.5.1 Ambient Temperature 2-2
2.1.5.2 Humidity 2-2
2.1.6 Transients, Power Service 2-2
2.1.6.1 High-Repetition Noise Transients 2-2
2.1.6.2 Low-Repetition High-Energy Transients 2-3
2.1.7 Transients, Input-Output Terminals 2-3
2.1.8 Nondestruct Transient Immunity 2-3
2.1.9 Vibration 2-3
2.1.10 Shock 2-3
2.2 CONTROLLER UNIT TESTS 2-3
2.2.1 Timing Accuracy 2-4
2.2.1.1 Deviation 2-4
2.2.1.2 Setability And Repeatability 2-4
2.2.2 Timing 2-4
2.2.3 Vibration 2-4
2.2.4 Shock 2-4
2.2.5 Test Facilities 2-4
2.2.6 Test Unit 2-4
2.2.7 Test Procedure: Transients, Temperature, Voltage, and Humidity 2-4
2.2.7.1 Test A: Placement In Environmental Chamber And Check-Out Of Hook-Up 2-4
2.2.7.2 Test B: Transient Tests (Power Service) 2-5
2.2.7.3 Test C—Low-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests 2-7
2.2.7.4 Test D—Low-Temperature High-Voltage Tests 2-8
2.2.7.5 Test E—High-Temperature High-Voltage Tests 2-8
2.2.7.6 Test F—High-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests 2-9
2.2.7.7 Test G—Test Termination 2-9
2.2.7.8 Test H—Appraisal Of Equipment Under Test 2-9
2.2.8 Vibration Test 2-10
2.2.8.1 Purpose Of Test 2-10
2.2.8.2 Test Equipment Requirements 2-10
2.2.8.3 Resonant Search 2-10
2.2.8.4 Endurance Test 2-11
2.2.8.5 Disposition Of Equipment Under Test 2-11
2.2.9 Shock (Impact) Test 2-11
2.2.9.1 Purpose Of Test 2-11
2.2.9.2 Test Equipment Requirements 2-11
2.2.9.3 Test Procedure 2-13
2.2.9.4 Disposition Of Test Unit 2-13
2.2.10 Power Interruption Tests 2-13
2.2.10.1 500-Millisecond Power Interruption 2-13
2.2.10.2 1000-Millisecond Power Interruption 2-13
2.2.11 Timing Accuracy Tests 2-14
2.2.11.1 Setability 2-14
2.2.11.2 Repeatability 2-14

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2.3 MALFUNCTION MANAGEMENT UNIT TESTS....2-14
2.3.1 Test Facilities....2-14
2.3.2 Standard Setup....2-14
2.3.3 Ground Isolation Test....2-15
2.3.4 1500 pF Input Test....2-15
2.3.5 Conflict Low Voltage Test....2-15
2.3.6 Conflict High Voltage Test....2-15
2.3.7 Red Input Test....2-15
2.3.8 Minimum Yellow Change/Red Clearance Interval....2-16
2.3.9 Port 1 Timeout....2-16
2.3.10 DC Voltage Monitoring....2-16
2.3.11 MMU Power Failure....2-17
2.3.12 Permissive Programming....2-17
2.3.13 Continuous Reset....2-17
2.3.14 Transient Tests....2-17
2.4 TERMINAL AND FACILITIES TESTS....2-18
2.5 LOAD SWITCH TESTS....2-18
2.5.1 Test Procedure For PIV And DV/DT Testing....2-18
2.6 FLASHER TESTS....2-19
2.6.1 Test Procedure For PIV And DV/DT Testing....2-19
2.7 FLASH TRANSFER RELAY TESTS....2-19
2.8 LOOP DETECTOR UNIT TESTS....2-20
2.8.1 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS....2-20
2.8.1.1 VOLTAGE, DC SUPPLY....2-20
2.8.1.2 Temperature and Humidity....2-20
2.8.1.3 Transients, DC Powered Units....2-20
2.8.1.4 Transients, Loop Detector Input Terminals....2-21
2.8.1.5 Vibration....2-21
2.8.1.6 Shock....2-22
2.9 BUS INTERFACE UNIT TESTS....2-23

3. SECTION CONTROLLER UNITS....3-1

3.1 DEFINITIONS....3-1
3.1.1 CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check)....3-1
3.1.2 Load Switch Driver Group....3-1
3.2 PHYSICAL STANDARDS....3-1
3.2.1 Dimensions....3-1
3.2.2 Design....3-1
3.2.3 Material and Construction of Rigid Printed Circuit Assemblies....3-1
3.2.3.1 Materials....3-1
3.2.3.2 Mating Surfaces....3-2
3.2.3.3 Component Identification....3-2
3.3 INTERFACE STANDARDS....3-2
3.3.1 Port 1 Physical and Protocol....3-2
3.3.1.1 Connector....3-2
3.3.1.2 Electrical Interface....3-3
3.3.1.2.1 Logic Ground and Earth Ground....3-3
3.3.1.2.2 Data and Clock Links....3-3
3.3.1.3 Data And Clock Communications Protocol....3-4
3.3.1.4 Information Field Formats....3-7
3.3.1.4.1 Primary Station (CU)....3-8
3.3.1.4.1.1 Type 0 Load Switch Drivers....3-8
3.3.1.4.1.2 Type 1 MMU Inputs / Status Request....3-11
3.3.1.4.1.3 Type 3 MMU Programming Request....3-11
3.3.1.4.1.4 Type 9 Date And Time Broadcast....3-11

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.3.1.4.1.5 Type 10 TF BIU #1 Outputs / Inputs Request 3-13
3.3.1.4.1.6 Type 11 TF BIU #2 Outputs / Inputs Request 3-14
3.3.1.4.1.7 Type 12 TF BIU #3 Outputs / Inputs Request 3-15
3.3.1.4.1.8 Type 13 TF BIU #4 Outputs / Inputs Request 3-15
3.3.1.4.1.9 Type 18 Output Transfer Frame 3-16
3.3.1.4.1.10 Type 20 DR BIU #1 Call Data Request 3-16
3.3.1.4.1.11 Types 21–23 DR BIUs #2-4 Call Data Request 3-16
3.3.1.4.1.12 Type 24 DR BIU #1 Reset / Diagnostic Request 3-16
3.3.1.4.1.13 Type 25-27 DR BIUs #2-4 Reset / Diagnostic Request 3-17
3.3.1.4.1.14 Type 30 Diagnostic Request 3-17
3.3.1.4.1.15 Type 40 Poll For Service 3-17
3.3.1.4.1.16 Type 41 Reserved 3-17
3.3.1.4.1.17 Type 42 Secondary Destination Message 3-17
3.3.1.4.1.18 Type 43 Secondary Exchange Status 3-18
3.3.1.4.2 Secondary Stations 3-19
3.3.1.4.2.1 Type 128 MMU (Type 0 ACK) 3-19
3.3.1.4.2.2 Type 129 MMU Inputs/Status (Type 1 ACK) 3-19
3.3.1.4.2.3 Type 131 MMU Programming (Type 3 ACK) 3-21
3.3.1.4.2.4 Type 138 TF BIU #1 Inputs (Type 10 ACK) 3-24
3.3.1.4.2.5 Types 139–141 TF BIU #2-4 Inputs (Type 11-13 ACK) 3-25
3.3.1.4.2.6 Type 148 DR BIU #1 Call Data (Type 20 ACK) 3-25
3.3.1.4.2.7 Types 149–151 DR BIU #2-4 Call Data (Type 21-23 ACK) 3-31
3.3.1.4.2.8 Type 152 DR BIU #1 Diagnostic (Type 24 ACK) 3-31
3.3.1.4.2.9 Types 153–155 DR BIU #2-4 Diagnostic (Type 25-27 ACK) 3-33
3.3.1.4.2.10 Type 158 Diagnostics (Type 30 ACK) 3-34
3.3.1.4.2.11 Type 168 No Service Required (Type 40 ACK) 3-35
3.3.1.4.2.12 Type 169 Secondary Source Message (Type 40 ACK) 3-35
3.3.1.4.2.13 Type 170 Secondary Negative Acknowledge (Type 42 NACK) 3-36
3.3.1.4.2.14 Type 171 Secondary Acknowledge (Type 42/43 ACK) 3-36
3.3.1.4.3 Secondary to Secondary Messages 3-36
3.3.1.5 Frame Timing 3-37
3.3.1.5.1 Primary Station 3-37
3.3.1.5.2 Secondary Stations 3-38
3.3.1.5.3 Handshaking 3-38
3.3.1.5.4 Command Frame Scheduling 3-39
3.3.2 Port 2 Interface 3-40
3.3.2.1 Unit To Printer 3-40
3.3.2.2 Unit To Personal Computer 3-41
3.3.3 Port 3 System Interface 3-41
3.3.3.1 Connector 3-41
3.3.3.2 Interface 3-41
3.3.3.2.1 Transmission Method 3-41
3.3.3.2.2 Transmitter Characteristics 3-41
3.3.3.2.3 Receiver Characteristics 3-41
3.3.4 Type 1—Interface Standards 3-41
3.3.5 Type 2—Interface Standards 3-42
3.3.5.1 Electrical Limits Of Input / Output Terminations 3-42
3.3.5.1.1 Logic Levels 3-42
3.3.5.1.2 Transient Immunity 3-42
3.3.5.1.3 Inputs 3-42
3.3.5.1.4 Outputs 3-42
3.3.5.2 Pin Connections 3-43
3.3.5.2.1 Connectors Used 3-43
3.3.5.2.2 Input / Output Connector Pin Terminations 3-43
3.3.6 NTCIP Requirements 3-46

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.4 PRETIMED CONTROL 3-49
3.4.1 Definitions 3-49
3.4.1.1 Signal Plan 3-49
3.4.2 General 3-49
3.4.2.1 Timing Plans 3-49
3.4.2.1.1 Cycles 3-50
3.4.2.1.2 Splits 3-50
3.4.2.2 Intervals 3-50
3.4.2.3 Signal Plans 3-50
3.4.2.3.1 Minimum Time 3-50
3.4.2.3.2 Load Switch Driver Condition 3-50
3.4.2.3.3 Timing Plan Transfer 3-50
3.4.2.3.4 Signal Plan Transfer 3-50
3.4.2.3.5 Variable Interval 3-50
3.4.2.3.6 Automatic Flash 3-51
3.4.2.3.7 Actuated Interval(s) 3-51
3.4.2.4 Offset 3-51
3.4.2.5 Sync Monitor 3-51
3.4.2.6 Manual Control 3-51
3.4.2.7 Free Mode 3-51
3.4.3 Initialization 3-52
3.4.4 Actuated Movements 3-52
3.4.4.1 Provision For Storing A Demand 3-52
3.4.4.2 Placement Of Vehicle Recall 3-52
3.4.4.3 Placement Of Pedestrian Recall 3-52
3.4.5 External Interface 3-52
3.4.5.1 Pin Connections 3-52
3.4.5.2 Inputs 3-54
3.4.5.3 Outputs 3-58
3.4.6 Priority Of Input Functions 3-60
3.4.7 Indications 3-60
3.5 ACTUATED CONTROL 3-61
3.5.1 Definitions 3-61
3.5.1.1 Ring 3-61
3.5.1.2 Barrier (Compatibility Line) 3-61
3.5.1.3 Multi-Ring Controller Unit 3-61
3.5.1.4 Single-Ring Controller Unit 3-62
3.5.1.5 Dual Entry 3-62
3.5.1.6 Single Entry 3-62
3.5.1.7 Pedestrian Recycle 3-62
3.5.1.8 Preferred Sequence 3-62
3.5.2 General 3-62
3.5.2.1 Pin Connections 3-63
3.5.3 Per Phase 3-66
3.5.3.1 Time Settings 3-66
3.5.3.2 Phase Intervals 3-66
3.5.3.3 Phase Selection Points 3-72
3.5.3.4 Provision For Storing A Demand 3-72
3.5.3.5 Placement Of Maximum Recall 3-72
3.5.3.6 Placement Of Minimum Recall 3-72
3.5.3.7 Placement Of Pedestrian Recall 3-72
3.5.3.8 Placement Of Call At Phase Termination 3-72
3.5.3.9 Conditional Service 3-72
3.5.3.10 Automatic Pedestrian Clearance 3-72
3.5.3.11 Inputs 3-73

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.5.3.12 Outputs 3-73
3.5.4 Per Ring 3-74
3.5.4.1 Inputs 3-74
3.5.4.2 Outputs 3-75
3.5.5 Per Unit 3-76
3.5.5.1 Initialization 3-76
3.5.5.2 Simultaneous Gap Out 3-76
3.5.5.3 Dual Entry 3-76
3.5.5.4 Alternate Sequences 3-76
3.5.5.5 Inputs 3-77
3.5.5.6 Outputs 3-81
3.5.5.7 Red Revert 3-82
3.5.6 Priority of Input Functions 3-82
3.5.7 Indications 3-82
3.5.8 Overlaps 3-83
3.6 ACTUATED COORDINATION 3-83
3.6.1 Definitions 3-83
3.6.1.1 Permissive 3-83
3.6.2 Operation 3-84
3.6.2.1 Timing Plans 3-84
3.6.2.1.1 Cycles 3-84
3.6.2.1.2 Splits 3-84
3.6.2.2 Offset 3-84
3.6.2.3 Sync Monitor 3-84
3.6.2.4 Manual Control 3-85
3.6.2.5 Free Mode 3-85
3.6.3 Command Priority 3-85
3.6.4 External Interface 3-85
3.6.5 Indications 3-86
3.7 PREEMPTION 3-87
3.7.1 Definitions 3-87
3.7.2 Operation 3-87
3.7.2.1 Input Priority 3-87
3.7.2.2 Memory 3-88
3.7.3 External Interface 3-88
3.7.4 Indications 3-88
3.8 TIME BASE 3-89
3.8.1 Definitions 3-89
3.8.1.1 Coordinated Universal Time 3-89
3.8.2 Operation 3-89
3.8.3 External Interface 3-89
3.8.4 Indications 3-89
3.9 MISCELLANEOUS 3-90
3.9.1 Flash 3-90
3.9.1.1 Start-Up Flash 3-90
3.9.1.2 Automatic Flash 3-90
3.9.2 Dimming 3-91
3.9.3 Diagnostics 3-91
3.9.3.1 Automatic Diagnostics 3-91
3.9.3.1.1 Memory 3-91
3.9.3.1.2 Processor Monitor 3-92
3.9.3.1.3 Port 1 3-92
3.9.3.1.4 Detector Diagnostics 3-94
3.9.3.1.5 Events Report 3-95
3.9.3.2 Operator Initiated Diagnostics 3-96

© NEMA

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.9.3.2.1 Inputs 3-96
3.9.3.2.2 Outputs 3-96
3.9.3.2.3 Integral Display 3-97
3.9.3.2.4 Integral Keypad 3-97
3.10 FUTURE 3-97
3.11 PROGRAMMING 3-97
3.11.1 Entry 3-97
3.11.2 Display 3-97
3.11.3 Security 3-97
3.11.4 Backup 3-97
3.12 POWER INTERRUPTION 3-98

4. SECTION MALFUNCTION MANAGEMENT UNIT 4-1

4.1 OVERVIEW 4-1
4.1.1 Basic Capability 4-1
4.1.2 TS 1-1989 Compatibility 4-1
4.2 PHYSICAL 4-2
4.2.1 Accessibility 4-2
4.2.2 Material and Construction of Printed Circuit Assemblies 4-2
4.2.3 Environmental Requirements 4-2
4.2.4 Size 4-2
4.3 INTERFACE STANDARDS 4-2
4.3.1 Port 1 Connector 4-2
4.3.2 Pin Connections 4-2
4.3.2.1 Connectors 4-3
4.3.2.2 Pin Assignments 4-3
4.3.3 Inputs 4-6
4.3.3.1 Ac Line 4-6
4.3.3.2 Ac Neutral 4-6
4.3.3.3 Earth Ground 4-6
4.3.3.4 Logic Ground 4-6
4.3.3.5 +24V Monitor Dc Inputs 4-6
4.3.3.6 Control Inputs 4-6
4.3.3.7 Cabinet Interlock 4-6
4.3.3.8 Field Terminals 4-7
4.3.3.9 Red Enable 4-7
4.3.3.10 Type Select Input 4-7
4.3.3.11 Local Flash Status 4-8
4.3.4 Outputs 4-8
4.3.4.1 Output Relay 4-8
4.3.4.2 Start-Delay Control 4-8
4.3.5 Display 4-8
4.3.6 Control and Programming 4-9
4.3.6.1 Minimum Flash Programming 4-10
4.3.6.2 Minimum Yellow Change Channel Disable Programming 4-10
4.3.6.3 Voltage Monitor Latch Programming 4-10
4.3.7 Compatibility Programming 4-10
4.3.7.1 Connector P1 Programming Card Pin Connections 4-11
4.3.7.2 Connector P2 Programming Card Pin Connections 4-11
4.4 FUNCTIONS 4-12
4.4.1 MMU Power Failure 4-12
4.4.2 Minimum Flashing Indication 4-12
4.4.3 Conflict Monitoring 4-12
4.4.4 Red Monitoring 4-13
4.4.5 Minimum Yellow Change / Red Clearance Interval Monitoring 4-13

© NEMA
--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4.4.5.1 Yellow Plus Red Interval 4-13
4.4.5.2 Yellow Change Interval 4-13
4.4.6 Port 1 Timeout 4-14
4.4.7 Voltage Monitoring 4-14
4.4.7.1 Volt Direct Current Supply Monitor 4-14
4.4.7.2 Volt Monitor Inhibit Input 4-14
4.4.8 Controller Voltage/Fault Monitor Input 4-15
4.4.9 Reset 4-15
4.5 DIAGNOSTICS 4-15
4.5.1 Memory 4-15
4.5.2 Microprocessor Monitor 4-16

5. SECTION TERMINALS AND FACILITIES 5-1

5.1 DEFINITIONS 5-1
5.1.1 Cabinet 5-1
5.1.2 Flash Bus 5-1
5.1.3 Earth Ground 5-1
5.1.4 Logic Ground 5-1
5.1.5 Primary Feed 5-1
5.1.6 Signal Bus 5-1
5.1.7 Terminal(s) 5-1
5.2 PHYSICAL 5-1
5.2.1 Material 5-1
5.2.2 Terminal Identification 5-1
5.2.3 Component Identification 5-2
5.2.4 Printed Circuits 5-2
5.2.5 Wire 5-2
5.2.6 Wiring 5-2
5.2.7 Layout 5-3
5.2.8 Load Switch and Flasher Support 5-3
5.3 INTERFACE 5-3
5.3.1 Type 1 Controller Interface 5-3
5.3.1.1 Load Switch And Flasher Positions 5-3
5.3.1.2 Input/Output Terminals 5-4
5.3.1.3 Power And Control Terminals 5-6
5.3.1.4 BIU Interface 5-6
5.3.1.4.1 BIU Rack 5-6
5.3.1.4.2 BIU Input/Output Functions 5-7
5.3.2 Type 2 Controller Interface 5-12
5.3.2.1 Load Switch And Flash Transfer Positions 5-12
5.3.2.2 Interface Terminals 5-12
5.3.2.3 Input/Output Mode 5-12
5.3.3 Port 1 Communication Cables 5-12
5.3.4 Detector Rack 5-13
5.3.4.1 Dimensions 5-13
5.3.4.2 Design 5-14
5.3.4.3 Detector Rack Biu 5-14
5.3.4.4 Detector Loop Connections 5-16
5.3.4.5 Power Supply Connections 5-16
5.3.5 Power Supply 5-17
5.3.5.1 Dimensions 5-17
5.3.5.2 Environmental Requirements 5-17
5.3.5.3 Electrical Requirements 5-17
5.3.5.4 Power Supply Inputs 5-18
5.3.5.4.1 AC Line 5-18

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

5.3.5.4.2 AC Neutral 5-18
5.3.5.4.3 Earth Ground 5-18
5.3.5.4.4 Pin Connections 5-18
5.3.6 Field Terminals 5-18
5.3.6.1 General 5-18
5.3.6.2 Number And Size Of Terminals 5-19
5.3.6.3 Field Terminal Nomenclature 5-19
5.3.7 Terminal Types and Practices 5-20
5.4 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS 5-20
5.4.1 AC Service 5-20
5.4.2 Power Distribution Within Cabinet 5-20
5.4.2.1 Grounding System 5-20
5.4.2.2 Disconnecting Means 5-22
5.4.2.3 Signal Bus 5-22
5.4.2.4 AC Service Transient Suppression 5-22
5.4.2.5 Radio Interference Suppression 5-22
5.4.2.6 Convenience Receptacle 5-22
5.4.2.7 Lighting Fixture 5-22
5.4.2.7.1 Fluorescent Fixture 5-22
5.4.2.7.2 Incandescent Fixture 5-23
5.4.2.7.3 Lighting Fixture Switch 5-23
5.4.3 Communications Transient Suppression 5-23
5.5 CONTROL CIRCUITS 5-23
5.5.1 Auto/Flash Switch 5-23
5.5.2 Flash Transfer Control 5-23
5.5.3 Malfunction Management Unit 5-23

6. SECTION AUXILIARY DEVICES 6-1

6.1 Definitions 6-1
6.2 Three-Circuit Solid State Load Switches 6-1
6.2.1 Physical Characteristics 6-1
6.2.2 General Electrical Characteristics 6-2
6.2.3 Input Electrical Characteristics 6-3
6.2.4 Output Electrical Characteristics 6-3
6.3 SOLID STATE FLASHERS 6-4
6.3.1 Type of Flasher 6-4
6.3.2 Physical Characteristics 6-4
6.3.3 General Electrical Characteristics 6-5
6.4 FLASH TRANSFER RELAYS 6-6
6.4.1 Environmental Requirements 6-6
6.4.1.1 Temperature And Humidity 6-6
6.4.1.2 Vibration And Shock 6-6
6.4.1.3 Transients 6-6
6.4.2 Mechanical Requirements 6-6
6.4.2.1 Enclosure 6-6
6.4.2.2 Contacts And Connector 6-6
6.4.2.3 Dimensions 6-6
6.4.3 Electrical Requirements 6-6
6.4.3.1 Contact Rating 6-6
6.4.3.2 Contact Material 6-6
6.4.3.3 Coil Rating 6-7
6.4.3.4 Insulation 6-7
6.5 INDUCTIVE LOOP DETECTOR UnitS 6-8
6.5.1 Loop Detector Unit Definitions 6-8
6.5.1.1 Channel 6-8

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5.1.2 Crosstalk....6-8
6.5.1.3 Detector Mode....6-8
6.5.1.4 Lead-In Cable....6-8
6.5.1.5 Loop Detector System....6-8
6.5.1.6 Loop Detector Unit....6-8
6.5.1.7 Reset Channel....6-8
6.5.1.8 Reset Unit....6-8
6.5.1.9 Sensor Loop....6-8
6.5.1.10 Vehicle Detector System....6-9
6.5.1.11 Zone Of Detection....6-9
6.5.2 Functional Standards....6-9
6.5.2.1 Operation....6-9
6.5.2.2 Configurations And Dimensions....6-9
6.5.2.2.1 Configurations....6-9
6.5.2.2.2 Dimensions....6-10
6.5.2.3 Accessibility....6-11
6.5.2.4 Material And Construction Of Rigid Printed Circuit Assemblies....6-11
6.5.2.4.1 Materials....6-11
6.5.2.4.2 Component Identification....6-11
6.5.2.5 Power Inputs....6-11
6.5.2.5.1 Detector Unit Dc Supply Voltage....6-11
6.5.2.5.2 Low Supply Voltage Automatic Reset....6-11
6.5.2.6 Logic Ground....6-11
6.5.2.7 Earth Ground....6-11
6.5.2.8 DC Control Inputs....6-11
6.5.2.8.1 Low or Active State....6-11
6.5.2.8.2 High or Inactive State....6-11
6.5.2.8.3 Transition Voltage Zone Of Input Circuitry....6-11
6.5.2.8.4 External Transition Time....6-12
6.5.2.8.5 Maximum Current....6-12
6.5.2.8.6 Signal Recognition....6-12
6.5.2.8.7 Activation of Delay/Extension Feature....6-12
6.5.2.8.8 Activation of Detector Unit Address Feature....6-12
6.5.2.9 Data Receive (Rx) Input....6-12
6.5.2.9.1 Mark State (Binary 1)....6-12
6.5.2.9.2 Space State (Binary 0)....6-12
6.5.2.9.3 Other States....6-12
6.5.2.9.4 Transient Withstand....6-12
6.5.2.10 Loop Inputs....6-12
6.5.2.11 Loop/Lead In Electrical Properties....6-13
6.5.2.12 Test Loop Configurations....6-13
6.5.2.13 Test Vehicle Definition....6-13
6.5.2.14 Sensitivity....6-14
6.5.2.15 Sensitivity Control....6-14
6.5.2.16 Approach Speed....6-14
6.5.2.17 Modes Of Operation....6-15
6.5.2.17.1 Presence....6-15
6.5.2.17.2 Pulse....6-15
6.5.2.18 Recovery From Sustained Occupancy....6-15
6.5.2.19 Response Time....6-15
6.5.2.19.1 Variation in Response Time....6-15
6.5.2.20 Tuning....6-15
6.5.2.21 Self-Tracking....6-16
6.5.2.22 Recovery From Reset....6-16

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5.2.23 Crosstalk Avoidance....6-16
6.5.2.24 Delay/Extension....6-16
6.5.2.24.1 Delay....6-16
6.5.2.24.2 Extension....6-16
6.5.2.25 Controls And Indicators....6-17
6.5.2.26 Outputs....6-18
6.5.2.26.1 Solid State Channel Detection Outputs....6-18
6.5.2.26.2 Channel Status outputs....6-18
6.5.2.26.3 Channel Status Reporting....6-19
6.5.2.26.4 Data Transmit Output (TX)....6-20
6.5.2.26.4.1 Mark State (Binary 1)....6-20
6.5.2.26.4.2 Space State (Binary 0)....6-20
6.5.2.26.4.3 High Impedance State....6-20
6.5.2.26.4.4 Output Impedance During Power Off....6-20
6.5.2.26.4.5 TX Output Shorts....6-20
6.5.2.26.4.6 Rise/Fall Time....6-20
6.5.2.26.4.7 Transient Withstand....6-20
6.5.2.27 Communication Port Functional Requirements....6-20
6.5.2.27.1 Communication Port Electrical Requirements....6-20
6.5.2.27.2 Baud Rate....6-21
6.5.2.27.3 Communication Parameters....6-21
6.5.2.27.4 Slot Addresses....6-21
6.5.2.28 Electrical Connections....6-21
6.5.2.28.1 Connector Description....6-21
6.5.2.28.2 Connector Terminations....6-21
6.5.2.28.3 Type A Two Channel Without Delay / Extension Timing....6-21
6.5.2.28.4 Type B Four Channel Without Delay / Extension Timing....6-21
6.5.2.28.5 Type C Two Channel With Delay / Extension Timing....6-21

7. SECTION CABINETS....7-1

7.1 DEFINITIONS....7-1
7.2 Materials....7-1
7.2.1 Cabinets of Ferrous Material....7-1
7.2.2 Cabinets of Aluminum Alloy....7-1
7.2.2.1 Sheet Aluminum....7-1
7.2.2.2 Cast Aluminum....7-1
7.3 Cabinet Dimensions....7-2
7.4 Top Surface Construction....7-2
7.5 Doors....7-2
7.5.1 Main Cabinet Door....7-2
7.5.2 Hinges....7-2
7.5.3 Door Stop....7-2
7.5.4 Latches and Locking Mechanism....7-2
7.5.4.1 Latching....7-2
7.5.4.2 Rotation Of Handle....7-2
7.5.4.3 Locks....7-3
7.5.4.4 Provisions For Padlock....7-3
7.5.5 Door Opening....7-3
7.5.6 Gasketing....7-3
7.5.7 Police Compartment....7-3
7.5.7.1 Door....7-3
7.5.7.2 Locks....7-3
7.5.7.3 Compartment Size....7-3
7.6 Shelves....7-3
7.6.1 Positioning....7-3

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7.7 Finish and Surface Preparation 7-4
7.7.1 Steel Cabinets 7-4
7.7.1.1 Preparation 7-4
7.7.1.2 Prime Coat 7-4
7.7.1.3 Interior Surfaces 7-4
7.7.1.4 Exterior Surfaces 7-4
7.7.2 Aluminum Cabinets 7-4
7.7.2.1 Preparation: Painted Cabinets 7-4
7.7.2.2 Prime Coat 7-4
7.7.2.3 Interior Surfaces 7-4
7.7.2.4 Exterior Surfaces 7-4
7.7.3 Unpainted Aluminum Cabinets 7-4
7.8 Cabinet Mounting 7-4
7.8.1 Pole-Mounted Cabinets 7-4
7.8.2 Pedestal-Mounted Cabinets 7-4
7.8.3 Base-Mounted Cabinets 7-5
7.8.3.1 Sizes 3, 4, And 5 7-5
7.8.3.2 Sizes 6 And 7 7-5
7.8.4 Anchor Bolts 7-5
7.9 CABINET VENTILATION 7-6
7.9.1 Fan or Cooling System Design 7-6
7.9.2 Fan or Cooling System Operation 7-6
7.9.2.1 Operating Conditions 7-6
7.9.2.2 Fan Or Cooling System Controls 7-6
7.9.2.3 Filter 7-6

8. SECTION BUS INTERFACE UNIT 8-1

8.1 GENERAL 8-1
8.2 PHYSICAL 8-1
8.2.1 Material 8-1
8.2.2 Printed Circuits 8-1
8.2.3 Dimensions 8-1
8.3 Configurations 8-1
8.4 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS 8-1
8.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS 8-2
8.5.1 Initialization 8-2
8.6 INDICATORS 8-3
8.6.1 Power On Indicator 8-3
8.6.2 Port 1 Indicator 8-3
8.6.3 Rack TX Indicator (BIU2 Only) 8-3
8.7 BIU-to-Rack Communication Port Functional Requirements (BIU2 only) 8-3
8.7.1 Communication Port Electrical Requirements 8-3
8.7.2 Baud Rate 8-3
8.8 INTERFACE REQUIREMENTS 8-3
8.8.1 Port 1 Communications 8-3
8.8.2 Port 1 Connector 8-3
8.8.2.1 Port 1 Connector Pin Assignments 8-4
8.8.3 Card Rack Connector 8-4
8.8.3.1 Connector Pin Assignments For BIU Type BIU 8-4
8.8.3.2 Connector Pin Assignments For BIU Type BIU2 8-5
8.8.4 Outputs 8-5
8.8.4.1 Data Transmit Output (TX) for BIU Type BIU2 8-6
8.8.4.1.1 Mark State (Binary 1) 8-6
8.8.4.1.2 Space State (Binary 0) 8-6
8.8.4.1.3 Output Impedance During Power Off 8-6

--`,,`````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.8.4.1.4 TX Output Shorts 8-6
8.8.4.1.5 Rise/Fall Time 8-6
8.8.4.1.6 Transient Withstand 8-6
8.8.5 Inputs 8-6
8.8.5.1 Opto Common 8-6
8.8.5.2 Opto Inputs 8-6
8.8.5.3 Line Frequency Reference 8-7
8.8.5.4 24 Volt Signal Inputs 8-7
8.8.5.4.1 Address Select Inputs 8-7
8.8.5.4.2 Function Inputs 8-7
8.8.5.5 Data Receive Input (RX) for BIU Type BIU2 8-8
8.8.5.5.1 Mark State (Binary 1) 8-8
8.8.5.5.2 Space State (Binary 0) 8-8
8.8.5.5.3 Transient Withstand 8-8
8.8.5.6 +24 VDC INPUT 8-8
8.8.5.7 Earth Ground 8-8
8.8.5.8 Logic Ground 8-8

TABLES

Table 2-1 Wet-Bulb Dry-Bulb Relative Humidity At Barometric Pressure Of 29.92 In. Hg. 2-2
Table 3-1 Command Frames 3-7
Table 3-2 Response Frames 3-8
Table 3-3 Command Frames And Frequency Of Transmission 3-37
Table 3-4 Service, Response, And Command Values (Milliseconds) 3-39
Table 3-5 Object Range Values for Actuated Signal Controllers 3-48
Table 3-6 Timing Plan 3-55
Table 3-7 Offset 3-56
Table 3-8 Signal Plan 3-56
Table 3-9 I/O Mode Bits (3 Per Unit) 3-57
Table 3-10 Coded Status Bits (3 per Unit) 3-59
Table 3-11 Coded Status Bits (3 per Ring) 3-75
Table 3-12 Alternate Sequence 3-77
Table 3-13 I/O Mode Bits (3 per Unit) 3-80
Table 3-14 Timing Plan 3-86
Table 3-15 Offset 3-86
Table 5-1 Ampacity 5-2
Table 5-2 Type 1 Configurations 5-4
Table 5-3 Input / Output Terminals 5-4
Table 5-4 BIU Address Assignment 5-7
Table 5-5 BIU 1 Signal Assignment 5-7
Table 5-6 BIU 2 Signal Assignment 5-8

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 5-7 BIU 3 Signal Assignment....5-10
Table 5-8 BIU 4 Signal Assignment....5-11
Table 5-9 Detector Rack Configurations....5-13
Table 5-10 Detector Module Communications Address....5-14
Table 5-11 Detector Rack BIU Address Assignment....5-14
Table 5-12 BIU 9 Signal Assignment....5-15
Table 5-13 Field Terminals....5-18
Table 5-14 MMU Channel Assignments....5-24
Table 6-1 Detector Unit Types....6-9
Table 6-2 Connector Terminations....6-22
Table 7-1 Outline Dimensions....7-2
Table 8-1 BIU Types....8-1

FIGURES

Figure 2-1 Test Profile....2-7
Figure 2-2 Shock Test Fixture....2-12
Figure 2-3 PIV And DV/DT Test Circuit (Solid State Load Switch Or Flasher)....2-18
Figure 2-4 Test Configurations....2-20
Figure 2-5 Loop Input Terminal Transient Tests....2-22
Figure 3-1 Port 1 Connections, Type 1 Controller Assembly....3-4
Figure 3-2 Port 1 Connections, Type 2 Controller Assembly....3-4
Figure 3-3 Port 1 Timing....3-5
Figure 3-4 Port 1 Frame Format....3-5
Figure 3-5 Command and Response Frame Timing....3-38
Figure 3-6 Dual Ring Controller Unit....3-61
Figure 3-7 Single Ring Controller Unit....3-62
Figure 3-8 Variable Initial Timing....3-67
Figure 3-9 Gap Reduction....3-68
Figure 3-10 Activated Phase Operating In The Nonactivated Mode....3-69
Figure 3-11 Activated Phase Operating In The Nonactivated Mode....3-71
Figure 3-12 Load Switch Drivers, Pedestrian....3-74
Figure 4-1 Programming Card....4-9
Figure 5-1 Load Switch Or Flasher Support....5-5
Figure 5-2 Front View - Load Switch Support Dimensions....5-5
Figure 5-3 Front View - Flasher Support Dimensions....5-6

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Figure 5-4 Cabinet Power Distribution Schematic.....5-21
Figure 5-5 Terminal & Facilities Wiring.....5-25
Figure 6-1 Connector Pin Assignment.....6-2
Figure 6-2 Connector Pin Assignments Solid State Flasher (Viewed - Connector End).....6-5
Figure 6-3 Flash Transfer Relay Wiring Diagram.....6-7
Figure 6-4 Two Channel Card Rack Unit.....6-10
Figure 6-5 Four Channel Card Rack Unit.....6-10
Figure 6-6 Test Loop Configurations.....6-14
Figure 6-7 Delay Operation.....6-17
Figure 6-8 Extension Operation.....6-17
Figure 7-1 Foundation For Sizes 3, 4, and 5 Base-Mounted Cabinets.....7-5
Figure 7-2 Foundation For Size 6 and 7 Base-Mounted Cabinets.....7-6
Figure 8-1 Bus Interface Unit.....8-2

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FOREWORD

This NEMA Standards Publication TS 2-1998, *Traffic Controller Assemblies,* has been developed as a design guide for traffic signaling equipment which can be safely installed and provide operational features not covered by the NEMA TS 1-1989, *Traffic Control Systems*. Within the standard, any reference to a specific manufacturer is made strictly for the purpose of defining interchangeability where there exists no nationally recognized standard covering all the requirements. The manufacturer references do not constitute a preference.

The TS 2 Standards Publication has been established to reduce hazards to persons and property when traffic signaling equipment is properly selected and installed in conformance with the requirements herein.

The user's attention is called to the possibility that compliance with this standard may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken with respect to the validity of this claim or of any patent rights in connection therewith.

Comments and suggestions for the improvement of this document are encouraged. They should be sent to:

Vice President, Engineering Department
National Electrical Manufacturers Association
1300 N.17th Street
Rosslyn, Virginia 22209
tel: (703) 841-3200
fax: (703) 841-3300

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

SCOPE

This Standards Publication covers traffic signaling equipment used to facilitate and expedite the safe movement of pedestrians and vehicular traffic.

Two approaches to expansion of traffic features of NEMA TS 1, *Traffic Control Systems* are provided:

Type 1—

° Entirely new performance oriented standard.

Type 2—

° Use of the MSA, B, and C connectors in common use with NEMA TS 1 equipment.

The Type 1 approach embraces:

° Controller Unit

- Display-alphanumeric Display—32 Characters, 2 Lines Minimum
- Port 1 Connector
  - High speed full duplex data channel connecting controller unit, conflict monitor (malfunction management unit), rear panel (terminals and facilities) and detectors.
  - All data exchange with rear panel.
  - Controller unit and conflict monitor exchange information on a regular basis, performing redundant checks on each other. Controller unit has access to all conflict monitor internal information, making enhanced event logging, remote intersection monitoring, and remote diagnostics feasible.
  - All detector information, including detector diagnostics.
  - EIA-485 serial communications interface with noise immunity characteristics.
  - SDLC (synchronous data link) communication protocol with a bit rate of 153, 600 bits/second, utilizing sophisticated error checking.
  - Vast reduction in number of wires in the cabinet.
- Port 2 Connector
  - Interface to personal computer.
  - Interface to printer.
- Port 3 Connector
  - 1200 baud, FSK serial port for on-street communications.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

- Standard Features
    - Actuated control.
    - Conditional service.
    - Additional detectors.
    - Delay/extension/switching detectors.
    - Dual entry.
    - Alternate phase sequences.
    - Start-up flash.
    - Automatic flash.
    - Dimming.
    - Coordination: 16 timing plans; one cycle length per timing plan; one split per timing plan; three offset per timing plan.
    - Preemption: six inputs; six sequences.
    - Time base: yearly clock; daylight savings; leap year.
    - Internal diagnostics: memory diagnostics; processor monitoring; conflict monitoring checking; detector diagnostics.

° Conflict Monitor (Malfunction Management Unit)

- Single Type —configurable as 12 four-input channels or 16 three-input channels
- Port 1 Connector
    - Communications with controller unit, as described above.
    - MSA, MSB connectors downward compatible with those on a TS 1 conflict monitor; used primarily for sensing of voltages on field terminals.
    - Low voltage monitoring—monitor will be the first unit in a cabinet to sense a low voltage condition and will put intersection in flash in an orderly manner. This sequence will be reversed on power up.
- Detectors
    - Rack mounted, 16 detector channels per rack, up to four racks.
    - Port 1 connector: pluggable, interchangeable Bus Interface unit to convert Port 1 high speed serial data to format required by individual detectors.
    - Communications with controller unit, as described above.
    - Per channel diagnostic data: open loop; shorted loop; excessive inductance change; watchdog failure.
    - Detector reset capability.
    - Operation from either 12 volt or 24 volt DC power supply.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

- Rear Panel (Terminals and Facilities)
    - Conventional load switches, flasher, flash transfer relays.
    - Termination points for needed functions.
    - Port 1 connector: communications with controller unit, as described above, and pluggable, interchangeable Bus Interface Unit to convert Port 1 high speed serial data to format required by rear panel.

The TS 2 Type 2 is the same as the Type 1 with the following exceptions:

- The MSA, MSB, and MSC connectors for the Controller Unit are compatible with equipment conforming with the NEMA TS 1-1989 Standards Publication.
- MS connector pin-outs are configurable to one of eight modes to satisfy different applications and achieve different functionality. Default mode is pin compatible with TS 1-1989.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

HISTORY

This Standards Publication is predicated upon an industry perceived need to overcome limitations of the NEMA Standards Publication TS 1, *Traffic Control Systems,* which in 1976 reflected the first industry documentation of technically adequate and safe traffic control equipment.

The NEMA TS 1 as subsequently revised and expanded and re-affirmed in 1989:

1. Defined effective actuated intersection control.
2. As a complete package defined all equipment within the cabinet and test procedures.
3. Provided equipment interchangeability between manufacturers.
4. As a minimum functional standard facilitated design innovations.

Limitations inherent in NEMA TS 1 were seen as follows:

1. Reliance on point-to-point wire connection for all functions with termination points for all wires, many of which are not utilized.
    a. Numerous connections increase failure potential.
    b. Not cost effective.
    c. Hardware limited expandability.
2. Out-of-date technology.
3. Lack of uniformity in the implementation of the following functions and the resulting loss in equipment interchangeability:
    a. Coordination.
    b. Time base control.
    c. Preemption.
    d. Uniform Code flash.
    e. Communications.
    f. Diagnostics.
    g. User interface.

The following industry guidelines were established to overcome the limitations in the NEMA TS 1 Standards Publication:

1. Equipment requirements based on valid engineering concepts.
2. Interchangeability, performance oriented, without precluding downward compatibility with TS 1 equipment.
3. Emphasis on use of enhanced diagnostic techniques.
4. Minimize potential for malfunctions.
5. Provide for future expandability.
6. Enhanced user interface.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Four basic proposals were considered over a four-year period. These were:

1. Standardize the functions being provided on the MSD connector.
2. Free up seldom used pins on the MSA, MSB, and MSC connectors and reassign them to needed functions.
3. Develop an entirely new, performance oriented standard.
4. Proceed with Proposal 1, then move on to Proposal 3 for a long-term solution.

During the investigations, involving debate within the industry and inputs received from traffic engineers and those responsible for the selection, installation and maintenance of traffic control equipment actions were taken on each proposal.

Industry debate of which approach to follow consumed approximately 2.5 years before approval of Proposal 3—proceed with the development of an entirely new, performance oriented standard. While the majority of the industry tended to favor this proposal, some members in opposition had concerns, many of which were valid, and each was carefully studied and evaluated, including joint consultations with delegations from the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) and the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA), as well as at NEMA sponsored open forums at Annual Meetings of ITE.

The advantages of a new performance oriented standard were identified as:

1. Communication between major equipment within the cabinet over a data channel with virtually unlimited capacity. Potential for future expandability is thereby maximized.
2. Use of a high speed data channel between the controller unit, malfunction management unit, detectors, and rear panel reduces the number of connections and facilitates diagnostic testing, thereby reducing the potential for malfunction.
3. Cost effectiveness of communications protocols.
4. Enhanced user interface.

During the development of the new NEMA Standards Publication TS 2 two approaches evolved:

1. Type 1, which utilizes a high speed data channel between all major equipment to maximize the functionality and expandability.
2. Type 2, which retains the MSA, MSB, and MSC connectors for data exchange with the rear panel, providing a degree of downward compatibility.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TS 2-1998 UPDATE

The following is a summary of the changes provided by the 1998 release of this Standards Publication:

SECTION 2:

The Standard Publication has been restructured to move all testing criteria into Section 2.

SECTION 3:

Type 129 MMU Inputs/Status frame has been updated to add 'Start-Up Flash Call' bit. This status bit enables the CU to enter the Start-Up Flash state following any Terminal & Facilities flash mode.

NTCIP Requirements has been added. Additional Controller Unit types with two Conformance Levels has been added for NTCIP requirements.

Port 1 Frame Fault flash has been modified to limit the number of times the device may exit this fault state in a specific time without user interaction.

SECTION 4:

Pin Assignments has been modified to add 'Local Flash Status' input on Connector B. This and the Output Relay modification are key to enabling the CU to enter Start-Up Flash following any Terminal & Facilities flash mode.

Output Relay operation has been modified to add 'Start-Up Flash Call' bit in Frame 129.

Display has been modified to add 'Local Flash Status' input indication.

Minimum Yellow Change / Red Clearance Interval Monitoring has been modified to remain enabled when the Load Switch Flash bit is set to 1 in the Type 0 frame from the CU.

Port 1 Timeout operation has been modified to limit the number of times the device may exit the fault state in a specific time without user interaction.

SECTION 5:

Port 1 Communication Cables shielding has been modified to terminate to Earth Ground.

Malfunction Management Unit wiring has been modified to add 'Local Flash Status' input.

SECTION 6:

Detector Configurations has been modified to add four new types (AC, BC, CC, & DC) with communications port TX & RX capability.

Detection Outputs & Status Outputs condition has been added for the Disable and Reset states.

Detector Connector Terminations has been modified to add Detector Address Bit #3.

SECTION 8:

BIU Configurations has been modified to add one new type (BIU2) with communications port TX & RX capability.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Section 1
DEFINITIONS

These definitions reflect the consensus of the traffic control equipment industry as represented by NEMA and are intended to be in harmony with terminology in current usage, such as is published in the "Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices" and various technical reports of the Institute of Transportation Engineers, 525 School Street, S.W., Washington, D.C. 20024.

1.1 CONTROL EQUIPMENT

The abbreviations used in this Standard Publication are defined as follows:

AC – Alternating Current
BIU – Bus Interface Unit
CA – Controller Assembly
CU – Controller Unit
DR – Detector Rack
MMU – Malfunction Management Unit
TF – Terminals and Facilities

1.1.1 Auxiliary Equipment

Separate devices used to add supplementary features to a controller assembly.

1.1.2 Barrier

See 3.5.1.2.

1.1.3 Cabinet

An outdoor enclosure for housing the controller unit and associated equipment.

1.1.4 Call

A registration of a demand for right-of-way by traffic (vehicles or pedestrians) to a controller unit.

1.1.4.1 Serviceable Conflicting Call

A call which:

1. Occurs on a conflicting phase not having the right-of-way at the time the call is placed.
2. Occurs on a conflicting phase which is capable of responding to a call.
3. When occurring on a conflicting phase operating in an occupancy mode, remains present until given its right-of-way.

1.1.5 Check

An output from a controller unit that indicates the existence of unanswered call(s).

1.1.6 Connector

A device enabling outgoing and incoming electrical circuits to be connected and disconnected without the necessity of installing and removing individual wires leading from the control unit.

1.1.6.1 Not Used Connections

The **Not Used** connector pin terminations are used exclusively to prevent interchangeability with units already in use not in conformance to this publication. These connector pins are not to be internally connected.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.1.6.2 Reserved Connections

The **Reserved** connector pin terminations are used exclusively for future assignment by NEMA of additional specific input/output functions. The control unit does not recognize any **Reserved** input as valid nor shall it provide a valid output on a **Reserved** output.

1.1.6.3 Spare Connections

The **Spare** connector pin terminations are exclusively for manufacturer specific applications.

A Controller Assembly wired to utilize one of these connections may not be compatible with all manufacturer's control units. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

1.1.7 Controller Assembly

A complete electrical device mounted in a cabinet for controlling the operation of a traffic control signal.

1.1.7.1 Flasher Controller Assembly

A complete electrical device for flashing a traffic signal or beacon.

1.1.7.2 Full-Traffic-Actuated Controller Assembly

A type of traffic-actuated controller assembly in which means are provided for traffic actuation on all approaches to the intersection.

1.1.7.3 Isolated Controller Assembly

A controller assembly for operating traffic signals not under master supervision.

1.1.7.4 Master Controller Assembly

A controller assembly for supervising a system of secondary controller assemblies.

1.1.7.5 Master-Secondary Controller Assembly

A controller assembly operating traffic signals and providing supervision of other secondary controller assemblies.

1.1.7.6 Occupancy Controller Assembly (Lane-Occupancy Controller or Demand Controller and Presence Controller)

A traffic-actuated controller which responds to the presence of vehicles within an extended zone of detection.

1.1.7.7 Pedestrian-Actuated Controller Assembly

A controller assembly in which intervals, such as pedestrian WALK and clearance intervals, can be added to or included in the controller cycle by the actuation of a pedestrian detector.

1.1.7.8 Pretimed Controller Assembly

A controller assembly for the operation of traffic signals with predetermined:

1. Fixed cycle length(s).
2. Fixed interval duration(s).
3. Interval sequence(s).

1.1.7.9 Secondary Controller Assembly (Slave)

A controller assembly which operates traffic signals under the supervision of a master controller assembly.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.1.7.10 Semi-Traffic-Actuated Controller Assembly

A type of traffic-actuated controller assembly in which means are provided for traffic actuation on one or more but not all approaches to the intersection.

1.1.7.11 Traffic-Actuated Controller Assembly

A controller assembly for supervising the operation of traffic control signals in accordance with the varying demands of traffic as registered with the controller by detectors.

1.1.8 Controller Unit

A controller unit is that portion of a controller assembly that is devoted to the selection and timing of signal displays.

1.1.8.1 Digital Controller Unit

A controller unit wherein timing is based upon a defined frequency source such as a 60-hertz alternating current source. (See 1.1.49.3.)

1.1.8.2 Multi-Ring Controller Unit

See 3.5.1.3.

1.1.8.3 Single-Ring Controller Unit

See 3.5.1.4.

1.1.9 Coordination

The control of controller units in a manner to provide a relationship between specific green indications at adjacent intersections in accordance with a time schedule to permit continuous operation of groups of vehicles along the street at a planned speed. (See 1.1.30.)

1.1.10 Coordinator

A device or program/routine which provides coordination.

1.1.11 Cycle

The total time to complete one sequence of signalization around an intersection.

In an actuated controller unit, a complete cycle is dependent on the presence of calls on all phases. In a pretimed controller unit, it is a complete sequence of signal indications.

1.1.11.1 Cycle Length

The time period in seconds required for one complete cycle.

1.1.12 Density

A measure of the concentration of vehicles, stated as the number of vehicles per mile per lane.

1.1.13 Detector

See 1.2.5.

1.1.14 Device

1.1.14.1 Electromechanical Device

A device which is characterized by electrical circuits utilizing relays, step switches, motors, etc.

1.1.14.2 Electronic Device

A device which is characterized by electrical circuits utilizing resistors, capacitors, and inductors, which may include electromechanical and solid-state devices.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.1.14.3 Solid-State Device

A device which is characterized by electrical circuits, the active components of which are semi-conductors, to the exclusion of electromechanical devices or tubes.

1.1.15 Dial

The cycle timing reference or coordination input activating same. Dial is also frequently used to describe the cycle.

1.1.16 Dwell

See 1.1.42.

1.1.17 Extension, Unit

The timing interval during the extensible portion which is resettable by each detector actuation. The green interval of the phase may terminate on expiration of the unit extension time.

1.1.18 Entry

1.1.18.1 Dual Entry

See 3.5.1.5.

1.1.18.2 Single Entry

See 3.5.1.6.

1.1.19 Flasher

A device used to open and close signal circuits at a repetitive rate.

1.1.20 Force Off

A command to force the termination of the **green** interval. (See 3.4.5.2 and 3.5.4.1.)

1.1.21 Gap Reduction

A feature whereby the **Unit Extension** or allowed time spacing between successive vehicle actuations on the phase displaying the green in the extensible portion of the interval is reduced.

1.1.22 Hold

A command that retains the existing **Green** interval.

1.1.23 Interconnect

A means of remotely controlling some or all of the functions of a traffic signal.

1.1.24 Interval

The part or parts of the signal cycle during which signal indications do not change.

1.1.24.1 Minimum Green Interval

The shortest green time of a phase. If a time setting control is designated as **Minimum Green**, the green time shall be not less than that setting.

1.1.24.2 Pedestrian Clearance Interval

The first clearance interval for the pedestrian signal following the pedestrian WALK indication.

1.1.24.3 Red Clearance Interval

A clearance interval which may follow the yellow change interval during which both the terminating phase and the next phase display **Red** signal indications.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.1.24.4 Sequence, Interval

The order of appearance of signal indications during successive intervals of a cycle.

1.1.24.5 Yellow Change Interval

The first interval following the green interval in which the signal indication for that phase is yellow.

1.1.25 Manual

1.1.25.1 Manual Operation

The operation of a controller assembly by means of a hand-operated device(s). A pushbutton is an example of such a device.

1.1.25.2 Manual Pushbutton

An auxiliary device for hand operation of a controller assembly.

1.1.26 Maximum Green

The maximum green time with an serviceable opposing actuation, which may start during the initial portion.

1.1.27 Memory

1.1.27.1 Detector Memory

The retention of a call for future utilization by the controller assembly.

1.1.27.2 Nonlocking Memory

A mode of actuated-controller-unit operation which does not require detector memory.

1.1.27.3 Non-Volatile Memory

Read/Write memory that is capable of data retention during periods when AC power is not applied for a minimum period of 30 days.

1.1.27.4 Volatile Memory

Read/Write memory that loses data when power is removed.

1.1.27.5 Random Access Memory (RAM)

Semiconductor Read/Write volatile memory. Data is lost if power is turned off.

1.1.27.6 Read Only Memory (ROM)

Read-Only, non-volatile, semiconductor memory manufactured with data content, permanently stored.

1.1.27.7 Programmable Read Only Memory (PROM)

Read-Only, non-volatile, semiconductor memory that allows a program to reside permanently in a piece of hardware.

1.1.27.8 Programmable Read Only Memory (EPROM)

Read-Only, non-volatile, semiconductor memory that is erasable (via ultra-violet light) and reprogrammable. (See 1.1.27.6 and 1.1.27.7).

1.1.28 Malfunction Management Unit

A device used to detect and respond to improper and conflicting signals and improper operating voltages in a traffic control system.

© NEMA

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.1.29 Modular Design

A design concept such that functions are sectioned into units which can be readily exchanged with similar units.

1.1.30 Offset

Offset is the time relationship, expressed in seconds or percent of cycle length, determined by the difference between a defined point in the coordinated green and a system reference point.

1.1.31 Omit, Phase (Special Skip, Force Skip)

A command that causes omission of a selected phase.

1.1.32 Overlap

A **Green** indication that allows traffic movement during the green intervals of and clearance intervals between two or more phases.

1.1.33 Passage Time

The time allowed for a vehicle to travel at a selected speed from the detector to the stop line.

1.1.34 Pattern

A unique set of coordination parameters (cycle value, split values, offset value, and sequence).

1.1.35 Phase

1.1.35.1 Traffic Phase

Those green, change, and clearance intervals in a cycle assigned to any independent movement(s) of traffic.

1.1.35.2 Conflicting Phases

Conflicting phases are two or more traffic phases which will cause interfering traffic movements if operated concurrently.

1.1.35.3 Nonconflicting Phase

Nonconflicting phases are two or more traffic phases which will not cause interfering traffic movements if operated concurrently.

1.1.35.4 Pedestrian Phase

A traffic phase allocated to pedestrian traffic which may provide a right-of-way pedestrian indication either concurrently with one or more vehicular phases, or to the exclusion of all vehicular phases.

1.1.35.5 Phase Sequence

A predetermined order in which the phases of a cycle occur.

1.1.35.6 Parent Phase

A traffic phase with which a subordinate phase is associated.

1.1.35.7 Vehicular Phase

A vehicular phase is a phase which is allocated to vehicular traffic movement as timed by the controller unit.

1.1.36 Portion

1.1.36.1 Extensible Portion

That portion of the green interval of an actuated phase following the initial portion which may be extended, for example, by traffic actuation.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.1.36.2 Initial Portion

The first timed portion of the green interval in an actuated controller unit:

1. Fixed Initial Portion: A preset initial portion that does not change.
2. Computed Initial Portion: An initial portion which is traffic adjusted.
3. Maximum Initial Portion: The limit of the computed initial portion.
4. Minimum Initial Portion: See Fixed Initial Portion.
5. Added Initial Portion: An increment of time added to the minimum initial portion in response to vehicle actuations.

1.1.36.3 Interval Portion

A discrete subdivision of an interval during which the signals do not change.

1.1.37 Preemption

The transfer of the normal control of signals to a special signal control mode for the purpose of servicing railroad crossings, emergency vehicle passage, mass transit vehicle passage, and other special tasks, the control of which require terminating normal traffic control to provide the priority needs of the special task.

1.1.38 Preemptor, Traffic Controller

A device or program/routine which provides preemption.

1.1.39 Preferred Sequence

See 3.5.1.8.

1.1.40 Progression

The act of various controller units providing specific green indications in accordance with a time schedule to permit continuous operation of groups of vehicles along the street at a planned speed.

1.1.41 Red Indication, Minimum (Red Revert)

Provision within the controller unit to assure a minimum **Red** signal indication in a phase following the **Yellow Change** interval of that phase.

1.1.42 Rest

The interval portion of a phase when present timing requirements have been completed.

1.1.43 Ring

See 3.5.1.1.

1.1.44 Split

The segment of the cycle length allocated to each phase or interval that may occur (expressed in percent or seconds).

In an actuated controller unit, split is the time in the cycle allocated to a phase.

In a pretimed controller unit, split is the time allocated to an interval.

1.1.45 Suppressors

1.1.45.1 Suppressor, Radio Interference

A device inserted in the power line in the controller assembly (cabinet) that reduces the radio interference.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.1.45.2 Suppressor, Transient

A device which serves to reduce transient over-voltages.

1.1.46 Switch

1.1.46.1 Auto/Manual Switch

A device which, when operated, discontinues normal signal operation and permits manual operation.

1.1.46.2 Flash Control Switch

A device which, when operated, discontinues normal signal operation and causes the flashing of any predetermined combination of signal indications.

1.1.46.3 Power Line Switch (Disconnect Switch)

A manual switch for disconnecting power to the controller assembly and traffic control signals.

1.1.46.4 Recall Switch

A manual switch which causes the automatic return of the right-of-way to its associated phase.

1.1.46.5 Signal Load Switch

A device used to switch power to the signal lamps.

1.1.46.6 Signal Shut-Down Switch

A manual switch to discontinue the operation of traffic control signals without affecting the power supply to other components in the controller cabinet.

1.1.47 Time Base Control

A means for the automatic selection of modes of operation of traffic signals in a manner prescribed by a predetermined time schedule.

1.1.48 Terminals, Field

Devices for connecting wires entering the controller assembly.

1.1.49 Timing

1.1.49.1 Analog Timing

Pertaining to a method of timing that measures continuous variables, such as voltage or current.

1.1.49.2 Concurrent Timing

A mode of controller unit operation whereby a traffic phase can be selected and timed simultaneously and independently with another traffic phase.

1.1.49.3 Digital Timing

Pertaining to a method of timing that operates by counting discrete units.

1.1.49.4 Timing Plan

The Split times for all segments (Phase/Interval) of the coordination cycle.

1.1.50 Yield

A command which permits termination of the **green** interval. (See 1.1.22.)

1.2 DETECTORS

1.2.1 Actuation

The operation of any type of detector.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.2.2 Antenna

The radiating or receiving elements utilized in transmitting or receiving electromagnetic waves.

1.2.3 Call

See 1.1.4.

1.2.4 Detection

1.2.4.1 Advisory Detection

The detection of vehicles on one or more intersection approaches solely for the purpose of modifying the phase sequence and/or length for other approaches to the intersection.

1.2.4.2 Passage Detection

The ability of a vehicle detector to detect the passage of a vehicle moving through the zone of detection and to ignore the presence of a vehicle stopped within the zone of detection.

1.2.4.3 Presence Detection

The ability of a vehicle detector to sense that a vehicle, whether moving or stopped, has appeared in its zone of detection.

1.2.5 Detector

A device for indicating the presence or passage of vehicles or pedestrians.

1.2.5.1 Bidirectional Detector

A detector that is capable of being actuated by vehicles proceeding in either of two directions and of indicating in which of the directions the vehicles were moving.

1.2.5.2 Calling Detector

A detector that is installed in a selected location to detect vehicles which may not otherwise be detected and whose output may be modified by the controller unit.

1.2.5.3 Classification Detector

A detector that has the capability of differentiating among types of vehicles.

1.2.5.4 Directional Detector

A detector that is capable of being actuated only by vehicles proceeding in one specified direction.

1.2.5.5 Extension Detector

A detector that is arranged to register actuations at the controller unit only during the green interval for that approach so as to extend the green time of the actuating vehicles.

1.2.5.6 Infrared Detector

A detector that senses radiation in the infrared spectrum.

1.2.5.7 Light-Sensitive Detector

A detector that utilizes a light-sensitive device for sensing the passage of an object interrupting a beam of light directed at the sensor.

1.2.5.8 Loop Detector

A detector that senses a change in inductance of its inductive loop sensor by the passage or presence of a vehicle near the sensor.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.2.5.9 Magnetic Detector

A detector that senses changes in the earth's magnetic field caused by the movement of a vehicle near its sensor.

1.2.5.10 Magnetometer Detector

A detector that measures the difference in the level of the earth's magnetic forces caused by the passage or presence of a vehicle near its sensor.

1.2.5.11 Nondirectional Detector

A detector that is capable of being actuated by vehicles proceeding in any direction.

1.2.5.12 Pedestrian Detector

A detector that is responsive to operation by or the presence of a pedestrian.

1.2.5.13 Pneumatic Detector

A pressure-sensitive detector that uses a pneumatic tube as a sensor.

1.2.5.14 Pressure-Sensitive Detector

A detector that is capable of sensing the pressure of a vehicle passing over the surface of its sensor.

1.2.5.15 Radar Detector

A detector that is capable of sensing the passage of a vehicle through its field of emitted microwave energy.

1.2.5.16 System Detector

Any type of vehicle detector used to obtain representative traffic flow information.

1.2.5.17 Side-Fire Detector

A vehicle detector with its sensor located to one side of the roadway.

1.2.5.18 Sound-Sensitive Vehicle Detector

A detector that responds to sound waves generated by the passage of a vehicle near the surface of the sensor.

1.2.5.19 Ultrasonic Detector

A detector that is capable of sensing the passage or presence of a vehicle through its field of emitted ultrasonic energy.

1.2.6 Detector Mode

A term used to describe the operation of a detector channel output when a presence detection occurs.

1. Pulse Mode: Detector produces a short output pulse when detection occurs.
2. Controlled Output: The ability of a detector to produce a pulse that has a predetermined duration regardless of the length of time a vehicle is in the zone of detection.
3. Continuous-Presence Mode: Detector output continues if any vehicle (first or last remaining) remains in the zone of detection.
4. Limited-Presence Mode: Detector output continues for a limited period of time if vehicles remain in zone of detection.

1.2.7 Inductive Loop Detector System

See 6.5.1.5.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1.2.8 Inductive Loop Detector Unit

See 6.5.1.6.

1.2.9 Lead-in Cable

See 6.5.1.4.

1.2.10 Output

1.2.10.1 Extension Output

The ability of a detector to continue its output for a predetermined length of time after the vehicle has left its zone of detection.

1.2.10.2 Delayed Output

The ability of a detector to delay its output for a predetermined length of time after a vehicle has entered its zone of detection.

1.2.11 Probe

The sensor form that is commonly used with a magnetometer type detector.

1.2.12 Sensor

The sensing element of a detector.

1.2.13 Vehicle Detector System

See 6.5.1.10.

1.2.14 Zone of Detection (Sensing Zone)

That area of the roadway within which a vehicle will be detected by a vehicle detector system.

1.3 SIGNAL

A device which is electrically operated by a controller assembly and which communicates a prescribed action (or actions) to traffic.

1.4 CROSS-REFERENCE DEFINITIONS

Other Term	NEMA Term	NEMA No.
All-Red Interval	Red Clearance Interval	1.1.24.3
Control Box	Cabinet	1.1.3
Dispatcher	Controller Unit	1.1.8
Filter	Radio Interference Suppressor	1.1.45
Fire Preemptor	Traffic Controller Preemptor	1.1.38
Fixed Time Controller	Pretimed Controller Assembly	1.1.7.8
Housing	Cabinet	1.1.3
Line Filter	Radio Interference Suppressor	1.1.45
Lock-In	Detector Memory	1.1.27.1
Manual Control	Manual Operation	1.1.25.1
Pad	Pressure-Sensitive Detector	1.2.5.14
Progression	Coordinator	1.1.10
Railroad Preemptors	Traffic Controller Preemptor	1.1.38
Red Revert	Minimum Red Indication	1.1.41
Sequence	Interval Sequence	1.1.24.4
Time Cycle	Cycle	1.1.11
Timer	Controller Unit	1.1.8
Traffic Controllers	Controller Assembly	1.1.7
Traffic Phase	Phase	1.1.35
Treadle	Pressure-Sensitive Detector	1.2.5.14
Vehicle Interval	Unit Extension	1.1.17
Vehicle Interval	Passage Period	1.1.33
Volume-Density Operation	Gap Reduction	1.1.21
Volume-Density Operation	Added Initial Portion	1.1.36.2

© NEMA

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Section 2
ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Section 2 relates to environmental standards and operating conditions for intersection traffic control equipment.

This section establishes the limits of the environmental and operation conditions in which the Controller Assembly will perform.

This section defines the minimum test procedures which may be used to demonstrate conformance of a device type with the provisions of the standard. These test procedures do not verify equipment performance under every possible combination of environmental requirements covered by this standard.

2.1 ENVIRONMENTAL AND OPERATING STANDARDS

The requirements (voltage, temperature, etc.) of this clause shall apply in any combination.

2.1.1 Definitions of Major Units of the Controller Assembly

For the purpose of this clause, "Major units of the Controller Assembly (CA)" shall include the Controller Unit (CU), Malfunction Management Unit (MMU), Bus Interface Units (BIUs), Cabinet Power Supply, Load Switches, Flasher(s), and Detector(s).

2.1.2 Operating Voltage

The nominal voltage shall be 120 volts alternating current.

The voltage range for Major units of the Controller Assembly shall be 89 to 135 volts alternating current.

The Malfunction Management Unit shall provide the detection of proper AC Line voltage and cause a flash state when not proper (see 4.4.1).

An AC line voltage greater than 98 shall be considered proper and less than 89 shall be considered improper for the CA. The MMU shall cause a transition between ‘flash’ and ‘normal’ states within the range of 89 and 98 volts alternating current.

2.1.3 Operating Frequency

The operating frequency range shall be 60 hertz $\pm$3.0 hertz.

2.1.4 Power Interruption

A power interruption is defined as 0 volts alternating current.

Two or more power interruptions which are separated by power restorations of 1500 or more milliseconds shall be considered as separate interruptions.

Three interruptions of 300 milliseconds or less which are separated by power restorations of 300 milliseconds or more shall not cause the CA to revert to its start-up state.

Detection of power interruption to the CA will be provided by the MMU. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

2.1.4.1 Field Terminal Outputs

The CA Field Terminal Outputs shall react to a power interruption, upon restoration of power, as follows:

1. Interruption of 450 Milliseconds or Less: Shall continue to operate as though the power interruption had not occurred.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2. Interruption of More Than 450 Milliseconds and Less than 500 Milliseconds: Shall either continue to operate (2.1.4.1.1) or shall revert to its start-up state (2.1.4.1.3).

3. Interruption of 500 Milliseconds or More: Shall revert to its start-up state.

2.1.5 Temperature and Humidity

The CA shall maintain all programmed functions when the temperature and humidity ambients are within the specified limits defined herein (2.1.5.1 and 2.1.5.2).

2.1.5.1 Ambient Temperature

The operating ambient temperature range shall be from -34°C (-30°F) to +74°C (+165°F). The storage temperature range shall be from -45°C (-50°F) to +85°C (+185°F).

The rate of change in ambient temperature shall not exceed 17°C (30°F) per hour, during which the relative humidity shall not exceed 95 percent.

2.1.5.2 Humidity

The relative humidity shall not exceed 95 percent non-condensing over the temperature range of +4.4°C (+40°F) to +43.3°C (+110°F).

Above +43.3°C (110°F), constant absolute humidity shall be maintained. This will result in the relative humidities shown in Table 2-1 for dynamic testing.

Table 2-1
WET-BULB DRY-BULB RELATIVE HUMIDITY AT BAROMETRIC PRESSURE OF 29.92 In. Hg.

Dry Bulb		Relative Humidity	Wet Bulb	
°F	°C	Percent *	°F	°C
40	4.4	75	37	2.8
50	10.0	80	47	8.3
60	15.6	83	57	13.9
70	21.1	86	67	19.4
80	26.7	87	77	25.0
90	32.2	89	87	30.6
100	37.8	89	97	36.1
110	43.3	90	107	41.7
120	48.9	70	109	42.8
130	54.4	50	109	42.8
140	60.0	38	109	42.8
150	65.6	28	109	42.8
160	71.1	21	109	42.8
165	73.9	18	109	42.8

* For dynamic testing

2.1.6 Transients, Power Service

The CA shall maintain all defined functions when the independent test pulse levels specified in 2.1.6.1 and 2.1.6.2 occur on the alternating-current power service.

2.1.6.1 High-Repetition Noise Transients

The test pulses shall not exceed the following conditions:

1. Amplitude: 300 volts, both positive and negative polarity.

2. Peak Power: 2500 watts.

3. Repetition: 1 pulse approximately every other cycle moving uniformly over the full wave in order to sweep across 360 degrees of the line cycle once every 3 seconds.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4. Pulse Rise Time: 1 microsecond.
5. Pulse Width: 10 microseconds.

2.1.6.2 Low-Repetition High-Energy Transients

The test pulses shall not exceed the following conditions:

1. Amplitude: 600 volts $\pm$ 5 percent, both positive and negative polarity.
2. Energy Source: Capacitor, oil filled, 10 microfarads $\pm$ 10 percent, internal surge impedance less than 1 ohm.
3. Repetition: 1 discharge every 10 seconds.
4. Pulse Position: Random across 360 degrees of the line cycle.

2.1.7 Transients, Input-Output Terminals

The CA shall maintain all defined functions, when the test pulse occurs on the input-output terminals.

1. Amplitude: 300 volts, both positive and negative polarity.
2. Pulse Source: 1000 ohms nominal impedance.
3. Repetition: 1 pulse per second, for a minimum of 5 pulses per selected terminal.
4. Pulse rise time: 1 microsecond.
5. Pulse width: 10 microseconds.

2.1.8 Nondestruct Transient Immunity

The CA shall be capable of withstanding a high energy transient having the following characteristics repeatedly applied to the alternating current input terminals (no other power connected to terminals) without failure of the test specimen:

1. Amplitude: 1000 volts + 5 percent, both positive and negative polarity.
2. Energy Source: Capacitor, oil filled, 15 microfarads + 10 percent, internal surge impedance less than 1 ohm.
3. Repetition: Applied to the CA once every 2 seconds for a maximum of three applications for each polarity.
4. After the foregoing, the CA shall perform all defined functions upon the application of nominal alternating current power.

2.1.9 Vibration

The major units of the CA shall maintain all programmed functions and physical integrity when subjected to a vibration of 5 to 30 Hz up to 0.5g's applied in each of three mutually perpendicular planes.

2.1.10 Shock

The major units of the CA shall suffer neither permanent mechanical deformation nor any damage that renders the unit inoperable, when subjected to a shock of 10g applied in each of three mutually perpendicular planes.

2.2 CONTROLLER UNIT TESTS

The CU shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in this Section. This Clause defines the test procedures required to demonstrate the conformance of a CU type with the provisions of the standards.

In the interest of ensuring safe and reliable operation of the CU covered by these standards, the stress levels which the tests encompass are nominal **Worse-Case** conditions the units experience in operation.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

These tests are intended for type acceptance testing, not production testing. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

2.2.1 Timing Accuracy

2.2.1.1 Deviation

The CU shall maintain all of the programmed functions within the maximum timing deviation.

2.2.1.2 Setability and Repeatability

The accuracy of the timing of any interval portion is limited by the setability and repeatability error of that interval portion's readout and setting device.

1. Setability is the difference between the indication and the actual timings obtained.
2. Repeatability is the measure of the duplicating capability for repetitive timings of a given setting. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

2.2.2 Timing

Timing shall be accomplished by digital methods. The setability shall be in discrete increments. The timing shall relate to the power line frequency so that no cumulative or drift errors shall occur in timing intervals. Any interval timed shall not deviate by more than 100 milliseconds from its set value at a power source frequency of 60 hertz.

2.2.3 Vibration

The CU shall maintain the programmed functions and physical integrity when subjected to a vibration of 5 to 30 Hz up to 0.5g applied in each of three mutually perpendicular planes.

2.2.4 Shock

The CU shall suffer neither permanent mechanical deformation nor any damage that renders the unit inoperable, when subjected to a shock of 10g applied in each of three mutually perpendicular planes.

2.2.5 Test Facilities

All instrumentation required in the test procedures, such as voltmeters, ammeters, thermocouples, pulse timers, etc. shall be selected in accordance with good engineering practice. In all cases where time limit tests are required, the allowance for any instrumentation errors shall be included in the limit test.

1. Variable Voltage Source: A variable source capable of supplying 10 amperes from 89 to 135 volts AC.
2. Environmental Chamber: An environmental chamber capable of attaining temperatures of -34°C (-30°F) to +74°C (+165°F) and relative humidities given in Table 2-1.
3. Transient Generator(s): Transient generator(s) capable of supplying the transients outlined in 2.1.6 through 2.1.8.

2.2.6 Test Unit

The test unit shall consist of one CU.

2.2.7 Test Procedure: Transients, Temperature, Voltage, and Humidity

2.2.7.1 Test A: Placement In Environmental Chamber and Check-Out of Hook-Up

1. Place the test unit in the environmental chamber. Connect the test unit AC input circuit to a variable voltage power transformer, voltmeter, and transient generator. The transient generator shall be connected to the AC input circuit at a point at least 4.6 meters (15 feet) from the AC power source and not over 3 meters (10 feet) from the input to the test unit.
2. Connect test switches to the appropriate terminals to simulate the various features incorporated into the test unit. Place these switches in the proper position for desired operation.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3. Verify the test hook-up. Adjust the variable-voltage power transformer to 120 volts AC and apply power to the test unit. Verify that the test unit goes through its prescribed start-up sequence and cycles properly in accordance with the operation determined by the positioning of test switches in item 2.

Upon the satisfactory completion and verification of the test hook-up, proceed with Test B.

2.2.7.2 Test B: Transient Tests (Power Service)

1. Program the test unit to dwell. Verify the input voltage is 120 volts AC.
2. Set the transient generator to provide high-repetition noise transients as follows:
   a. Amplitude: 300 volts $\pm$ 5 percent, both positive and negative polarity.
   b. Peak Power: 2500 watts.
   c. Repetition Rate: One pulse every other cycle moving uniformly over the full wave in order to sweep once every 3 seconds across 360 degrees of line cycle.
   d. Pulse Rise Time: 1 microsecond.
   e. Pulse Width: 10 microseconds.
3. Apply the transient generator output to the AC voltage input for at least 5 minutes. Repeat this test for at least two conditions of dwell for the test unit. The test unit must continue to dwell without malfunction.
4. Program the test unit to cycle. Turn on the transient generator (output in accordance with item 2) for 10 minutes, during which time the test unit shall continue to cycle without malfunction.
5. Set a transient generator to provide high-repetition noise transients as follows:
   a. Amplitude: 300 volts +5 percent, both positive and negative polarity.
   b. Source Impedance: Not less than 1000 ohms nominal impedance.
   c. Repetition: One pulse per second for a minimum of five pulses per selected terminal.
   d. Pulse Rise Time: 1 microsecond.
   e. Pulse Width: 10 microseconds.

   Program the test unit to dwell. Verify the input voltage is 120 volts AC.
6. Apply the transient generator (output in accordance with item 5) between logic ground and the connecting cable termination of selected Connector A, B, or C input/output terminals of the test unit.

   A representative sampling of selected input/output terminations shall be tested. The test unit shall continue to dwell without malfunction.
7. Program the test unit to cycle. Turn on the transient generator (output in accordance with item 5) and apply its output to the selected Connector A, B, or C input/output terminations. The test unit shall continue to cycle without malfunction.
8. Set a transient generator to provide low-repetition high-energy transients as follows:
   a. Amplitude: 600 volts +5 percent, both positive and negative polarity.
   b. Energy Discharge Source: Capacitor, oil-filled, 10 microfarads.
   c. Repetition Rate: One discharge each 10 seconds.
   d. Pulse Position: Random across 360 degrees of line cycle.
9. Program the test unit to dwell. Verify the input voltage is 120 volts AC.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

10. Discharge the oil-filled 10-microfarad capacitor ten times for each polarity across the AC voltage input. Repeat this test for at least two conditions of dwell. The test unit shall continue to dwell without malfunction.

11. Program the test unit to cycle. Discharge the capacitor ten times for each polarity while the test unit is cycling, during which time the test unit shall continue to cycle without malfunction.

12. During the preceding transient tests (item 3 through 11), the test unit must continue its programmed functions.

    The test unit shall not skip intervals or interval portions when cycling; place false calls or produce false indications while in dwell; disrupt normal sequences in any manner; or change timings.

13. Non-destruct Transient Immunity:

    a. Turn off the AC power input to the test unit from the variable-voltage power source.

    b. Apply the following high-energy transient to the AC voltage input terminals of the test unit (no other power connected to terminals):

        (1) Amplitude: 1000 volts, both positive and negative polarity.

        (2) Peak Power Discharge: Capacitor, oil-filled, 15 microfarads.

        (3) Maximum Repetition Rate: Applied to the CA once every 2 seconds for a maximum of three applications for each polarity.

    c. Upon completion of the foregoing, apply 120 volts AC to the test unit and verify that the test unit goes through its prescribed start-up sequence and cycles properly in accordance with the programmed functions. The first operation of the over-current protective device during this test shall not be considered a failure of the test unit.

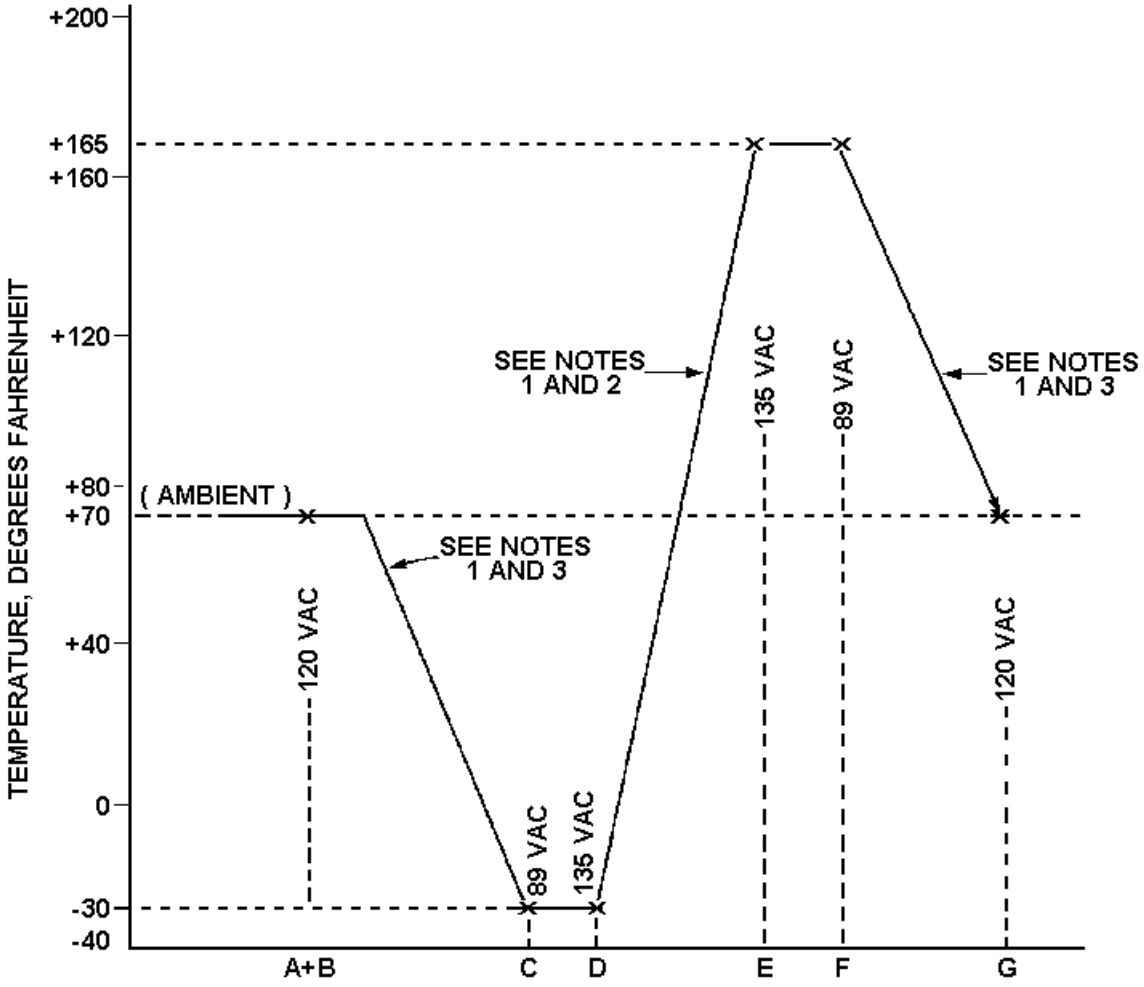
NOTE—Test C through G follow the profile indicated in Figure 2-1 to demonstrate the ability of the test unit to function reliably under stated conditions of temperature, voltage, and humidity.

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale



--

Figure 2-1
TEST PROFILE

NOTES:

1. The rate of change in temperature shall not exceed 17°C (30°F) per hour.
2. Humidity controls shall be set in conformance with the humidities given in Table 2-1 during the temperature change between Test D and Test E.
3. If a change in both voltage and temperature are required for the next test, the voltage shall be selected prior to the temperature change.

2.2.7.3 Test C—Low-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests

1. Definition of Test Conditions
   a. Environmental Chamber Door: Closed.
   b. Temperature: -34°C (-30°F).
   c. Low Voltage: 89 volts AC.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

d. Humidity Control: Off.

2. Test Procedure: While at room temperature, adjust the input voltage to 89 volts AC and verify that the test unit is still operable.

   a. With the test unit cycling, lower the test chamber to -34°C (-30°F) at a rate not exceeding 17°C (30°F) per hour. Allow the test unit to cycle for a minimum of 5 hours at -34°C (-30°F) with the humidity controls in the off position. Then operate the test switches as necessary to determine that all functions are operable.

   b. Power shall then be removed from the test unit for a minimum period of 5 hours. Upon restoration of power, the test unit shall go through its prescribed start-up sequence and then resume cycling.

   c. With the test unit at -34°C (-30°F) and the input voltage at 89 volts AC, the following items shall be evaluated against the respective standards:

      1) 2.2.10 Power Interruption Tests

      2) 2.2.11 Timing Accuracy Tests

      3) 2.2.11.2 Repeatability

On satisfactory completion of this test, proceed with Test D.

2.2.7.4 Test D—Low-Temperature High-Voltage Tests

1. Definition of Test Conditions

   a. Environmental Chamber Door: closed.

   b. Low Temperature: -34°C (-30°F)

   c. High Voltage: 135 volts AC.

   d. Humidity Controls: off.

2. Test Procedure: While at -34°C (-30°F) and with humidity controls off, adjust the input voltage to 135 volts AC and allow the test unit to cycle for 1 hour. Then operate the test switches as necessary to determine that all functions are operable.

3. With the test unit at -34°C (-30°F) and the input voltage at 135 volts AC (humidity controls off), the following items shall be evaluated against the respective standards:

      a. 2.2.10 Power Interruption Tests

      b. 2.2.11 Timing Accuracy Tests

      c. 2.2.11.2 Repeatability

On satisfactory completion of this test, proceed to Test E.

2.2.7.5 Test E—High-Temperature High-Voltage Tests

1. Definition of Test Conditions

   a. Environmental Chamber Door: Closed.

   b. High Temperature: 74°C (+165°F).

   c. High Voltage: 135 volts AC.

   d. Humidity Controls: In accordance with the humidities given in Table 2-1.

2. Test Procedure—With the test unit cycling, raise the test chamber to +74°C (+165°F) at a rate not to exceed 17°C (30°F) per hour. Verify the input voltage is 135 volts AC.

3. Set the humidity controls to not exceed 95 percent relative humidity over the temperature range of 4.4°C (40°F) to 43.3°C (110°F). When the temperature reaches 43°C (109°F), readjust the humidity

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

control to maintain constant absolute humidity; 43°C (109°F) wet bulb which results in the relative humidities shown in Table 2-1. Verify that the test unit continues to cycle satisfactory during the period of temperature increase and at established levels of relative humidity.

a. Allow the test unit to cycle for a minimum of 15 hours at 74°C (165°F) and 18 percent relative humidity. Then operate the test switches as necessary to determine that all functions are operable.

b. With the test unit at 74°C (165°F) and 18 percent relative humidity and the input voltage at 135 volts AC, the following items shall be evaluated against the respective standards:

1) 2.2.10 Power Interruption Tests

2) 2.2.11 Timing Accuracy Tests

3) 2.2.11.2 Repeatability

On satisfactory completion of this test, proceed to Test F.

2.2.7.6 Test F—High-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests

1. Definition of Test Conditions

   a. Environmental Chamber Door: Closed.

   b. High Temperature: 74°C (165°F).

   c. Low Voltage: 89 volts AC.

   d. Humidity Controls: 18 percent relative humidity and 43°C (109°F) wet bulb.

2. Test Procedure: Adjust the input voltage to 89 volts AC and proceed to operate the test switches to determine that all functions are operable. With the test unit at 74°C (165°F) and 18 percent relative humidity, 43°C (109°F) wet bulb, and the input voltage at 89 volts AC, the following items shall be evaluated against the respective standards:

   2.2.10 Power Interruption Tests

   2.2.11 Timing Accuracy Tests

   2.2.11.2 Repeatability

On satisfactory completion of this test, proceed to Test G.

2.2.7.7 Test G—Test Termination

1. Program the test unit to cycle.
2. Adjust the input voltage to 120 volts AC.
3. Set the controls on the environmental chamber to return to room temperature, 15°C (60°F) to 27°C (80°F), with the humidity controls in the off position. The rate of temperature change shall not exceed 17°C (30°F) per hour.
4. Verify the test unit continues to cycle properly.
5. Allow the test unit to stabilize at room temperature for 1 hour. Proceed to operate the test switches to determine that all functions are operable.

2.2.7.8 Test H—Appraisal Of Equipment Under Test

1. A failure shall be defined as any occurrence which results in other than normal operation of the equipment. (See item 2 for details.) If a failure occurs, the test unit shall be repaired or components replaced, and the test during which failure occurred shall be restarted from its beginning.
2. The test unit is considered to have failed if any of the following occur:

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

a. If the test unit skips intervals or interval portions, places false calls, presents false indications, exhibits disruption of normal sequence, or produces changes in timing beyond specified tolerances, or

b. If the test unit fails to satisfy the requirements of 2.2.7 Tests A to G, inclusive.

3. An analysis of the failure shall be performed and corrective action taken before the test unit is retested in accordance with this standard. The analysis must outline what action was taken to preclude additional failures during the tests.

4. When the number of failures exceeds two, it shall be considered that the test unit fails to meet these standards. The test unit may be completely retested after analysis of the failure and necessary repairs have been made in accordance with item 3.

5. Upon completion of the tests, the test unit shall be visually inspected. If material changes are observed which will adversely affect the life of the test unit, the cause and conditions shall be corrected before making further tests.

6. Upon satisfactory completion of all of the tests described in 2.2.7.1 through 2.2.7.7, the test unit shall be tested in accordance with 2.2.8.

2.2.8 Vibration Test

2.2.8.1 Purpose of Test

This test is intended to duplicate vibrations encountered by the test unit when installed at its **street-corner** location.

The test unit shall be fastened securely to the vibration test table prior to the start of the test.

2.2.8.2 Test Equipment Requirements

1. Vibration table with adequate table surface area to permit placement of the test unit.

2. Vibration test shall consist of:

   a. Vibration in each of three mutually perpendicular planes.

   b. Adjustment of frequency of vibration over the range from 5 to 30 Hertz.

   c. Adjustment of test table excursion (double amplitude displacement) to maintain a ‘g’ value, measured at the test table, of 0.5g; as determined by the following formula:

      $g = 0.0511df^2$

      Where:

      d = excursion in inches

      f = frequency in Hertz

2.2.8.3 Resonant Search

1. With the test unit securely fastened to the test table, set the test table for a double amplitude displacement of 0.015 inch.

2. Cycle the test table over a search range from 5 to 30 Hz and back within a period of 12-1/2 minutes.

3. Conduct the resonant frequency search in each of the three mutually perpendicular planes.

4. Note and record the resonant frequency determined from each plane.

   a. In the event of more than on resonant frequency in a given plane, record the most severe resonance.

   b. If resonant frequencies appear equally severe, record each resonant frequency.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

c. If no resonant frequency occurs for a given plane within the prescribed range, 30 Hz shall be recorded.

2.2.8.4 Endurance Test

1. Vibrate the test unit in each plane at its resonant frequency for a period of 1 hour at an amplitude resulting in 0.5g acceleration.
2. When more than one resonant frequency has been recorded in accordance with 2.2.8.3.4, the test period of 1 hour shall be divided equally between the resonant frequencies.
3. The total time of the endurance test shall be limited to 3 hours, 1 hour in each of three mutually perpendicular planes.

2.2.8.5 Disposition of Equipment Under Test

1. The test unit shall be examined to determine that no physical damage has resulted from the vibration tests.
2. The test unit shall be checked to determine that it is functionally operable in all modes of its prescribed operation.
3. The test unit may be removed from the test table. Upon satisfactory completion of the vibration test, proceed with the shock (impact) test described in 2.2.9.

2.2.9 Shock (Impact) Test

2.2.9.1 Purpose of Test

The purpose of this test is to determine that the test unit is capable of withstanding the shock (impact) to which it may reasonably be subjected during handling and transportation in the process of installation, repair, and replacement. It is to be noted that the test unit is not, at this time, in its shipping carton.

The test unit shall be firmly fastened to the specimen table. In each of its three planes the test unit shall be dropped from a calibrated height to result in a shock force of 10g.

2.2.9.2 Test Equipment Requirements

1. Shock (impact) test fixture equivalent to that suggested by the simplified sketch shown in Figure 2-2.
2. The test table shall have a surface area sufficient to accommodate the test unit.
3. The test table shall be calibrated and the items tested as indicated. This shock test defines the test shock to be 10g $\pm$1g.
   a. Calibration of the test equipment for these shock tests shall be measured by three accelerometers having fixed shock settings of 9g, 10g, and 11g. They shall be Inertia Switch Incorporated ST-355, or the equivalent. These devices shall be rigidly attached to the test table.
   b. Calibration of the fixture for each item to be tested shall be as follows:
      1) Place a dummy load weighing within 10 percent of the test unit on the table.
      2) Reset the three accelerometers and drop the test table from a measured height.
      3) Observe that the accelerometers indicate the following:

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

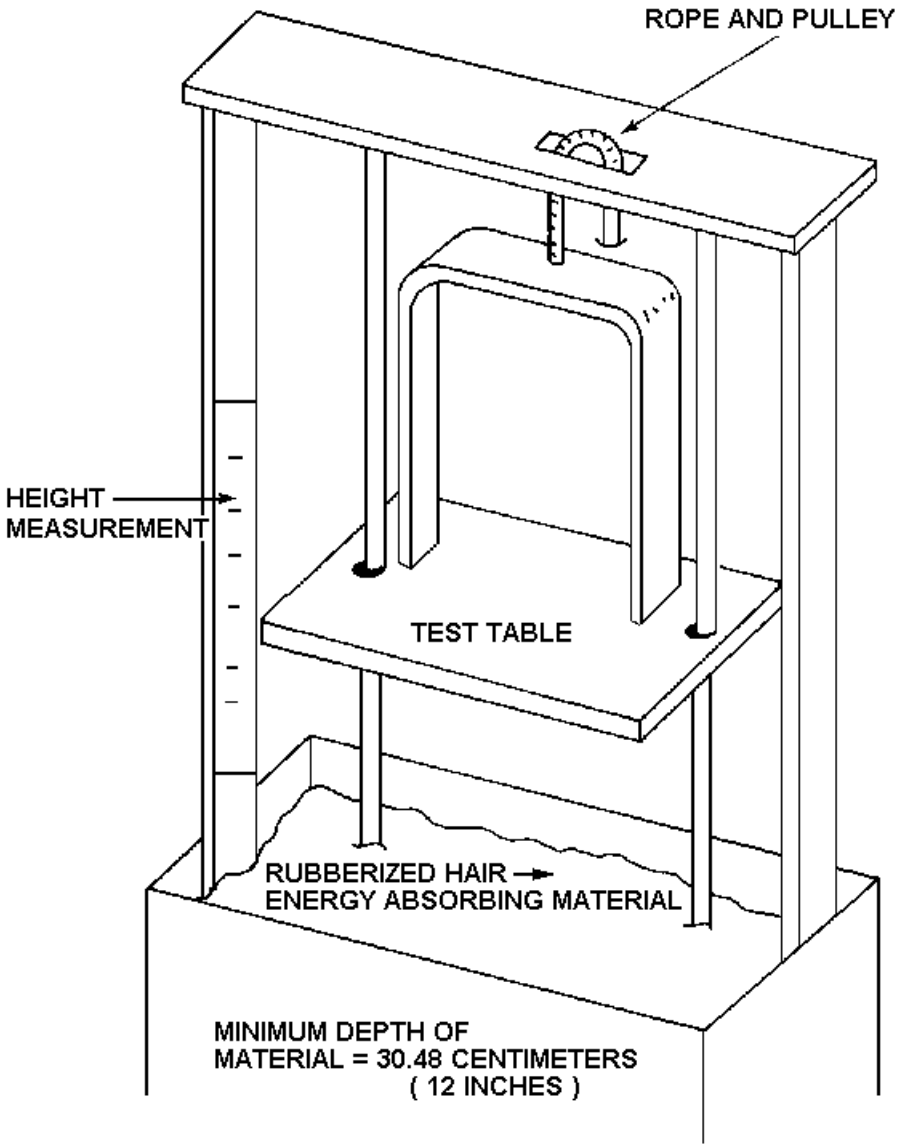


Figure 2-2
SHOCK TEST FIXTURE

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

a) The 9g accelerometer shall be activated.

b) The 10g unit may or may not be actuated.

c) The 11g unit shall not be actuated.

c. Repeat calibration test (a) and (b) adjusting the height of the drop until, on ten successive drops, the following occurs:

1) The 9g unit is actuated ten times.

2) The 10g unit is actuated between four to eight times.

3) The 11g unit is not actuated on any of the ten drops.

2.2.9.3 Test Procedure

1. The calibration height of the drop for the particular item under test as determined in 2.2.9.2 shall be used in this procedure.
2. Secure the test unit to the test table surface so that the test unit rests on one of its three mutually perpendicular planes.
3. Raise the test table to the calibrated height.
4. Release the test table from the calibrated height, allowing a free fall into the box of energy absorbing material below.
5. Repeat the drop test for each of the remaining two mutually perpendicular planes, using the same calibrated height for each drop test of the same test unit.
6. The observations of the accelerometer for the three tests of the test item shall be:
   a. The 9g unit is actuated for all three tests. (Repeat the calibration if the unit is not actuated.)
   b. The 10g unit may or may not be actuated in these tests.
   c. The 11g unit is not actuated on any drop. (If the unit is actuated, repeat the calibration only if the test unit has suffered damage.)

2.2.9.4 Disposition of Test Unit

1. Check the test unit for any physical damage resulting from the drop tests.
2. Check the test unit to determine that it is functionally operable in all modes of its prescribed operation.
3. Satisfactory completion of all environmental tests, including the shock (impact) is required.

2.2.10 Power Interruption Tests

The following power interruption tests shall be conducted at low input voltage (89 volts AC) and high input voltage (135 volts AC) at -34°C (-30°F), and +74°C (+165°F).

2.2.10.1 500-Millisecond Power Interruption

While the test unit is cycling, remove the input voltage for a period of 500 milliseconds. Upon restoration of the input voltage, check to insure that the test unit continues normal operation as though no power interruption has occurred. Repeat this test three times.

2.2.10.2 1000-Millisecond Power Interruption

While the test unit is cycling, remove the input voltage for a period of 1000 milliseconds. Upon restoration of the input voltage, check to insure that the test unit reverts to its start-up sequence. Repeat this test three times.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2.2.11 Timing Accuracy Tests

A sampling of at least four intervals (or interval portions) shall be timed as specified in the following procedure.

2.2.11.1 Setability

The range of timing shall, as a minimum requirement, be as shown in 3.4.2.1 or 3.5.3.1.

The range of timing and setability requirements shall be in accordance with the functional standards given in this publication.

Determine that the setting of the interval time has been provided in positive discrete increments in accordance with the functional standards given in this publication for the specific test unit.

2.2.11.2 Repeatability

At all stabilized temperatures specified in 2.2.7.2 through 2.2.7.7, each interval shall be timed with the digital time indicator for ten consecutive cycles for one given setting for each interval.

Any interval timed shall not deviate by more than $\pm$100 milliseconds from its set value.

2.3 MALFUNCTION MANAGEMENT UNIT TESTS

The MMU shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in this Section. This Clause defines the test procedures required to demonstrate the conformance of a MMU with the provisions of the standards.

In the interest of ensuring safe and reliable operation of the MMU covered by these standards, the stress levels which the tests encompass are nominal **Worst Case** conditions the units may experience in operation. These tests are intended for type acceptance testing and not production testing. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

2.3.1 Test Facilities

1. A variable AC voltage source capable of providing AC test voltages from 0 to 135 volts RMS AC, 5 amperes minimum capacity.
2. Test probe or test fixture to provide a means of applying the test voltage specified in item #1 to selected field terminal inputs of the MMU.
3. A true RMS responding voltmeter to provide means of detecting a test voltage of 0 to 150 volts RMS AC. The voltmeter shall display actual RMS voltages without additional computation required. The true RMS meter shall measure a 60 Hz half wave sinusoidal signal with a peak voltage of 50 volts as 25 volts RMS.
4. A digital time indicator with sufficient scale to cover the range and resolution of timings to be taken and with a readout capability of at least 0.01 seconds.
5. Milliamp meter.
6. A variable direct current voltage source capable of providing 0.5 amperes from 0 to 30 VDC.
7. Test probe or test fixture provide a means of applying the test voltage in item #6 to selected inputs. See 4.3.3.5 and 4.3.3.6 of the MMU.
8. A transient generator capable of supplying the transients outlined in 2.1.6 through 2.1.8.
9. Test fixture capable of providing Port 1 communications with the MMU as outlined in 3.3.1 (Port 1 Physical and Protocol).

2.3.2 Standard Setup

Unless otherwise specified the MMU shall be set up as follows:

1. No fault state at the beginning of each test.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2. All **Green**, **Yellow**, and **Walk** inputs shall be zero volts.
3. All **Red** inputs shall be connected to AC Line.
4. **Red Enable** shall be zero volts AC.
5. The two **+24 Volt Monitor** inputs shall be connected to 24 volts DC.
6. **+24 Volt Monitor Inhibit** input and **CVM** input shall be zero volts DC.
7. MMU set up for non-latching voltage monitoring faults.
8. Program card programmed for no compatible channels.
9. MMU set up to operate as a type 12, without Port 1 communications.

Where AC Line is specified it is meant to mean any voltage from 89 volts RMS AC to 135 volts RMS AC.

2.3.3 Ground Isolation Test

Measure resistance between **AC Neutral** and **Logic Ground** to verify that it exceeds 10 megohms.

2.3.4 1500 pF Input Test

With AC Line applied to any **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** input apply 135 volts RMS AC through a 1500 pF capacitor to each of the other **Green**, **Yellow**, and **Walk** inputs one at a time for 1 second. Verify that no conflicts are recognized. Repeat test with AC Line applied to a different **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** input and verify that the input used for the first part of the test also does not cause a conflict to a 135 volts RMS AC signal applied through 1500 pF.

2.3.5 Conflict Low Voltage Test

1. Apply AC Line to one conflicting input and apply 15 volts RMS AC full wave signal to all other **Green**, **Yellow**, and **Walk** inputs for one second. Verify that no conflict is recognized within that interval. Repeat with AC Line on a different channel.
2. Same as 2.3.5.1 with 15 volts RMS AC (30 V peak 60 Hz) positive half wave signal.
3. Same as 2.3.5.1 with 15 volts RMS AC (30 V peak 60 Hz) negative half wave signal.

2.3.6 Conflict High Voltage Test

1. Apply **AC** Line to one conflicting input and apply 25 volts RMS AC full wave signal to each of the other **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** inputs. Verify that a conflict is recognized and the **Output** relay contacts transfer to the fault condition within the time parameters specified in 4.4.3. Repeat with AC Line on a different conflicting input to verify that the first input also responds correctly to 25 volts RMS AC input.
2. Same as 2.3.6.1 with 25 volts RMS AC (50 V peak 60 Hz) positive half wave signal.
3. Same as 2.3.6.1 with 25 volts RMS AC (50 V peak 60 Hz) negative half wave signal.
4. With the MMU in a Conflict fault state, verify that the MMU remains in the Conflict fault state after the removal of the conflicting signals. Remove AC power from the MMU, allow enough time for the internal power supplies to **Bleed** down to 0 VDC before restoring AC power to the MMU. Verify that the AC power interruption does not cause reset of the fault or alter any fault data display indications.

2.3.7 Red Input Test

1. Apply 89 volts RMS AC to the **Red Enable** input. With all other **Red** inputs at AC Line, apply 50 volts RMS AC to each **Red** input and verify that a Red Failure is recognized and the **Output** relay contacts transfer to the fault condition within the time parameters specified in 4.4.4.
2. With the MMU in the Red Failure state, verify that the MMU remains in the Red Failure state after the removal of the Red Failure. Remove AC power from the MMU, allow enough time for the internal

© NEMA

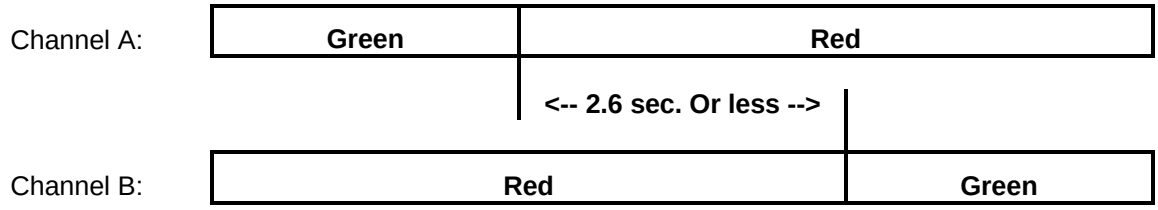
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

power supplies to **Bleed** down to 0 VDC before restoring AC power to the MMU. Verify that the AC power interruption does not cause reset of the fault or alter any fault data display indications.

3. Apply 89 volts RMS AC to the **Red Enable** input. Apply 70 volts RMS AC to all **Red** inputs for at least 2 seconds and verify that no faults are recognized within that interval.
4. With **Red Enable** input at 70 volts RMS AC and **Red** inputs at zero volts for at least 2 seconds, verify that no faults are recognized within that interval.

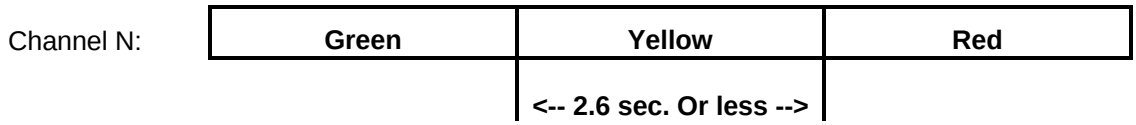
2.3.8 Minimum Yellow Change/Red Clearance Interval

1. With **Red Enable** signal connected to AC Line and all channels programmed to disable Minimum Yellow Change monitoring, apply the following sequence to any conflicting channels:



Verify that the MMU recognizes a 2.6 second or less clearance time **(Yellow + Red)** as a Minimum Yellow Change / Red Clearance failure. Verify that all other pairs of conflicting channels respond correctly to a Minimum Yellow Change / Red Clearance failure.

2. With Red **Enable** signal connected to AC Line, apply the following sequence to any channel enabled to monitor minimum Yellow Change interval:



Verify that a 2.6 second or less Yellow Change interval is detected as a Minimum Yellow Change / Red Clearance failure.

3. With the MMU in the Minimum Yellow Change/Red Clearance fault state, remove AC power from the MMU, allow enough time for the internal power supplies to **Bleed** down to 0 VDC before restoring AC power to the MMU. Verify that the AC power interruption does not cause reset of the fault or alter any fault data display indications.

2.3.9 Port 1 Timeout

With the MMU setup with Port 1 communications and the **Type Select** input set **True** (**Low**), verify that the **Output** relay contacts transfer to the fault condition after 300 milliseconds but before 400 milliseconds if a Type 0 frame is not received within this interval. Verify that no timeout occurs if the **Port 1 Disable** input is a **True** (**Low**) state.

2.3.10 DC Voltage Monitoring

For tests 2.3.10.1 to 2.3.10.6 apply 24 VDC to the **+24 Volt Inhibit** input.

1. Apply 22 VDC to both **+24 Volt Monitor** inputs. Verify that the MMU is in the no fault condition.
2. Apply 18 VDC to each **+24 Volt Monitor** input with the other input at 22 volts. Verify that applying the 18 VDC to either input is recognized as a +24 Volt Failure and the Output relay contacts transfer to the fault condition within the time parameter specified in 4.4.7.1. Verify that reapplying 22 VDC to the input(s) being tested restores the MMU to the no fault condition.
3. With the MMU in the no fault condition, verify that applying 16 VDC to the **Controller Voltage Monitor** (CVM) input is recognized as a CVM failure and the **Output** relay contacts transfer within the

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

time parameter specified in 4.4.8. Verify that applying 8 VDC to the CVM input restores the MMU to the no fault condition.

For tests 2.3.10.4 to 2.3.10.5 enable latching 24 volt failures.

4. Apply 18 VDC to either **+24 Volt Monitor** input and verify that a +24 Volt Failure is recognized and the **Output** relay contacts transfer within the time parameter specified in 4.4.7.1. Verify that reapplying 22 VDC to the input(s) being tested does not restore the MMU to the no fault condition or alter any fault data display indications.
5. With the MMU in the latched +24 Volt failure state, remove AC power from the MMU, allow enough time for the internal power supplies to **Bleed** down to 0 VDC before restoring AC power to the MMU. Verify that the AC power interruption does not cause reset of the fault or alter any fault data display indications.

For tests 2.3.10.6 to 2.3.10.7 enable latching CVM failures.

6. Apply 16 VDC to the **Controller Voltage Monitor** (CVM) input and verify that a CVM failure is recognized and the **Output** relay contacts transfer within the time parameter specified in 4.4.8. Verify that reapplying 8 VDC to the **CVM** input does not restore the MMU to the no-fault condition or alter any fault data display indications.
7. With the MMU in the latched CVM failure state, remove AC power from the MMU, allow enough time for the internal power supplies to **Bleed** down to 0 VDC before restoring AC power to the MMU. Verify that the AC power interruption does not cause reset of the fault or alter any fault data display indications.
8. Over the voltage range of 0 to +30 volts DC, verify that the maximum current into or out of the **+24 Volt Monitor** inputs is less than 10 milliamps.

2.3.11 MMU Power Failure

1. Remove AC power for 450 milliseconds and verify that both the **Start-Delay** and **Output** relays remain in the no fault condition for at least 100 milliseconds beyond the end of this interval.
2. Remove AC power for 500 milliseconds and verify that the MMU recognizes the 500 millisecond MMU **Power Failure**. Verify that both the **Start-Delay** and **Fault Output** relays transfer to the fault condition within 525 milliseconds following the start of the power failure interval. Verify that the MMU executes a **Start-Delay** and **Minimum Flash** time power-up sequence as specified in 4.3.4.2 and 4.4.2 upon restoration of AC power.
3. Slowly lower the AC Line input voltage level until the MMU recognizes an MMU **Power Failure**. Slowly raise the AC Line input voltage level until the MMU recognizes power restoration. Verify that the **Off** voltage level occurs above 89 volts RMS AC and that the **On** voltage level occurs below 98 volts RMS AC. Also verify that the hysteresis from **Off** to **On**, or **On** to **Off** is at least 3 volts.

2.3.12 Permissive Programming

With a program card programmed for all channels to be permissive, apply AC Line to all channels. Verify that no conflicts are recognized.

2.3.13 Continuous Reset

Create a conflict on at least two channels. Activate the front panel manual reset or **Reset** input. While the reset input is maintained, verify that the **Output** relay contacts transfer to the no fault condition and that a conflict failure is again recognized.

2.3.14 Transient Tests

The MMU shall maintain all defined functions while the independent test pulse levels specified in 2.1.6.1 and 2.1.6.2 are applied to the AC field inputs and AC Line input of the MMU.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The MMU shall be capable of withstanding a high energy transient specified in 2.1.8 applied to the AC field inputs and AC Line input (no other power connected to these inputs) of the MMU without failure of the unit under test. The MMU shall perform all defined functions upon application of power to the AC Line input of the MMU.

2.4 TERMINAL AND FACILITIES TESTS

The Terminal And Facilities shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in this Section. This Clause defines the test procedures required to demonstrate the conformance of a Terminal And Facilities with the provisions of the standards.

(Under Consideration)

2.5 LOAD SWITCH TESTS

The Load Switch shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in this Section. This Clause defines the test procedures required to demonstrate the conformance of a Load Switch with the provisions of the standards.

2.5.1 Test Procedure for PIV and DV/DT Testing

Each load switch output shall have a dv/dt rating of at least 100 volts per microsecond when measured at 21° C (70° F) using the circuit in Figure 2-3.

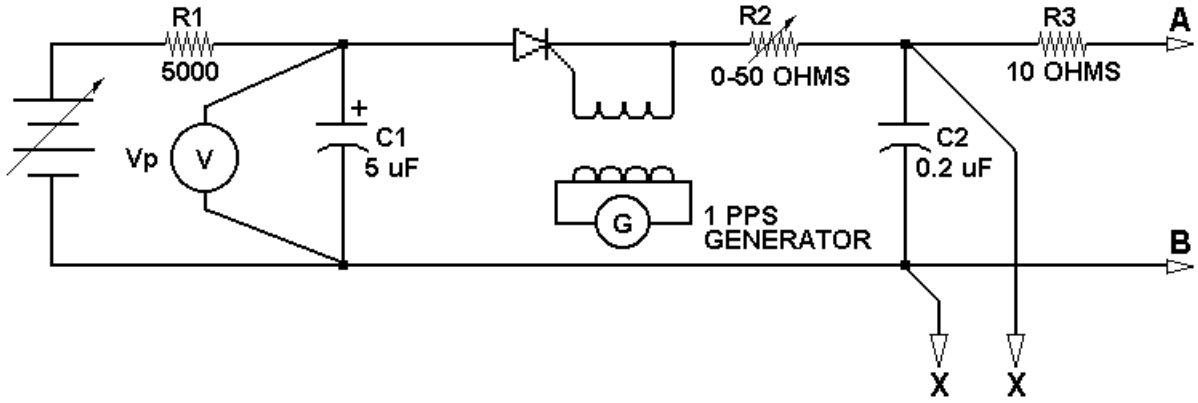


Figure 2-3
PIV AND DV/DT TEST CIRCUIT (SOLID STATE LOAD SWITCH OR FLASHER)

NOTES:
1. R2 and R3 shall be low inductance resistors such as carbon pile devices.
2. The load connected to x-x shall be between 500k ohms and 250 megohms (resistive).

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1. With the power removed from the load, connect pins 1 **(AC Line)** and 11 **(AC Neutral)** of the load switch to terminal A of the test circuit.
2. Connect terminal B of the test circuit to pin 3 (Circuit A) of the load switch.
3. Set Vp to 500 VDC.
4. Decrease R2 until the load switch output conducts or the value of R2 reaches zero. If the load switch starts conducting when the test pulse is applied, back R2 off slightly to a higher resistance point above which the load switch does not conduct. Conduction of the load switch circuit due to either PIV or DV/DT can be observed by the flickering or dipping of the Vp meter.
5. Measure the time required for the wave form at points x-x to reach 200 VDC DV/DT = 200/time measured.
6. Repeat the test steps 4 and 5 with terminals A and B of the test circuit reversed.
7. Connect terminal B of the test circuit to pin 5 (Circuit B) of the load switch and connect terminal A of the test circuit to pins 1 and 11 of the load switch.
8. Repeat steps 3 through 6 for circuit B of the load switch.
9. Connect terminal B of the test circuit to pin 7 (Circuit C) of the load switch and connect terminal A of the test circuit to pins 1 and 11 of the load switch.
10. Repeat steps 3 through 6 for circuit C of the load switch.

2.6 FLASHER TESTS

The Flasher shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in this Section. This Clause defines the test procedures required to demonstrate the conformance of a Flasher with the provisions of the standards.

2.6.1 Test Procedure for PIV and DV/DT Testing

The flasher output shall have a dv/dt rating of at least 100 volts per microsecond when measured at 21° C (70° F) using the circuit in Figure 2-3.

1. Connect pins 10 and 11 of the flasher to terminal A of the test circuit.
2. Connect terminal B of the test circuit to pin 7 of the flasher.
3. Set Vp to 500 VDC.
4. Decrease R2 until the flasher generates an output or the minimum resistance is reached. If the flasher fails, back off R2 slightly to higher resistance point at which the flasher just passes. Conduction of a flasher circuit due to either PIV or DV/DT can be observed by the flickering or dipping of the Vp meter.
5. Measure time required for wave at points x-x to reach 200 VDC DV/DT = 200/time measured.
6. Repeat the test with the connector pins A and B reversed.
7. Repeat steps 1 through 6 with terminal B of the test fixture connected to pin 8 of the flasher.

2.7 FLASH TRANSFER RELAY TESTS

The Flash Transfer Relay shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in this Section. This Clause defines the test procedures required to demonstrate the conformance of a Flash Transfer Relay with the provisions of the standards.

(Under Consideration)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2.8 LOOP DETECTOR UNIT TESTS

The Loop Detector Unit shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in this Section. This Clause defines the test procedures required to demonstrate the conformance of a Loop Detector Unit with the provisions of the standards.

2.8.1 Environmental Requirements

Loop detector units shall operate in accordance with requirements listed herein under the following environmental conditions.

2.8.1.1 Voltage, DC Supply

1. Voltage Range—The voltage range shall be 10.8 VDC minimum to 26.5 VDC maximum.
2. Ripple—The maximum supply ripple shall be 500 millivolts peak to peak.

2.8.1.2 Temperature and Humidity

Temperature and humidity shall be in accordance with 2.1.5.

2.8.1.3 Transients, DC Powered Units

Loop detector units shall operate normally when the test impulse described in 2.1.7 is applied as follows:

1. Between **Logic Ground** and the DC Supply power input. The test setup shown in Figure 2-4 shall be used for this test.
2. Across the output terminals of each channel while in both the detect and non-detect condition.
3. Between **Logic Ground** and the control inputs.

Detector loop inputs are specifically excluded from this test.

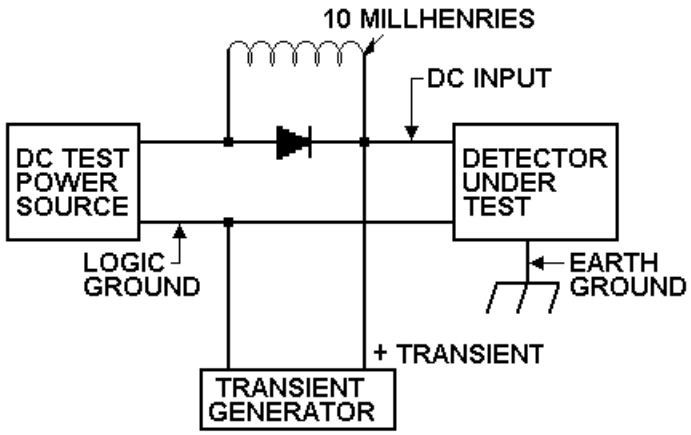


Figure 2-4
TEST CONFIGURATIONS

TEST CONDITIONS:

1. The transient generator is described in 2.1.7.
2. The input voltage shall be 10.8 to 26.5 volts DC measured at the input terminal to the loop detector unit under test.
3. The DC power source must be capable of supplying at least 50 milliamperes per channel.
4. When testing for the reverse polarity transient, the diode shown shall be reversed.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2.8.1.4 Transients, Loop Detector Input Terminals

The loop detector unit shall be capable of withstanding the eight nondestructive transient tests described in Figure 2-5. Each test shall be repeated 10 times with the loop detector unit operating from its normal power source. The time between repetitions shall not exceed 10 seconds.

The energy source shall be a capacitor, oil filled, 10 microfarads ± 5 percent, internal surge impedance less than 1 ohm connected in accordance with Figure 2-5. The voltage on the capacitor shall be adjusted as described herein. The test push button shall be activated for at least one second for each of the eighty test repetitions.

After the foregoing tests, the loop detector unit shall operate normally.

1. Test Numbers 1 and 5. The Loop detector unit shall withstand the discharge of a 10 microfarad capacitor charged to ± 1000 volts applied directly across the loop detector unit sensor loop input pins with no sensor loop load present.
2. Test Numbers 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, and 8. The loop detector unit shall withstand the discharge of a 10 microfarad capacitor charged to ± 2000 volts applied directly across either the loop detector unit sensor loop input pins or from either side of the sensor loop input pins to equipment ground. The loop detector unit sensor loop input pins shall have a dummy resistive load attached equal to 5.0 ohms ± 10 percent.

2.8.1.5 Vibration

The loop detector unit shall maintain both its physical integrity and operating characteristics after being subjected to the vibration test in 2.2.8. This test shall be run at nominal voltage and room environmental conditions.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

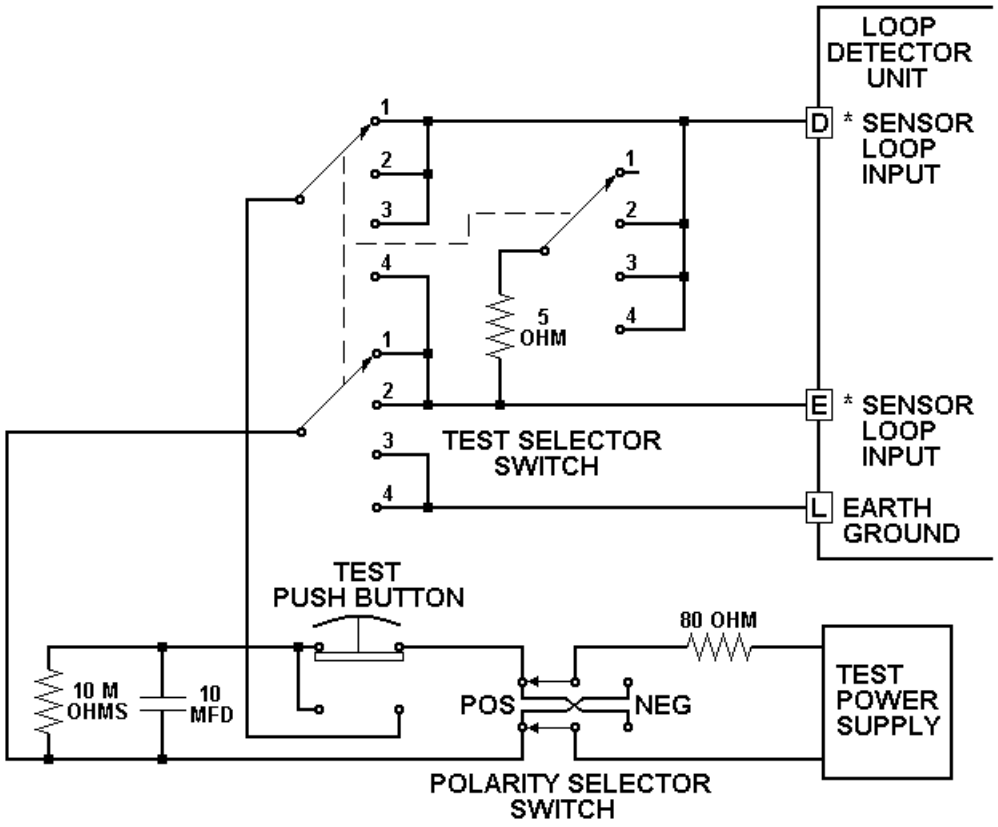


Figure 2-5
LOOP INPUT TERMINAL TRANSIENT TESTS

TRANSIENT TEST CONFIGURATIONS

Test Number	Test Selector Position	Power Supply Setting +5%	Polarity Selector	Load Across Detector Input	Tested Inputs
1	1	1000	Positive	None	D to E
2	2	2000	Positive	5 Ohms	D to E
3	3	2000	Positive	5 Ohms	D to L
4	4	2000	Positive	5 Ohms	E to L
5	1	1000	Negative	None	D to E
6	2	2000	Negative	5 Ohms	D to E
7	3	2000	Negative	5 Ohms	D to L
8	4	2000	Negative	5 Ohms	E to L

*The pin designations shown are for Channel 1. Similar tests shall be performed on all channels (i.e. pin pairs J and K, P and R, and U and V, respectively and as applicable) of the loop detector unit.

2.8.1.6 Shock

The loop detector unit shall suffer neither permanent mechanical deformation nor any damage which renders it permanently inoperable after being subjected to the shock test described in 2.2.9.

This test shall be run at room environmental conditions without power applied to the unit.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2.9 BUS INTERFACE UNIT TESTS

The Bus Interface Unit shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in this Section. This Clause defines the test procedures required to demonstrate the conformance of a Bus Interface Unit with the provisions of the standards.

(Under Consideration)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Section 3
CONTROLLER UNITS

This section defines the physical, interface, and functional requirements of solid state controller units, which fully conform, to this Standards Publication.

3.1 DEFINITIONS

These definitions define the nomenclature frequently used in this part of the Standard Publication.

3.1.1 CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check)

An error checking technique where a mathematically derived code follows the transmission of a block of data. The code is recalculated and compared to be sure that the data has not changed during transmission.

3.1.2 Load Switch Driver Group

The set of three outputs which are used to drive load switch inputs to provide a **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Red** output condition for vehicle signals or **Walk**, **Pedestrian Clear**, or **Don't Walk** output condition for pedestrian signals.

3.2 PHYSICAL STANDARDS

This standard covers eight CU configurations. The configurations are:

Controller Unit	Type 1	Type 2
Actuated	A1	A2
Pretimed	P1	P2
Actuated / NTCIP	A1N	A2N
Pretimed / NTCIP	P1N	P2N

See 3.3.6 for Actuated / NTCIP requirements.

The CU shall conform to these physical requirements:

3.2.1 Dimensions

The CU shall be capable of being shelf mounted. The CU shall also be capable of being mounted in a 19-inch rack (EIA Standard RS-310-C, 1982). The height of the CU shall not exceed 30.48 cm (12 in.). The depth of the unit, including connectors, harnesses, and protrusions, shall not exceed 36.83 cm (14.5 in.). On rack-mounted units, the mounting flanges of the control unit shall be so placed that no protrusion shall exceed 27.94 cm (11 in.) to the rear and 8.89 cm (3.5 in.) to the front.

3.2.2 Design

The CU shall be of modular design. Circuit boards shall be readily accessible for maintenance. It shall be permissible to accomplish this by the use of extender boards. All fuses, connectors, and controls shall be accessible from the front of the CU.

3.2.3 Material and Construction of Rigid Printed Circuit Assemblies

3.2.3.1 Materials

All printed circuit boards shall be made from NEMA FR-4 glass epoxy or equivalent (See NEMA LI 1-1989, *Industrial Laminated Thermosetting Products*).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.2.3.2 Mating Surfaces

All electrical mating surfaces shall be made of noncorrosive material.

3.2.3.3 Component Identification

The Printed Circuit Assembly shall be so designed that each component is identified with a circuit reference symbol. The identification shall be etched or silkscreened on circuit boards.

3.3 INTERFACE STANDARDS

This standard shall define Types 1 and 2 CUs.

Type A1 and P1 CUs shall utilize an Input / Output Interface conforming to the requirements of 3.3.1 for all Input / Output functions with the Terminals and Facilities, Malfunction Management Unit, Detector Rack(s), and Auxiliary Devices.

Type A2 and P2 CUs shall utilize an Input / Output Interface conforming to the requirements of 3.3.1 for Input / Output functions with the Malfunction Management Unit and Detector Rack(s) and 3.3.5 for Input / Output functions with the TF, Detector(s), and Auxiliary Devices.

Type A2 CUs are included for the purpose of upgrading existing TS 1 installations (Authorized Engineering Information).

If input/output terminations in addition to those covered by these standards are required to allow inclusion of additional functional capabilities, such additional input/output terminations shall be provided on an additional connector. Such additional connector shall **not** be interchangeable with other connector(s) on the face of the CU. The provision of these additional functional capabilities shall not modify the operating capabilities of the CU covered by these standards when the additional input/output connector is disconnected.

The CU shall provide an input/output interface to meet the following requirements.

3.3.1 Port 1 Physical and Protocol

3.3.1.1 Connector

The Port 1 connector shall be a 15 pin metal shell D sub-miniature type connector. The connector shall utilize female contacts with 15 millionths of an inch minimum gold plating in the mating area. The connector shall be equipped with latching blocks. The connector shall intermate with a 15 pin D type connector, Amp Incorporated part number 205206-1, or equivalent, which is equipped with spring latches, Amp Incorporated part number 745012-1, or equivalent. Pin connections shall be as follows:

Pin	Function
1	Tx Data +
2	Logic Ground
3	Tx Clock +
4	Logic Ground
5	Rx Data +
6	Logic Ground
7	Rx Clock +
8	Logic Ground
9	Tx Data -
10	Port 1 Disable (0VDC=disable) (*)
11	Tx Clock -
12	Earth Ground
13	Rx Data -
14	Reserved
15	Rx Clock -

* Pin 10 shall be connected to pin 8 when it is desirable to disable all Port 1 communications activity. This shall be accomplished by mating a connector (as described above) to this Port 1 connector, in which pin 8 and pin 10 are connected.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Port 1 shall be utilized to facilitate communications between the CU, the TF, the MMU, and the DRs, as defined in this standard. Port 1 may also be used for manufacturer's use. In such instances, conformance with this standard shall be required.

It will be necessary to disable all Port 1 communications activity when a CU meeting the requirements of this standard is installed in a CA that has no accommodations for Port 1, such as a CA meeting the requirements of NEMA Standard TS 1-1989. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

3.3.1.2 Electrical Interface

3.3.1.2.1 Logic Ground and Earth Ground

1. **Logic Ground**—Voltage reference point and current return point for CU input and output logic circuits. This output shall not be connected to **AC Neutral** or **Earth Ground** within the CU.
2. **Earth Ground**—Terminal for connection to the chassis of the CU. **Earth Ground** shall be electrically connected to the shell of the connector(s) where applicable. This input shall not be connected to **Logic Ground** or **AC Neutral** within the CU.

3.3.1.2.2 Data and Clock Links

1. **Tx Data +**, **Tx Data -**, **Tx Clock +**, **Tx Clock -**, **Rx Data +**, **Rx Data -**, **Rx Clock +**, and **Rx Clock -** shall consist of four interface links conforming to the requirements of the Electronic Industries Association EIA-485, Standard for Electrical Characteristics of Generators and Receivers for use in Balanced Digital Multipoint Systems, dated April 1983. Where differences occur between the EIA-485 standard and this standard, this standard shall govern. **Tx Data +** shall be the non-inverting line and **Tx Data -** shall be the inverting line of one link. **Tx Clock +** shall be the non-inverting line and **Tx Clock -** shall be the inverting line of the second link. **Rx Data +** shall be the non-inverting line and **Rx Data -** shall be the inverting line of the third link. **Rx Clock +** shall be the non-inverting line and **Rx Clock -** shall be the inverting line of the fourth link.
2. All voltage potentials on the **Tx Data**, **Tx Clock**, **Rx Data**, and **Rx Clock** interface links shall be referenced to logic ground within the CA.
3. The interface links shall be connected within the CA in a full duplex party line configuration, as shown in Figure 3-1 for a Type 1 CU and Figure 3-2 for a Type 2 CU. The TF interface shall consist of up to eight identical stations, each as shown. The Detector interface shall consist of up to eight identical stations, each as shown. The **Rx Data** and **Rx Clock** links shall be terminated within the CU with resistors of 120 ohms, plus or minus 5%, connected between the + and - sides of the links, as shown in Figure 3-1 and Figure 3-2 (total of two resistors within the CU).
4. Data and Clock Links: Additional Considerations
    a. The **Tx Data**, **Tx Clock**, **Rx Data**, and **Rx Clock** link connections within the CA shall utilize the TF as the common connection point. Refer to 5.3.3, Port 1 Communications Cables for details.
    b. The **Tx Data** and **Tx Clock** links shall be terminated within the MMU with resistors of 120 ohms, plus or minus 5%, connected between the + and - sides of the links, as shown in Figure 3-1 and Figure 3-2 (total of two resistors within the MMU).
    c. The data and clock link connections may be used for purposes not defined in this standard at the manufacturers discretion. In the event that the data and clock link connections are used in this manner, such use shall conform to the requirements of 3.3.1.4, Information Field Formats, and 3.3.1.5, Frame Timing, of this standard. Further, any auxiliary equipment utilizing the data and clock link connections shall not have terminating resistors connected to these links.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

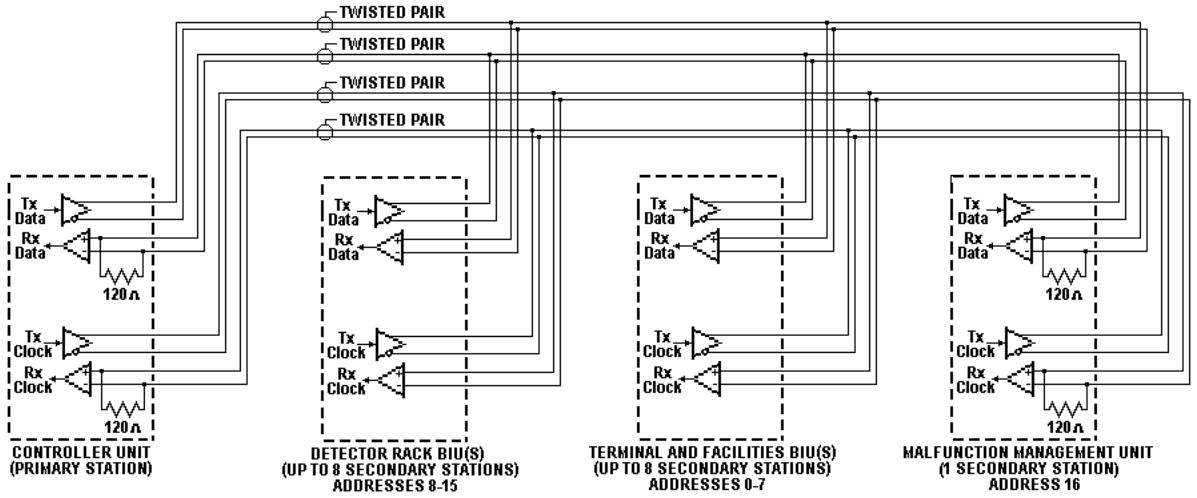


Figure 3-1
PORT 1 CONNECTIONS, TYPE 1 CONTROLLER ASSEMBLY

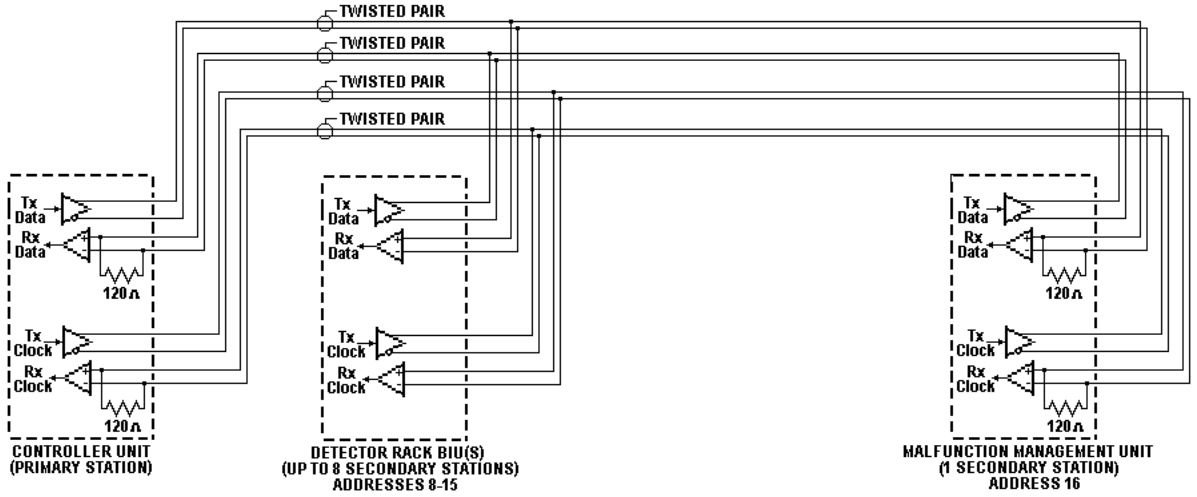


Figure 3-2
PORT 1 CONNECTIONS, TYPE 2 CONTROLLER ASSEMBLY

3.3.1.3 Data and Clock Communications Protocol

The transfer of data shall take place over the data and clock links by means of the SDLC (Synchronous Data Link Control) Protocol, as defined by International Business Machines Corporation document GA27-3093-3, dated June 1986. Where differences occur between this standard and the IBM document, this standard shall govern.

1. Data shall be transmitted by the sending station on the **Tx Data +** and **Tx Data -** lines. The receiving station shall consider the data to be a binary **1** when the voltage potential of the **Tx Data +** line is more positive than the voltage potential of the **Tx Data -** line. The receiving station shall consider the

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

data to be a binary **0** when the voltage potential of the **Tx Data +** line is more negative than the voltage potential of the **Tx Data -** line.

2. A clocking signal shall be transmitted by the sending station on the **Tx Clock +** and **Tx Clock -** lines. The receiving station shall read the data on the **Tx Data +** and **Tx Data -** lines when the voltage potential of the **Tx Clock +** line makes a positive going transition with respect to the **Tx Clock -** line, as shown in Figure 3-3.

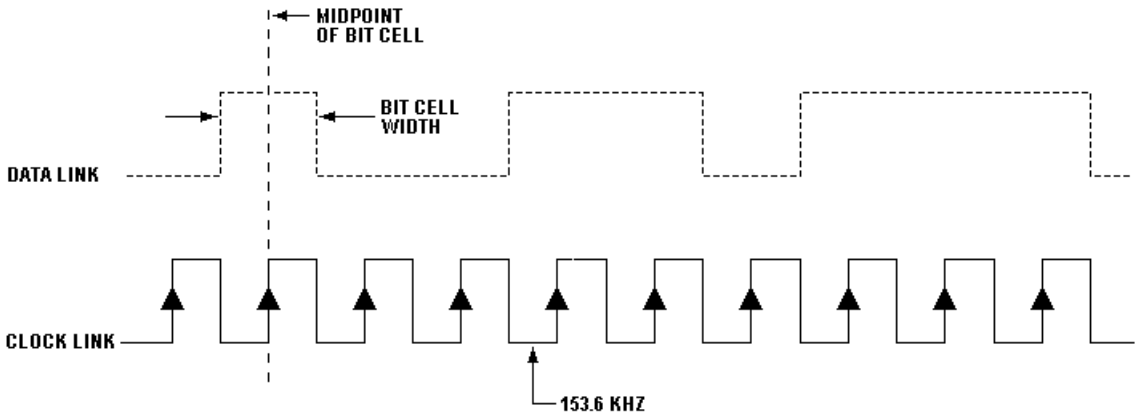


Figure 3-3
PORT 1 TIMING

3. The data transfer rate shall be 153,600 bits per second, plus or minus 1 percent. The width of the bit cell on the Data links shall be the reciprocal of the data transfer rate.
4. The clocking signal from the sending station shall be a square wave with a frequency of 153,600 hertz, plus or minus 1 percent, and shall be synchronous with the data on the Data links. The clocking signal shall make its positive going transition at the midpoint of the bit cell, plus or minus 10 percent of the bit cell width, as measured at the sending station.
5. Only one secondary station shall be sending data at a time, all others shall have their **Tx Data** link outputs and **Tx Clock** link outputs in the high impedance state.
6. The frame format of the data transmitted on the **Tx Data** links shall be as shown in Figure 3-4.

OPENING FLAG	ADDRESS	CONTROL	INFORMATION	CRC	CLOSING FLAG
0111 1110	8 BITS	8 BITS	VARIABLE LENGTH	16 BITS	0111 1110

Figure 3-4
PORT 1 FRAME FORMAT

a. The frame shall be bounded at the beginning and end by the opening and closing flags, respectively. The hexadecimal representation of these flags shall be 7E(hex).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

b. The address field shall be 8 bits in length. The usage of the address field shall be as shown below:

Address	Usage
0–18	Defined by TS 2
19–127	Reserved for TS 2
128–254	Manufacturers Use
255	Defined by TS 2

The CU shall be the primary station, the MMU shall be secondary station 16 (address=16), the TF shall be secondary stations 0 through 7 (addresses=0 through 7), and the Detectors shall be secondary stations 8 through 15 (addresses=8 through 15). Address 17 shall be used for diagnostic purposes, as described in 3.3.1.4. The CU shall be secondary station 18 (address=18) for the purpose of secondary to secondary messaging, as described in 3.3.1.4.3. When the primary station sends a frame it shall place the address of the station to whom it is sending the frame in the address field. The receiving station shall respond by sending a frame to the primary station with its own address in the address field. Secondary stations shall transmit only in response to a correctly received frame from the primary station. Frames transmitted by the primary station with an address of 255 shall be considered broadcast frames and shall be accepted by all secondary stations. Secondary stations shall not respond to broadcast frames.

Frames transmitted to the TF and to the DRs shall be received by BIUs. There shall be a maximum of eight BIUs at the TF. There shall be a maximum of eight DRs, each having one BIU. There shall be programming means in the CU to identify the BIUs that are present in the CA. The addresses, usage, and descriptions of these BIUs are:

Address	Usage	Description
0	Defined by TS 2	TF BIU #1
1	Defined by TS 2	TF BIU #2
2	Defined by TS 2	TF BIU #3
3	Defined by TS 2	TF BIU #4
4	Reserved for TS 2	TF BIU #5
5	Reserved for TS 2	TF BIU #6
6	Manufacturers Use	TF BIU #7
7	Manufacturers Use	TF BIU #8
8	Defined by TS 2	DET BIU #1
9	Defined by TS 2	DET BIU #2
10	Defined by TS 2	DET BIU #3
11	Defined by TS 2	DET BIU #4
12	Reserved for TS 2	DET BIU #5
13	Reserved for TS 2	DET BIU #6
14	Manufacturers Use	DET BIU #7
15	Manufacturers Use	DET BIU #8

c. The control field shall be set to 83(hex) in all frame types.

d. The information field shall be variable in length, depending on the type of frame being transmitted. The length of the information field shall be a multiple of eight bits.

e. The CRC field shall be 16 bits in length. The receiving station shall utilize the CRC field for error checking of all received frames. Failure of the CRC check shall result in specific action, as defined in this standard.

f. All stations transmitting a frame shall utilize zero bit insertion whereby during the transmission of the address, control, information and CRC fields the transmission of five consecutive binary 1's shall always be followed by the insertion of one binary 0. The receiving stations shall strip away these extra inserted 0s.

g. The address, control, and information fields shall be transmitted least significant bit first. The CRC field shall be transmitted most significant bit first.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

h. All stations transmitting a frame shall have the capability to abort the transmission of the frame by sending a minimum of eight consecutive binary 1's. All stations receiving a frame shall have the capability of recognizing the abort sequence and terminating the reception of the frame.

3.3.1.4 Information Field Formats

Each station shall be responsible for transmitting frames containing information fields. Frames transmitted by the primary station shall be referred to as command frames and frames transmitted by secondary stations or other auxiliary equipment shall be referred to as response frames. Command frames transmitted to BIUs in the TF and in the DRs shall be transmitted only to those BIUs that are present, as determined by the programming entries made in the CU. Response frames shall only be transmitted as a result of receiving a command frame. Unless otherwise indicated, a transmitted binary **1** shall represent the active state and a binary **0** shall represent the inactive state. The first eight bits in each information field shall contain the frame **Type Number**. There shall be a maximum of 64 different command frame types defined by this standard and 64 different response frame types defined by this standard. Additionally, there shall be 64 different command frame types reserved for manufacturers use and 64 different response frame types reserved for manufacturers use, as outlined below.

Frame Types	Function
0–63	Command Frame, Defined by TS 2
64–127	Command Frame, Manufacturers Use
128–191	Response Frame, Defined by TS 2
192–255	Response Frame, Manufacturers Use

The specific frame types, their usage, their destinations, the addresses that must be in their address fields, and their functions are summarized in the **Command Frame** table and the **Response Frame** table. The **1** in the **usage** column indicates that the indicated frame type is used in a Type 1 CA. The **2** in the **usage** column indicates that the indicated frame type is used in a Type 2 CA.

The information fields of frame types 64 through 127 shall contain a manufacturer specific code. The manufacturer specific code is a 16 bit binary number which shall be placed in bits 9–24 of the information field. These codes are maintained and issued by NEMA.

Reserved bits shall always be set to zero by the transmitting station.

The intention in placing manufacturer specific codes in frame types that are reserved for manufacturers use is to allow equipment to differentiate between frames that may contain the same frame type. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Table 3-1
COMMAND FRAMES

Type	Usage	Dest	Address	Function
0	1 & 2	MMU	16	Load Switch Drivers
1	1 & 2	MMU	16	MMU Inputs / Status Request
3	1 & 2	MMU	16	MMU Programming Request
9	1 & 2	ALL	255	Date And Time Broadcast
10	1	TF	0	TF BIU #1 Outputs / Inputs Request
11	1	TF	1	TF BIU #2 Outputs / Inputs Request
12	1	TF	2	TF BIU #3 Outputs / Inputs Request
13	1	TF	3	TF BIU #4 Outputs / Inputs Request
18	1	ALL	TF &255	Output Transfer Frame
20	1 & 2	DR	8	DR BIU #1 Call Data Request
21	1 & 2	DR	9	DR BIU #2 Call Data Request
22	1 & 2	DR	10	DR BIU #3 Call Data Request
23	1 & 2	DR	11	DR BIU #4 Call Data Request
24	1 & 2	DR	8	DR BIU #1 Reset / Diagnostic Request
25	1 & 2	DR	9	DR BIU #2 Reset / Diagnostic Request
26	1 & 2	DR	10	DR BIU #3 Reset / Diagnostic Request
27	1 & 2	DR	11	DR BIU #4 Reset / Diagnostic Request
30	1 & 2	(1)	17	Diagnostic Request
40	1 & 2	ALL	0–254	Poll for Service
41				Reserved

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 3-1
COMMAND FRAMES

Type	Usage	Dest	Address	Function
42	1 & 2	ALL	0–254	Secondary Destination Message
43	1 & 2	ALL	0–254	Secondary Exchange Status
(1) Frame Type 30 is for Diagnostic Purposes				

Table 3-2
RESPONSE FRAMES

Type	Usage	Source	Address	Function
128	1 & 2	MMU	16	MMU (Type 0 ACK)
129	1 & 2	MMU	16	MMU Inputs/Status (Type 1 ACK)
131	1 & 2	MMU	16	MMU Programming (Type 3 ACK)
138	1	TF	0	TF BIU #1 Inputs (Type 10 ACK)
139	1	TF	1	TF BIU #2 Inputs (Type 11 ACK)
140	1	TF	2	TF BIU #3 Inputs (Type 12 ACK)
141	1	TF	3	TF BIU #4 Inputs (Type 13 ACK)
148	1 & 2	DR	8	DR BIU #1 Call Data (Type 20 ACK)
149	1 & 2	DR	9	DR BIU #2 Call Data (Type 21 ACK)
150	1 & 2	DR	10	DR BIU #3 Call Data (Type 22 ACK)
151	1 & 2	DR	11	DR BIU #4 Call Data (Type 23 ACK)
152	1 & 2	DR	8	DR BIU #1 Diagnostic (Type 24 ACK)
153	1 & 2	DR	9	DR BIU #2 Diagnostic (Type 25 ACK)
154	1 & 2	DR	10	DR BIU #3 Diagnostic (Type 26 ACK)
155	1 & 2	DR	11	DR BIU #4 Diagnostic (Type 27 ACK)
158	1 & 2		17	Diagnostic (Type 30 ACK)
168	1 & 2	ALL	0–254	No Service Required (Type 40 ACK)
169	1 & 2	ALL	0–254	Secondary Source Message (Type 40 ACK)
170	1 & 2	ALL	0–254	Secondary Negative Acknowledge (Type 42 NACK)
171	1 & 2	ALL	0–254	Secondary Acknowledge (Type 42/43 ACK)
(DET = Detector Rack, ALL = All secondary stations, ACK = Acknowledge)				

The detailed formats for the information fields of the frame types summarized above follows:

3.3.1.4.1 Primary Station (CU)

The primary station shall transmit command frames containing information fields as follows:

3.3.1.4.1.1 Type 0 Load Switch Drivers

The destination of these frames is the MMU. The **Channel** numbers in the **Function** column below refer to the channel numbers of the MMU. The CU shall include a definition, via program entry, of the MMU Channel to CU signal driver group utilization in the terminal facilities. The **Load Switch Flash** bit, when set to **1** shall cause the MMU to disable its **Red Monitoring** function, such that a **Red Failure** does not occur during times when the CU load switch drivers are flashing the load switch outputs. All states of CU No Fault Flash (i.e., Startup, Automatic, and Preempt) shall set Type 0 Frame Load Switch Flash bit to **1**.

Type 0 Command Frame

Bit	Function
1	0
2	0
3	0
4	0
5	0
6	0
7	0
8	0
9	Channel 1 Green Driver + (Walk)
10	Channel 1 Green Driver - (Walk)
11	Channel 2 Green Driver + (Walk)
12	Channel 2 Green Driver - (Walk)

Type 0 Command Frame

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 0 Command Frame

Bit	Function
13	Channel 3 Green Driver + (Walk)
14	Channel 3 Green Driver - (Walk)
15	Channel 4 Green Driver + (Walk)
16	Channel 4 Green Driver - (Walk)
17	Channel 5 Green Driver + (Walk)
18	Channel 5 Green Driver - (Walk)
19	Channel 6 Green Driver + (Walk)
20	Channel 6 Green Driver - (Walk)
21	Channel 7 Green Driver + (Walk)
22	Channel 7 Green Driver - (Walk)
23	Channel 8 Green Driver + (Walk)
24	Channel 8 Green Driver - (Walk)
25	Channel 9 Green Driver + (Walk)
26	Channel 9 Green Driver - (Walk)
27	Channel 10 Green Driver + (Walk)
28	Channel 10 Green Driver - (Walk)
29	Channel 11 Green Driver + (Walk)
30	Channel 11 Green Driver - (Walk)
31	Channel 12 Green Driver + (Walk)
32	Channel 12 Green Driver - (Walk)
33	Channel 13 Green Driver + (Walk)
34	Channel 13 Green Driver - (Walk)
35	Channel 14 Green Driver + (Walk)
36	Channel 14 Green Driver - (Walk)
37	Channel 15 Green Driver + (Walk)
38	Channel 15 Green Driver - (Walk)
39	Channel 16 Green Driver + (Walk)
40	Channel 16 Green Driver - (Walk)
41	Channel 1 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
42	Channel 1 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
43	Channel 2 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
44	Channel 2 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
45	Channel 3 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
46	Channel 3 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
47	Channel 4 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
48	Channel 4 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
49	Channel 5 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
50	Channel 5 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
51	Channel 6 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
52	Channel 6 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
53	Channel 7 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
54	Channel 7 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
55	Channel 8 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
56	Channel 8 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
57	Channel 9 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
58	Channel 9 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
59	Channel 10 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
60	Channel 10 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
61	Channel 11 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
62	Channel 11 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
63	Channel 12 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
64	Channel 12 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
65	Channel 13 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
66	Channel 13 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
67	Channel 14 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
68	Channel 14 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
69	Channel 15 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
70	Channel 15 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
71	Channel 16 Yellow Driver + (Pedestrian Clear)
72	Channel 16 Yellow Driver - (Pedestrian Clear)
73	Channel 1 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
74	Channel 1 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
75	Channel 2 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
76	Channel 2 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 0 Command Frame

Bit	Function
77	Channel 3 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
78	Channel 3 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
79	Channel 4 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
80	Channel 4 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
81	Channel 5 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
82	Channel 5 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
83	Channel 6 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
84	Channel 6 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
85	Channel 7 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
86	Channel 7 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
87	Channel 8 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
88	Channel 8 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
89	Channel 9 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
90	Channel 9 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
91	Channel 10 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
92	Channel 10 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
93	Channel 11 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
94	Channel 11 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
95	Channel 12 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
96	Channel 12 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
97	Channel 13 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
98	Channel 13 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
99	Channel 14 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
100	Channel 14 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
101	Channel 15 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
102	Channel 15 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
103	Channel 16 Red Driver + (Don't Walk)
104	Channel 16 Red Driver - (Don't Walk)
105	Reserved
106	Reserved
107	Reserved
108	Reserved
109	Reserved
110	Reserved
111	Reserved
112	Load Switch Flash

If both the **Load Switch +** and **Load Switch -** bits are **0**, then the corresponding load switch shall not turn on. If the **Load Switch +** bit is **1** and the **Load Switch -** bit is **0**, then the corresponding load switch shall cause the field indication to be dimmed by eliminating positive half wave segments from the alternating current sinusoid applied to the field indications. If the **Load Switch +** bit is **0** and the **Load Switch -** bit is **1**, then the corresponding load switch shall cause the field indication to be dimmed by eliminating negative half wave segments from the alternating current sinusoid applied to the field indications. If both the **Load Switch +** and the **Load Switch -** bits are **1**, then the corresponding load switch shall turn on continuously. See 3.9.2 for further information on dimming.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.3.1.4.1.2 Type 1 MMU Inputs / Status Request

The destination of these frames is the MMU.

Type 1 Command Frame		
Bit	**Function**	
1	1	
2	0	
3	0	
4	0	**Type 1 Command Frame**
5	0	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	

3.3.1.4.1.3 Type 3 MMU Programming Request

The destination of these frames is the MMU.

Type 3 Command Frame		
Bit	**Function**	
1	1	
2	1	
3	0	
4	0	**Type 3 Command Frame**
5	0	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	

3.3.1.4.1.4 Type 9 Date And Time Broadcast

The destination of this frame is all secondary stations.

Type 9 Command Frame		
Bit	**Function**	
1	1	
2	0	
3	0	
4	1	**Type 9 Command Frame**
5	0	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	
9	Month - Bit 0	
10	Month - Bit 1	
11	Month - Bit 2	
12	Month - Bit 3	
13	Reserved	
14	Reserved	
15	Reserved	
16	Reserved	
17	Day - Bit 0	
18	Day - Bit 1	
19	Day - Bit 2	
20	Day - Bit 3	
21	Day - Bit 4	
22	Reserved	
23	Reserved	
24	Reserved	
25	Year - Bit 0	

© NEMA

--`,,`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 9 Command Frame

Bit	Function
26	Year - Bit 1
27	Year - Bit 2
28	Year - Bit 3
29	Year - Bit 4
30	Year - Bit 5
31	Year - Bit 6
32	Reserved
33	Hour - Bit 0
34	Hour - Bit 1
35	Hour - Bit 2
36	Hour - Bit 3
37	Hour - Bit 4
38	Reserved
39	Reserved
40	Reserved
41	Minutes - Bit 0
42	Minutes - Bit 1
43	Minutes - Bit 2
44	Minutes - Bit 3
45	Minutes - Bit 4
46	Minutes - Bit 5
47	Reserved
48	Reserved
49	Seconds - Bit 0
50	Seconds - Bit 1
51	Seconds - Bit 2
52	Seconds - Bit 3
53	Seconds - Bit 4
54	Seconds - Bit 5
55	Reserved
56	Reserved
57	Tenths of Seconds - Bit 0
58	Tenths of Seconds - Bit 1
59	Tenths of Seconds - Bit 2
60	Tenths of Seconds - Bit 3
61	Reserved
62	Reserved
63	Reserved
64	Reserved
65	TF BIU #1 Present
66	TF BIU #2 Present
67	TF BIU #3 Present
68	TF BIU #4 Present
69	TF BIU #5 Present
70	TF BIU #6 Present
71	TF BIU #7 Present
72	TF BIU #8 Present
73	DET BIU #1 Present
74	DET BIU #2 Present
75	DET BIU #3 Present
76	DET BIU #4 Present
77	DET BIU #5 Present
78	DET BIU #6 Present
79	DET BIU #7 Present
80	DET BIU #8 Present

Bits 9–64 of this frame shall contain the real time as it currently exists within the CU. This time shall be referred to as the CU real time. The transmission of this frame shall begin within $\pm$ 100 milliseconds of the CU real time contained within the frame.

Bits 9–16 of this frame shall contain a binary coded representation of the current month of year of the CU real time, in the range 1–12.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Bits 17–24 of this frame shall contain a binary coded representation of the current day of month of the CU real time, in the range 1–31.

Bits 25–32 of this frame shall contain a binary coded representation of the last two digits of the current year of the CU real time, in the range 0–99.

Bits 33–40 of this frame shall contain a binary coded representation of the current hour of the CU real time, in the range 0–23.

Bits 41–48 of this frame shall contain a binary coded representation of the current minute of the CU real time, in the range 0–59.

Bits 49–56 of this frame shall contain a binary coded representation of the current second of the CU real time, in the range 0–59.

Bits 57–64 of this frame shall contain a binary coded representation of the current tenths of seconds of the CU real time, in the range 0–9.

Bits 65–80 of this frame shall contain an exact representation of the programming data in the CU that signifies the presence or absence of TF BIUs 1–8 and Detector Rack BIUs 1–8. A value of **1** shall indicate the presence of the associated BIU and a value of **0** shall indicate the absence of the associated BIU.

All reserved bits in this frame shall be set to zero.

3.3.1.4.1.5 Type 10 TF BIU #1 Outputs / Inputs Request

The destination of these frames is the TF. Refer to Section 5 of this document for a complete list of BIU #1 signal assignments. Input / Output pins below that are designated as Inputs or Reserved in Section 5 must be driven to the logic **0** state at all times in this Type 10 Frame.

Input / Output pins below that are designated as **Spares** in Section 5 may be driven to the logic **0** state or logic **1** state, at the manufacturer's discretion, in this Type 10 Frame. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Type 10 Command Frame

Bit	Function
1	0
2	1
3	0
4	1 **Type 10 Command Frame**
5	0
6	0
7	0
8	0
9	Output 1 (Load Switch +)
10	Output 1 (Load Switch -)
11	Output 2 (Load Switch +)
12	Output 2 (Load Switch -)
13	Output 3 (Load Switch +)
14	Output 3 (Load Switch -)
15	Output 4 (load Switch +)
16	Output 4 (Load Switch -)
17	Output 5 (Load Switch +)
18	Output 5 (Load Switch -)
19	Output 6 (Load Switch +)
20	Output 6 (Load Switch -)
21	Output 7 (Load Switch +)
22	Output 7 (Load Switch -)
23	Output 8 (Load Switch +)
24	Output 8 (Load Switch -)
25	Output 9 (Load Switch +)
26	Output 9 (Load Switch -)
27	Output 10 (Load Switch +)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 10 Command Frame

Bit	Function
28	Output 10 (Load Switch -)
29	Output 11 (Load Switch +)
30	Output 11 (Load Switch -)
31	Output 12 (Load Switch +)
32	Output 12 (Load Switch -)
33	Output 13 (Load Switch +)
34	Output 13 (Load Switch -)
35	Output 14 (Load Switch +)
36	Output 14 (Load Switch -)
37	Output 15 (Load Switch +)
38	Output 15 (Load Switch -)
39	Input / Output 1 (Load Switch +)
40	Input / Output 1 (Load Switch -)
41	Input / Output 2 (Load Switch +)
42	Input / Output 2 (Load Switch -)
43	Input / Output 3 (Load Switch +)
44	Input / Output 3 (Load Switch -)
45	Input / Output 4 (Load Switch +)
46	Input / Output 4 (Load Switch -)
47	Input / Output 5 (Load Switch +)
48	Input / Output 5 (Load Switch -)
49	Input / Output 6 (Load Switch +)
50	Input / Output 6 (Load Switch -)
51	Input / Output 7 (Load Switch +)
52	Input / Output 7 (Load Switch -)
53	Input / Output 8 (Load Switch +)
54	Input / Output 8 (Load Switch -)
55	Input / Output 9 (Load Switch +)
56	Input / Output 9 (Load Switch -)
57	Input / Output 10
58	Input / Output 11
59	Input / Output 12
60	Input / Output 13
61	Input / Output 14
62	Input / Output 15
63	Input / Output 16
64	Input / Output 17
65	Input / Output 18
66	Input / Output 19
67	Input / Output 20
68	Input / Output 21
69	Input / Output 22
70	Input / Output 23
71	Input / Output 24
72	Reserved

If both the **Load Switch +** and **Load Switch -** bits are **0**, then the corresponding load switch shall not turn on. If the **Load Switch +** bit is **1** and the **Load Switch -** bit is **0**, then the corresponding load switch shall cause the field indication to be dimmed by eliminating positive half wave segments from the alternating current sinusoid applied to the field indications. If the **Load Switch +** bit is **0** and the **Load Switch -** bit is **1**, then the corresponding load switch shall cause the field indication to be dimmed by eliminating negative half wave segments from the alternating current sinusoid applied to the field indications. If both the **Load Switch +** and the **Load Switch -** bits are **1**, then the corresponding load switch shall turn on continuously. See 3.9.2 for further information on dimming.

3.3.1.4.1.6 Type 11 TF BIU #2 Outputs / Inputs Request

These frame types are identical to Type 10 Frame except that the frame type numbers and addresses are as noted in the **Command Frame** summary.

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

3.3.1.4.1.7 Type 12 TF BIU #3 Outputs / Inputs Request

The destination of these frames is the TF. Refer to Section 5 of this document for a complete list of BIU #3 signal assignments. Input / Output pins below that are designated as **Inputs** or **Reserved** in Section 5 must be driven to the logic **0** state at all times in this Type 12 Frame.

Input / Output pins below that are designated as **Spares** in Section 5 may be driven to the logic **0** state or logic **1** state, at the manufacturer's discretion, in this Type 12 Frame. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Type 12 Command Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	
2	0	
3	1	
4	1	**Type 12 Command Frame**
5	0	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	
9	Output 1	
10	Output 2	
11	Output 3	
12	Output 4	
13	Output 5	
14	Output 6	
15	Output 7	
16	Output 8	
17	Output 9	
18	Output 10	
19	Output 11	
20	Output 12	
21	Output 13	
22	Output 14	
23	Output 15	
24	Reserved	
25	Input / Output 1	
26	Input / Output 2	
27	Input / Output 3	
28	Input / Output 4	
29	Input / Output 5	
30	Input / Output 6	
31	Input / Output 7	
32	Input / Output 8	
33	Input / Output 9	
34	Input / Output 10	
35	Input / Output 11	
36	Input / Output 12	
37	Input / Output 13	
38	Input / Output 14	
39	Input / Output 15	
40	Input / Output 16	
41	Input / Output 17	
42	Input / Output 18	
43	Input / Output 19	
44	Input / Output 20	
45	Input / Output 21	
46	Input / Output 22	
47	Input / Output 23	
48	Input / Output 24	

3.3.1.4.1.8 Type 13 TF BIU #4 Outputs / Inputs Request

These frame types are identical to Type 12 Frame except that the frame type numbers and addresses are as noted in the **Command Frame** summary.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.3.1.4.1.9 Type 18 Output Transfer Frame

The destination of this frame is all TF BIUs. All other secondary stations shall ignore this frame. The receipt of this frame shall cause the TF BIUs to transfer their outputs, as defined in Section 8 of this standard.

Type 18 Command Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	
2	1	
3	0	
4	0	**Type 18 Command Frame**
5	1	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	

3.3.1.4.1.10 Type 20 DR BIU #1 Call Data Request

The destination of these frames is the DR BIU #1.

Type 20 Command Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	
2	0	
3	1	
4	0	**Type 20 Command Frame**
5	1	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	

3.3.1.4.1.11 Types 21–23 DR BIUs #2-4 Call Data Request

These frame types are identical to Type 20 Frame except that the frame type numbers and addresses are as noted in the **Command Frame** summary.

3.3.1.4.1.12 Type 24 DR BIU #1 Reset / Diagnostic Request

The destination of these frames is the DR BIU #1. A **Detector Reset** value of logic **1** shall cause the detectors in the associated detector card slots to be reset. A **Detector Reset** value of logic **0** shall have no effect on the associated detectors.

Type 24 Command Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	
2	0	
3	0	
4	1	**Type 24 Command Frame**
5	1	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	
9	Detector Card Slots 1 & 2 Reset	
10	Detector Card Slots 3 & 4 Reset	
11	Detector Card Slots 5 & 6 Reset	
12	Detector Card Slots 7 & 8 Reset	
13	Reserved	
14	Reserved	

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 24 Command Frame

Bit	Function
15	Reserved
16	Reserved

The conditions under which this frame shall be transmitted is not defined.

3.3.1.4.1.13 Type 25-27 DR BIUs #2-4 Reset / Diagnostic Request

These frame types are identical to Type 24 Frame except that the frame type numbers and addresses are as noted in the **Command Frame** summary.

3.3.1.4.1.14 Type 30 Diagnostic Request

There shall be programming means in the CU to enable and disable the transmission of this command frame.

The destination of this frame is not defined in this standard. It is intended, however, that this frame will be used by diagnostic test equipment which may be utilized for testing the CU. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Type 30 Command Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	
2	1	
3	1	
4	1	**Type 30 Command Frame**
5	1	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	

3.3.1.4.1.15 Type 40 Poll For Service

This Command Frame is used to poll the secondary stations for a secondary to secondary message exchange. The destination shall be each secondary station on the link in a sequential fashion. Thus the CU must be programmed with the addresses of all secondary stations which are to receive this frame type. If the addressed secondary station has a message to be sent it shall respond with a Type 169 Frame (and be referenced as the **Source** secondary station). If the addressed secondary station does not have a message to be sent it shall respond with an Type 168 Frame.

Type 40 Command Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	
2	0	
3	0	
4	1	**Type 40 Command Frame**
5	0	
6	1	
7	0	
8	0	

3.3.1.4.1.16 Type 41 Reserved

3.3.1.4.1.17 Type 42 Secondary Destination Message

This Command Frame carries the secondary source message from the primary station to the destination address. The destination shall be the secondary station which has been specified as the destination address in the Type 169 Frame (and be referenced as the **Destination** secondary station).

Bits 9–24 are the **Source** station Manufacturer Specific ID number, as described in 3.3.1.4.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Bits 25–32 identify the Source address.

Bits 33–288 contain the message data.

Type 42 Command Frame

Bit	Function
1	0
2	1
3	0
4	1 **Type 42 Command Frame**
5	0
6	1
7	0
8	0
9	Manufacturer ID - Bit 0
10	Manufacturer ID - Bit 1
11	Manufacturer ID - Bit 2
12	Manufacturer ID - Bit 3
13	Manufacturer ID - Bit 4
14	Manufacturer ID - Bit 5
15	Manufacturer ID - Bit 6
16	Manufacturer ID - Bit 7
17	Manufacturer ID - Bit 8
18	Manufacturer ID - Bit 9
19	Manufacturer ID - Bit 10
20	Manufacturer ID - Bit 11
21	Manufacturer ID - Bit 12
22	Manufacturer ID - Bit 13
23	Manufacturer ID - Bit 14
24	Manufacturer ID - Bit 15
25	Source Address - Bit 0
26	Source Address - Bit 1
27	Source Address - Bit 2
28	Source Address - Bit 3
29	Source Address - Bit 4
30	Source Address - Bit 5
31	Source Address - Bit 6
32	Source Address - Bit 7
33	Message Data - Bit 1
	.
288	Message Data - Bit 256

3.3.1.4.1.18 Type 43 Secondary Exchange Status

This Command Frame reports the resulting status of the message exchange to the original **Source** station. The destination shall be the **Source** secondary station.

Bit 9 is set to indicate the message exchange is complete with no errors.

Bit 10 is set to indicate an Type 169 Frame was received from the Source secondary station with an invalid Destination address.

Bit 11 is set to indicate the Type 42 Frame was received correctly but not accepted by the Destination secondary due to an invalid Manufacturer Specific ID number.

Bit 12 is set to indicate the Type 42 Frame was not acknowledged by the **Destination** secondary (CRC error or Timeout error).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 43 Command Frame

Bit	Function	
1	1	**Type 43 Command Frame**
2	1	
3	0	
4	1	
5	0	
6	1	
7	0	
8	0	
9	Status Complete	
10	Destination Address Error	
11	Manufacturer Id Error	
12	Destination Timeout	
13	Reserved	
14	Reserved	
15	Reserved	
16	Reserved	

3.3.1.4.2 Secondary Stations

The secondary stations shall transmit response frames containing information fields as follows:

3.3.1.4.2.1 Type 128 MMU (Type 0 ACK)

The source of these frames is the MMU. This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 0 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station. If a Type 0 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

Type 128 Response Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	**Type 128 Response Frame**
2	0	
3	0	
4	0	
5	0	
6	0	
7	0	
8	1	

3.3.1.4.2.2 Type 129 MMU Inputs/Status (Type 1 ACK)

The source of these frames is the MMU. This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 1 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station. If a Type 1 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

If the MMU is in the no failure state and its output relay is energized, then bits 9 through 62 of the information field of this frame shall contain an exact image of the signals that are applied to the MMU front panel connectors and bits 65 through 77 shall be 0. In the event that the MMU has fewer than 16 channels, the bit positions of the nonexistent channels shall be set to 0.

If the MMU is in the failure state and its output relay is de-energized, then bits 9 through 62 of the information field of this frame shall contain an exact image of the signals that were applied to the MMU front panel connectors at the point in time of the detection of the failure, one or more of bits 65 through 75 shall be set to 1 to indicate the type of failure(s) and bits 76 and 77 shall be 1.

If the MMU is in the **failure state** and its output relay is energized, then bits 9 through 62 of the information field of this frame shall contain an exact image of the signals that are applied to the MMU front panel connectors, one or more of bits 65 through 75 shall be set to **1** to indicate the type of failure(s), bit 76 shall be **0** and bit 77 shall be **1**.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 129 Response Frame

Bit	Function
1	1
2	0
3	0
4	0
5	0
6	0
7	0
8	1
9	Channel 1 Green
10	Channel 2 Green
11	Channel 3 Green
12	Channel 4 Green
13	Channel 5 Green
14	Channel 6 Green
15	Channel 7 Green
16	Channel 8 Green
17	Channel 9 Green
18	Channel 10 Green
19	Channel 11 Green
20	Channel 12 Green
21	Channel 13 Green
22	Channel 14 Green
23	Channel 15 Green
24	Channel 16 Green
25	Channel 1 Yellow
26	Channel 2 Yellow
27	Channel 3 Yellow
28	Channel 4 Yellow
29	Channel 5 Yellow
30	Channel 6 Yellow
31	Channel 7 Yellow
32	Channel 8 Yellow
33	Channel 9 Yellow
34	Channel 10 Yellow
35	Channel 11 Yellow
36	Channel 12 Yellow
37	Channel 13 Yellow
38	Channel 14 Yellow
39	Channel 15 Yellow
40	Channel 16 Yellow
41	Channel 1 Red
42	Channel 2 Red
43	Channel 3 Red
44	Channel 4 Red
45	Channel 5 Red
46	Channel 6 Red
47	Channel 7 Red
48	Channel 8 Red
49	Channel 9 Red
50	Channel 10 Red
51	Channel 11 Red
52	Channel 12 Red
53	Channel 13 Red
54	Channel 14 Red
55	Channel 15 Red
56	Channel 16 Red
57	Controller Voltage Monitor (1=fail)
58	+24 Volt Monitor I (1=fail)
59	+24 Volt Monitor II (1=fail)
60	+24 Volt Monitor Inhibit (1=inhibit)
61	Reset (1=reset)
62	Red Enable (1=enable)

© NEMA

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 129 Response Frame

Bit	Function
63	Reserved
64	Reserved
65	Conflict
66	Red Failure
67	Spare Bit 1
68	Spare Bit 2
69	Spare Bit 3
70	Spare Bit 4
71	Spare Bit 5
72	Spare Bit 6
73	MMU Diagnostic Failure
74	Minimum Clearance Failure
75	Port 1 Timeout Failure
76	Fail (1=failed - Output Relay Transferred)
77	Fail (1=failed - Immediate Response To Failure)
78	Reserved
79	Local Flash Status
80	Start-Up Flash Call
81	Reserved
82	Reserved
83	Reserved
84	Reserved
85	Reserved
86	Reserved
87	Reserved
88	Reserved

When Bit 80 is set to **1** for two consecutive Type 129 transfers, the CU shall go to the beginning of the **Start-Up Flash** period/state (see 3.9.1.1) and begin timing same. No input, other than the lack of AC power, shall prevent this transition to the **Start-Up Flash** period/state.

Spare fault bits are used to indicate MMU detected failures which are not defined in this document. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

3.3.1.4.2.3 Type 131 MMU Programming (Type 3 ACK)

The source of these frames is the MMU. This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 3 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station. If a Type 3 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

Bits 9–128 of this frame represent an exact image of the compatibility programming status of the MMU. A bit value of 1 indicates that the MMU has been programmed for compatibility between the associated 2 channels. In the event that the MMU has fewer than 16 channels, the bit positions corresponding to the nonexistent channels shall be set to 0.

Bits 129–144 of this frame represent an exact image of the Minimum Yellow Change Disable status of the MMU. A bit value of 1 indicates that the Minimum Yellow Change feature has been disabled for the associated channel.

Bits 145–148 of this frame represent a binary coded image of the minimum flash time setting in the MMU, in the range 6–16 seconds. Bit 145 shall be the least significant bit and bit 148 shall be the most significant bit. A binary value of 5 shall represent a minimum flash time setting of 6 seconds. Each increment of the binary value shall represent a one second increment of the minimum flash time setting, up to a maximum binary value of 15. Binary values of 0–4 shall not be used.

Bit 149 of this frame represents an exact image of the latch setting for 24 volt failures in the MMU. A bit value of 1 indicates that the MMU has been programmed to latch 24 volt failures in the fault condition.

Bit 150 of this frame represents an exact image of the latch setting for the controller voltage/fault monitor input in the MMU. A bit value of **1** indicates that the MMU has been programmed to latch CVM failures in the fault condition.

©NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 131 Response Frame

Bit	Function
1	1
2	1
3	0
4	0
5	0
6	0
7	0
8	1
9	Channel. 1–2 Compatibility Status
10	Channel. 1–3 Compatibility Status
11	Channel. 1–4 Compatibility Status
12	Channel. 1–5 Compatibility Status
13	Channel. 1–6 Compatibility Status
14	Channel. 1–7 Compatibility Status
15	Channel. 1–8 Compatibility Status
16	Channel. 1–9 Compatibility Status
17	Channel. 1–10 Compatibility Status
18	Channel. 1–11 Compatibility Status
19	Channel. 1–12 Compatibility Status
20	Channel. 1–13 Compatibility Status
21	Channel. 1–14 Compatibility Status
22	Channel. 1–15 Compatibility Status
23	Channel. 1–16 Compatibility Status
24	Channel. 2–3 Compatibility Status
25	Channel. 2–4 Compatibility Status
26	Channel. 2–5 Compatibility Status
27	Channel. 2–6 Compatibility Status
28	Channel. 2–7 Compatibility Status
29	Channel. 2–8 Compatibility Status
30	Channel. 2–9 Compatibility Status
31	Channel. 2–10 Compatibility Status
32	Channel. 2–11 Compatibility Status
33	Channel. 2–12 Compatibility Status
34	Channel. 2–13 Compatibility Status
35	Channel. 2–14 Compatibility Status
36	Channel. 2–15 Compatibility Status
37	Channel. 2–16 Compatibility Status
38	Channel. 3–4 Compatibility Status
39	Channel. 3–5 Compatibility Status
40	Channel. 3–6 Compatibility Status
41	Channel. 3–7 Compatibility Status
42	Channel. 3–8 Compatibility Status
43	Channel. 3–9 Compatibility Status
44	Channel. 3–10 Compatibility Status
45	Channel. 3–11 Compatibility Status
46	Channel. 3–12 Compatibility Status
47	Channel. 3–13 Compatibility Status
48	Channel. 3–14 Compatibility Status
49	Channel. 3–15 Compatibility Status
50	Channel. 3–16 Compatibility Status
51	Channel. 4–5 Compatibility Status
52	Channel. 4–6 Compatibility Status
53	Channel. 4–7 Compatibility Status
54	Channel. 4–8 Compatibility Status
55	Channel. 4–9 Compatibility Status
56	Channel. 4–10 Compatibility Status
57	Channel. 4–11 Compatibility Status
58	Channel. 4–12 Compatibility Status
59	Channel. 4–13 Compatibility Status
60	Channel. 4–14 Compatibility Status
61	Channel. 4–15 Compatibility Status
62	Channel. 4–16 Compatibility Status
63	Channel. 5–6 Compatibility Status

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 131 Response Frame

Bit	Function
64	Channel. 5–7 Compatibility Status
65	Channel. 5–8 Compatibility Status
66	Channel. 5–9 Compatibility Status
67	Channel. 5–10 Compatibility Status
68	Channel. 5–11 Compatibility Status
69	Channel. 5–12 Compatibility Status
70	Channel. 5–13 Compatibility Status
71	Channel. 5–14 Compatibility Status
72	Channel. 5–15 Compatibility Status
73	Channel. 5–16 Compatibility Status
74	Channel. 6–7 Compatibility Status
75	Channel. 6–8 Compatibility Status
76	Channel. 6–9 Compatibility Status
77	Channel. 6–10 Compatibility Status
78	Channel. 6–11 Compatibility Status
79	Channel. 6–12 Compatibility Status
80	Channel. 6–13 Compatibility Status
81	Channel. 6–14 Compatibility Status
82	Channel. 6–15 Compatibility Status
83	Channel. 6–16 Compatibility Status
84	Channel. 7–8 Compatibility Status
85	Channel. 7–9 Compatibility Status
86	Channel. 7–10 Compatibility Status
87	Channel. 7–11 Compatibility Status
88	Channel. 7–12 Compatibility Status
89	Channel. 7–13 Compatibility Status
90	Channel. 7–14 Compatibility Status
91	Channel. 7–15 Compatibility Status
92	Channel. 7–16 Compatibility Status
93	Channel. 8–9 Compatibility Status
94	Channel. 8–10 Compatibility Status
95	Channel. 8–11 Compatibility Status
96	Channel. 8–12 Compatibility Status
97	Channel. 8–13 Compatibility Status
98	Channel. 8–14 Compatibility Status
99	Channel. 8–15 Compatibility Status
100	Channel. 8–16 Compatibility Status
101	Channel. 9–10 Compatibility Status
102	Channel. 9–11 Compatibility Status
103	Channel. 9–12 Compatibility Status
104	Channel. 9–13 Compatibility Status
105	Channel. 9–14 Compatibility Status
106	Channel. 9–15 Compatibility Status
107	Channel. 9–16 Compatibility Status
108	Channel. 10–11 Compatibility Status
109	Channel. 10–12 Compatibility Status
110	Channel. 10–13 Compatibility Status
111	Channel. 10–14 Compatibility Status
112	Channel. 10–15 Compatibility Status
113	Channel. 10–16 Compatibility Status
114	Channel. 11–12 Compatibility Status
115	Channel. 11–13 Compatibility Status
116	Channel. 11–14 Compatibility Status
117	Channel. 11–15 Compatibility Status
118	Channel. 11–16 Compatibility Status
119	Channel. 12–13 Compatibility Status
120	Channel. 12–14 Compatibility Status
121	Channel. 12–15 Compatibility Status
122	Channel. 12–16 Compatibility Status
123	Channel. 13–14 Compatibility Status
124	Channel. 13–15 Compatibility Status
125	Channel. 13–16 Compatibility Status
126	Channel. 14–15 Compatibility Status
127	Channel. 14–16 Compatibility Status

© NEMA

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 131 Response Frame

Bit	Function
128	Channel. 15–16 Compatibility Status
129	Channel. 1 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
130	Channel. 2 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
131	Channel. 3 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
132	Channel. 4 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
133	Channel. 5 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
134	Channel. 6 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
135	Channel. 7 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
136	Channel. 8 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
137	Channel. 9 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
138	Channel. 10 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
139	Channel. 11 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
140	Channel. 12 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
141	Channel. 13 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
142	Channel. 14 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
143	Channel. 15 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
144	Channel. 16 Minimum Yellow Change Disable
145	Min. Flash Time - Bit 0
146	Min. Flash Time - Bit 1
147	Min. Flash Time - Bit 2
148	Min. Flash Time - Bit 3
149	24 Volt Latch
150	CVM/Fault Monitor Latch
151	Reserved
152	Reserved
153	Reserved
154	Reserved
155	Reserved
156	Reserved
157	Reserved
158	Reserved
159	Reserved
160	Reserved
161	Reserved
162	Reserved
163	Reserved
164	Reserved
165	Reserved
166	Reserved
167	Reserved
168	Reserved

3.3.1.4.2.4 Type 138 TF BIU #1 Inputs (Type 10 ACK)

The source of these frames is the TF BIU #1. This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 10 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station. If a Type 10 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

Refer to Section 5 of this document for a complete list of BIU #1 signal assignments. Input / Output pins below that are designated as **Outputs** in Section 5 shall not be used as inputs in this frame.

Type 138 Response Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	
2	1	
3	0	
4	1	**Type 138 Response Frame**
5	0	
6	0	
7	0	
8	1	

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 138 Response Frame

Bit	Function
9	Input / Output 1
10	Input / Output 2
11	Input / Output 3
12	Input / Output 4
13	Input / Output 5
14	Input / Output 6
15	Input / Output 7
16	Input / Output 8
17	Input / Output 9
18	Input / Output 10
19	Input / Output 11
20	Input / Output 12
21	Input / Output 13
22	Input / Output 14
23	Input / Output 15
24	Input / Output 16
25	Input / Output 17
26	Input / Output 18
27	Input / Output 19
28	Input / Output 20
29	Input / Output 21
30	Input / Output 22
31	Input / Output 23
32	Input / Output 24
33	Input 1
34	Input 2
35	Input 3
36	Input 4
37	Input 5
38	Input 6
39	Input 7
40	Input 8
41	Opto-input 1
42	Opto-input 2
43	Opto-input 3
44	Opto-input 4
45	Reserved
46	Reserved
47	Reserved
48	Reserved

3.3.1.4.2.5 Types 139–141 TF BIU #2-4 Inputs (Type 11-13 ACK)

These frame types are identical to Type 138 Frame except that the frame type numbers and addresses are as noted in the **Response Frame** summary.

Refer to Section 5 of this document for a complete list of signal assignments for BIUs 2–4.

3.3.1.4.2.6 Type 148 DR BIU #1 Call Data (Type 20 ACK)

The source of these frames is the Detector Rack BIU #1. This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 20 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station. If a Type 20 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The two detector call status bits for each detector channel shall be defined as follows:

Bit 1	Bit 0	Definition
0	0	The channel has no call – and there has been no change in this status since this frame was last transmitted (no call - no change).
0	1	The channel has a call - and there has been no change in this status since this frame was last transmitted (constant call - no change).
1	0	The channel has no call - and there has been a change in this status since this frame was last transmitted (call has gone away).
1	1	The channel has a call - and there has been a change in this status since this frame was last transmitted (new call).

The 16 detector time stamp bits for each detector channel (bits 0 through 15) shall contain the value of the detector BIU internal time stamp generator at the instant in time when the detector call last changed status. Each detector BIU shall contain an internal time stamp generator. This generator shall be a free running 16 bit binary counter that starts counting at 0 following the application of power to the BIU and counts up to 65,535. At the next increment after reaching a value of 65,535, the counter shall roll over to 0 and start over. The detector bus interface unit time stamp generator shall increment every 1.0 milliseconds + 0.05 percent. The time stamp generator shall not be effected by the reception of a Type 9 Frame from the CU (date and time broadcast).

The detector BIU internal time stamp generator is intended to provide the means by which precision timing information about detector calls can be obtained. When only detector call status is needed without any timing information, then it is only necessary to use detector Call Status Bit 0 for each channel. When precision occupancy data is needed or precision speed data for any detector pair(s) is needed, then the time stamp generator data for each detector channel may be used, with a resolution of 1.0 milliseconds. Since the time stamp generator in each detector BIU is not synchronous with the time stamp generators in the other detector BIUs, only pairs of detectors on a single BIU should be used for speed measurements. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Type 148 Response Frame

Bit	Function
1	0
2	0
3	1
4	0 **Type 148 Response Frame**
5	1
6	0
7	0
8	1
9	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 0
10	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 1
11	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 2
12	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 3
13	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 4
14	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 5
15	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 6
16	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 7
17	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 8
18	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 9
19	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 10
20	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 11
21	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 12
22	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 13

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 148 Response Frame

Bit	Function
23	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 14
24	Detector 1 Time Stamp Bit 15
25	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 0
26	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 1
27	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 2
28	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 3
29	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 4
30	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 5
31	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 6
32	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 7
33	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 8
34	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 9
35	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 10
36	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 11
37	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 12
38	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 13
39	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 14
40	Detector 2 Time Stamp Bit 15
41	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 0
42	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 1
43	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 2
44	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 3
45	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 4
46	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 5
47	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 6
48	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 7
49	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 8
50	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 9
51	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 10
52	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 11
53	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 12
54	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 13
55	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 14
56	Detector 3 Time Stamp Bit 15
57	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 0
58	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 1
59	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 2
60	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 3
61	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 4
62	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 5
63	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 6
64	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 7
65	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 8
66	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 9
67	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 10
68	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 11
69	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 12
70	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 13
71	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 14
72	Detector 4 Time Stamp Bit 15
73	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 0
74	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 1
75	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 2
76	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 3
77	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 4
78	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 5
79	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 6
80	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 7
81	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 8
82	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 9
83	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 10
84	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 11
85	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 12
86	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 13

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 148 Response Frame

Bit	Function
87	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 14
88	Detector 5 Time Stamp Bit 15
89	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 0
90	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 1
91	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 2
92	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 3
93	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 4
94	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 5
95	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 6
96	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 7
97	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 8
98	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 9
99	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 10
100	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 11
101	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 12
102	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 13
103	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 14
104	Detector 6 Time Stamp Bit 15
105	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 0
106	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 1
107	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 2
108	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 3
109	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 4
110	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 5
111	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 6
112	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 7
113	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 8
114	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 9
115	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 10
116	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 11
117	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 12
118	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 13
119	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 14
120	Detector 7 Time Stamp Bit 15
121	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 0
122	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 1
123	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 2
124	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 3
125	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 4
126	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 5
127	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 6
128	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 7
129	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 8
130	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 9
131	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 10
132	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 11
133	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 12
134	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 13
135	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 14
136	Detector 8 Time Stamp Bit 15
137	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 0
138	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 1
139	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 2
140	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 3
141	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 4
142	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 5
143	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 6
144	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 7
145	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 8
146	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 9
147	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 10
148	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 11
149	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 12
150	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 13

© NEMA

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 148 Response Frame

Bit	Function
151	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 14
152	Detector 9 Time Stamp Bit 15
153	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 0
154	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 1
155	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 2
156	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 3
157	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 4
158	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 5
159	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 6
160	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 7
161	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 8
162	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 9
163	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 10
164	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 11
165	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 12
166	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 13
167	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 14
168	Detector 10 Time Stamp Bit 15
169	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 0
170	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 1
171	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 2
172	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 3
173	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 4
174	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 5
175	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 6
176	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 7
177	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 8
178	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 9
179	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 10
180	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 11
181	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 12
182	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 13
183	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 14
184	Detector 11 Time Stamp Bit 15
185	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 0
186	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 1
187	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 2
188	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 3
189	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 4
190	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 5
191	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 6
192	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 7
193	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 8
194	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 9
195	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 10
196	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 11
197	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 12
198	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 13
199	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 14
200	Detector 12 Time Stamp Bit 15
201	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 0
202	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 1
203	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 2
204	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 3
205	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 4
206	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 5
207	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 6
208	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 7
209	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 8
210	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 9
211	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 10
212	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 11
213	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 12
214	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 13

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 148 Response Frame

Bit	Function
215	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 14
216	Detector 13 Time Stamp Bit 15
217	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 0
218	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 1
219	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 2
220	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 3
221	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 4
222	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 5
223	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 6
224	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 7
225	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 8
226	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 9
227	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 10
228	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 11
229	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 12
230	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 13
231	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 14
232	Detector 14 Time Stamp Bit 15
233	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 0
234	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 1
235	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 2
236	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 3
237	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 4
238	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 5
239	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 6
240	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 7
241	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 8
242	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 9
243	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 10
244	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 11
245	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 12
246	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 13
247	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 14
248	Detector 15 Time Stamp Bit 15
249	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 0
250	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 1
251	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 2
252	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 3
253	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 4
254	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 5
255	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 6
256	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 7
257	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 8
258	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 9
259	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 10
260	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 11
261	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 12
262	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 13
263	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 14
264	Detector 16 Time Stamp Bit 15
265	Detector 1 Call Status Bit 0
266	Detector 2 Call Status Bit 0
267	Detector 3 Call Status Bit 0
268	Detector 4 Call Status Bit 0
269	Detector 5 Call Status Bit 0
270	Detector 6 Call Status Bit 0
271	Detector 7 Call Status Bit 0
272	Detector 8 Call Status Bit 0
273	Detector 9 Call Status Bit 0
274	Detector 10 Call Status Bit 0
275	Detector 11 Call Status Bit 0
276	Detector 12 Call Status Bit 0
277	Detector 13 Call Status Bit 0
278	Detector 14 Call Status Bit 0

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 148 Response Frame

Bit	Function
279	Detector 15 Call Status Bit 0
280	Detector 16 Call Status Bit 0
281	Detector 1 Call Status Bit 1
282	Detector 2 Call Status Bit 1
283	Detector 3 Call Status Bit 1
284	Detector 4 Call Status Bit 1
285	Detector 5 Call Status Bit 1
286	Detector 6 Call Status Bit 1
287	Detector 7 Call Status Bit 1
288	Detector 8 Call Status Bit 1
289	Detector 9 Call Status Bit 1
290	Detector 10 Call Status Bit 1
291	Detector 11 Call Status Bit 1
292	Detector 12 Call Status Bit 1
293	Detector 13 Call Status Bit 1
294	Detector 14 Call Status Bit 1
295	Detector 15 Call Status Bit 1
296	Detector 16 Call Status Bit 1

3.3.1.4.2.7 Types 149–151 DR BIU #2-4 Call Data (Type 21-23 ACK)

These frame types are identical to Type 148 Frame except that the frame type numbers and addresses are as noted in the **Response Frame** summary.

Type 149 Frame is the response data from BIU #2 for detectors 17–32; Type 150 Frame is the response data from BIU #3 for detectors 33–48; Type 151 Frame is the response data from BIU #4 for detectors 49–64.

3.3.1.4.2.8 Type 152 DR BIU #1 Diagnostic (Type 24 ACK)

The source of these frames is the Detector Rack BIU #1. This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 24 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station. If a Type 24 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

The bits designated **Watchdog Failure**, **Open Loop**, **Shorted Loop**, and **Excessive Change In Inductance** shall indicate failures. The logical **1** state shall represent the failed state and the logical **0** state shall represent the good state.

Type 152 Response Frame

Bit	Function
1	0
2	0
3	0
4	1
5	1
6	0
7	0
8	1
9	Detector 1 - Watchdog Failure
10	Detector 1 - Open Loop
11	Detector 1 - Shorted Loop
12	Detector 1 - Excessive Change In Inductance
13	Detector 1 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
14	Detector 1 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
15	Detector 1 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
16	Detector 1 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
17	Detector 2 - Watchdog Failure
18	Detector 2 - Open Loop
19	Detector 2 - Shorted Loop
20	Detector 2 - Excessive Change In Inductance
21	Detector 2 - Bit 4 (Reserved)

Type 152 Response Frame

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 152 Response Frame

Bit	Function
22	Detector 2 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
23	Detector 2 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
24	Detector 2 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
25	Detector 3 - Watchdog Failure
26	Detector 3 - Open Loop
27	Detector 3 - Shorted Loop
28	Detector 3 - Excessive Change In Inductance
29	Detector 3 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
30	Detector 3 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
31	Detector 3 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
32	Detector 3 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
33	Detector 4 - Watchdog Failure
34	Detector 4 - Open Loop
35	Detector 4 - Shorted Loop
36	Detector 4 - Excessive Change In Inductance
37	Detector 4 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
38	Detector 4 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
39	Detector 4 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
40	Detector 4 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
41	Detector 5 - Watchdog Failure
42	Detector 5 - Open Loop
43	Detector 5 - Shorted Loop
44	Detector 5 - Excessive Change In Inductance
45	Detector 5 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
46	Detector 5 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
47	Detector 5 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
48	Detector 5 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
49	Detector 6 - Watchdog Failure
50	Detector 6 - Open Loop
51	Detector 6 - Shorted Loop
52	Detector 6 - Excessive Change In Inductance
53	Detector 6 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
54	Detector 6 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
55	Detector 6 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
56	Detector 6 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
57	Detector 7 - Watchdog Failure
58	Detector 7 - Open Loop
59	Detector 7 - Shorted Loop
60	Detector 7 - Excessive Change In Inductance
61	Detector 7 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
62	Detector 7 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
63	Detector 7 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
64	Detector 7 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
65	Detector 8 - Watchdog Failure
66	Detector 8 - Open Loop
67	Detector 8 - Shorted Loop
68	Detector 8 - Excessive Change In Inductance
69	Detector 8 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
70	Detector 8 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
71	Detector 8 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
72	Detector 8 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
73	Detector 9 - Watchdog Failure
74	Detector 9 - Open Loop
75	Detector 9 - Shorted Loop
76	Detector 9 - Excessive Change In Inductance
77	Detector 9 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
78	Detector 9 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
79	Detector 9 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
80	Detector 9 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
81	Detector 10 - Watchdog Failure
82	Detector 10 - Open Loop
83	Detector 10 - Shorted Loop
84	Detector 10 - Excessive Change In Inductance
85	Detector 10 - Bit 4 (Reserved)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 152 Response Frame

Bit	Function
86	Detector 10 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
87	Detector 10 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
88	Detector 10 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
89	Detector 11 - Watchdog Failure
90	Detector 11 - Open Loop
91	Detector 11 - Shorted Loop
92	Detector 11 - Excessive Change In Inductance
93	Detector 11 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
94	Detector 11 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
95	Detector 11 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
96	Detector 11 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
97	Detector 12 - Watchdog Failure
98	Detector 12 - Open Loop
99	Detector 12 - Shorted Loop
100	Detector 12 - Excessive Change In Inductance
101	Detector 12 - Bit 4 (Reserved)2
102	Detector 12 - Bit 5 (Reserved)2
103	Detector 12 - Bit 6 (Reserved)2
104	Detector 12 - Bit 7 (Reserved)2
105	Detector 13 - Watchdog Failure
106	Detector 13 - Open Loop
107	Detector 13 - Shorted Loop
108	Detector 13 - Excessive Change In Inductance
109	Detector 13 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
110	Detector 13 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
111	Detector 13 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
112	Detector 13 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
113	Detector 14 - Watchdog Failure
114	Detector 14 - Open Loop
115	Detector 14 - Shorted Loop
116	Detector 14 - Excessive Change In Inductance
117	Detector 14 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
118	Detector 14 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
119	Detector 14 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
120	Detector 14 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
121	Detector 15 - Watchdog Failure
122	Detector 15 - Open Loop
123	Detector 15 - Shorted Loop
124	Detector 15 - Excessive Change In Inductance
125	Detector 15 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
126	Detector 15 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
127	Detector 15 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
128	Detector 15 - Bit 7 (Reserved)
129	Detector 16 - Watchdog Failure
130	Detector 16 - Open Loop
131	Detector 16 - Shorted Loop
132	Detector 16 - Excessive Change In Inductance
133	Detector 16 - Bit 4 (Reserved)
134	Detector 16 - Bit 5 (Reserved)
135	Detector 16 - Bit 6 (Reserved)
136	Detector 16 - Bit 7 (Reserved)

3.3.1.4.2.9 Types 153–155 DR BIU #2-4 Diagnostic (Type 25-27 ACK)

These frame types are identical to Type 152 Frame except that the frame type numbers and addresses are as noted in the **Response Frame** summary.

Type 153 Frame is the diagnostic response data from BIU #2 for detectors 17–32; Type 154 Frame is the diagnostic response data from BIU #3 for detectors 33–48; Type 155 Frame is the diagnostic response data from BIU #4 for detectors 49–64.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.3.1.4.2.10 Type 158 Diagnostics (Type 30 ACK)

This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 30 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station. If a Type 30 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

Bits 9–48 of this frame shall function identically to bits 9–48 of Type 138 Frame from TF BIU #1 and the CU shall act on them in an identical manner.

Bits 49–88 of this frame shall function identically to bits 9–48 of Type 139 Frame from TF BIU #2 and the CU shall act on them in an identical manner.

Bits 89–128 of this frame shall function identically to bits 9–48 of Type 140 Frame from TF BIU #3 and the CU shall act on them in an identical manner.

Bits 129–168 of this frame shall function identically to bits 9–48 of Type 141 Frame from TF BIU #4 and the CU shall act on them in an identical manner.

Bits 169–184 of this frame shall function identically to the 16 bits named **DET 1 Call Status Bit 0** through DET 16 Call Status Bit 0 in Type 148 Frame and the CU shall act on them in an identical manner.

Bits 185–200 of this frame shall function identically to the 16 bits named DET 17 Call Status Bit 0 through DET 32 Call Status Bit 0 in Type 149 Frame and the CU shall act on them in an identical manner.

The CU shall logically **OR** all bits received in this frame with those received in other frames referenced here prior to acting on them.

Type 158 Response Frame

Bit	Function
1	0
2	1
3	1
4	1
5	1
6	0
7	0
8	1
9–168	See Text Above
169	Detector Call #1
170	Detector Call #2
171	Detector Call #3
172	Detector Call #4
173	Detector Call #5
174	Detector Call #6
175	Detector Call #7
176	Detector Call #8
177	Detector Call #9
178	Detector Call #10
179	Detector Call #11
180	Detector Call #12
181	Detector Call #13
182	Detector Call #14
183	Detector Call #15
184	Detector Call #16
185	Detector Call #17
186	Detector Call #18
187	Detector Call #19
188	Detector Call #20
189	Detector Call #21
190	Detector Call #22
191	Detector Call #23
192	Detector Call #24
193	Detector Call #25
194	Detector Call #26

Type 158 Response Frame

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 158 Response Frame	
Bit	**Function**
195	Detector Call #27
196	Detector Call #28
197	Detector Call #29
198	Detector Call #30
199	Detector Call #31
200	Detector Call #32

3.3.1.4.2.11 Type 168 No Service Required (Type 40 ACK)

This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 40 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station and the secondary station does not have a message to exchange with another secondary station. If a Type 40 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

Type 168 Response Frame		
Bit	**Function**	
1	0	
2	0	
3	0	
4	1	**Type 168 Response Frame**
5	0	
6	1	
7	0	
8	1	

3.3.1.4.2.12 Type 169 Secondary Source Message (Type 40 ACK)

This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 40 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station and the secondary station has a message to exchange with another secondary station. If a Type 40 frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

Bits 9–24 are the **Source** station Manufacturer Specific ID number, as described in 3.3.1.4.

Bits 25–32 identify the Destination address.

Bits 33–288 contain the message data.

Type 169 Response Frame		
Bit	**Function**	
1	1	
2	0	
3	0	
4	1	**Type 169 Response Frame**
5	0	
6	1	
7	0	
8	1	
9	Manufacturer ID - Bit 0	
10	Manufacturer ID - Bit 1	
11	Manufacturer ID - Bit 2	
12	Manufacturer ID - Bit 3	
13	Manufacturer ID - Bit 4	
14	Manufacturer ID - Bit 5	
15	Manufacturer ID - Bit 6	
16	Manufacturer ID - Bit 7	
17	Manufacturer ID - Bit 8	
18	Manufacturer ID - Bit 9	
19	Manufacturer ID - Bit 10	
20	Manufacturer ID - Bit 11	

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 169 Response Frame

Bit	Function
21	Manufacturer ID - Bit 12
22	Manufacturer ID - Bit 13
23	Manufacturer ID - Bit 14
24	Manufacturer ID - Bit 15
25	Destination Address - Bit 0
26	Destination Address - Bit 1
27	Destination Address - Bit 2
28	Destination Address - Bit 3
29	Destination Address - Bit 4
30	Destination Address - Bit 5
31	Destination Address - Bit 6
32	Destination Address - Bit 7
33	Message Data - Bit 1
	|
288	Message Data - Bit 256

3.3.1.4.2.13 Type 170 Secondary Negative Acknowledge (Type 42 NACK)

This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 42 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station and the **Destination** station determines the Manufacturer Specific ID number is not valid. If a Type 42 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

Type 170 Response Frame

Bit	Function	
1	0	
2	1	
3	0	
4	1	**Type 170 Response Frame**
5	0	
6	1	
7	0	
8	1	

3.3.1.4.2.14 Type 171 Secondary Acknowledge (Type 42/43 ACK)

This frame type shall be transmitted only if a Type 42 or Type 43 Frame has been correctly received from the primary station. If a Type 42 or Type 43 Frame is received from the primary station with a CRC error, then this frame type shall not be issued.

Type 171 Response Frame

Bit	Function	
1	1	
2	1	
3	0	
4	1	**Type 171 Response Frame**
5	0	
6	1	
7	0	
8	1	

3.3.1.4.3 Secondary to Secondary Messages

Secondary station to secondary station messaging provides a method of exchanging Manufacturer Specific data from one station to another station via the Port 1 data link. The message data contained in the information field of a Type 169 Frame is transmitted from the **Source** secondary station through the primary station to the **Destination** station. The message data contents are meaningful only to the secondary stations.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

There shall be a programming means in the CU to identify the secondary station addresses which will receive the Type 40 Frame. The primary station shall transmit a Type 40 Frame to each designated secondary station on the link in a sequential fashion. The broadcast address (255) shall be invalid as a destination address. If a secondary station has a message to exchange it shall respond to the Type 40 Frame with a Type 169 Frame. If the secondary station does not have a message to exchange, it shall respond with a Type 168 Frame. Upon correct receipt of the Type 169 Frame from the source secondary station, the primary station shall transmit the message data to the destination secondary station in a Type 42 Frame. Upon correct receipt of the Type 42 Frame from the primary station, the destination secondary station shall acknowledge receipt with either a Type 171 or Type 170 Frame. The primary station shall complete the message exchange by transmitting a Type 43 Frame to the source secondary with the status of the exchange. This command frame shall be acknowledged by the source secondary station with a Type 171 Frame.

Secondary stations shall respond to command frames within the service time defined in 3.3.1.5.2.

A determined access time for service may not be provided due to variations in the number of stations, the amount of secondary messages transmitted, etc. Therefore, time critical (real time) messages should be discouraged. Since the message data contents are specific only to the source and destination stations, it is dependent on the user of manufacturer specific messages to assure validation of the sender and contents of the message. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

3.3.1.5 Frame Timing

3.3.1.5.1 Primary Station

The CU shall be designated the Primary Station. The transmission of Port 1 command frames shall be controlled by the CU. The primary station shall transmit all frame types within a one second window, with the window repeating itself in a cyclical manner every second that the primary station is operating. Each one second window shall start with the beginning of the transmission of Type 9 Frame, the date and time broadcast to all secondary stations. The beginning of the transmission of Type 9 Frame shall occur every 1.0 seconds $\pm$ 0.01 seconds. Each frame type shall have a defined frequency of transmission, such that some frames shall be transmitted more frequently than once per second. Table 3-3 shows the command frames and their frequency of transmission. If the command frames are required to be transmitted, as determined by CU programming means described elsewhere in this standard, then the frequency of transmission shall be exactly as shown. The minimum number of command frames transmitted by the CU each second shall be determined by Equation 3-1, where **T** represents the number of TF BIUs present (as determined by CU programming means) and **D** represents the number of Detector Rack BIUs present (as determined by CU programming means).

Equation 3-1

#Command Frames = 32 + 11D (T = 0)
#Command Frames = 42 + 10T + 11D (T >> 0)

Table 3-3
COMMAND FRAMES AND FREQUENCY OF TRANSMISSION

Type	Freq. Of Trans.	Description
0	10 Times/Second	Load Switch Drivers
1	10 Times/Second	MMU Inputs / Status Request
3	1 Time/Second	MMU Programming Request
9	1 Time/Second	Date And Time Broadcast
10	10 Times/Second	TF BIU #1 Outputs / Inputs Request
11	10 Times/Second	TF BIU #2 Outputs / Inputs Request
12	10 Times/Second	TF BIU #3 Outputs / Inputs Request
13	10 Times/Second	TF BIU #4 Outputs / Inputs Request
18	10 Times/Second	Output Transfer Frame
20	10 Times/Second	DR BIU #1 Call Data Request
21	10 Times/Second	DR BIU #2 Call Data Request
22	10 Times/Second	DR BIU #3 Call Data Request

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 3-3
COMMAND FRAMES AND FREQUENCY OF TRANSMISSION

Type	Freq. Of Trans.	Description
23	10 Times/Second	DR BIU #4 Call Data Request
24	1 Time/Second	DR BIU #1 Reset / Diagnostic Request
25	1 Time/Second	DR BIU #2 Reset / Diagnostic Request
26	1 Time/Second	DR BIU #3 Reset / Diagnostic Request
27	1 Time/Second	DR BIU #4 Reset / Diagnostic Request
30	1 Time/Second	Diagnostic Request
40*	10 Times/Second	Poll for Service

* The Type 40 Frame may be replaced by a Type 42 or 43 Frame, as required, during secondary to secondary messaging (See 3.3.1.5.4).

3.3.1.5.2 Secondary Stations

The MMU, TF, and the Detector Racks shall be designated secondary stations. Secondary stations shall begin their response to command frames from the primary station within a designated period of time following the complete reception of each command frame. This period shall be known as the **Service Time at Secondaries** and shall have a maximum value of 0.5 milliseconds. Secondary stations may begin their responses to command frames immediately following the complete reception of command frames. The secondaries **Tx Clock** and **Tx Data** link output shall be in its high impedance state outside of the interval defined by its service time plus response time.

3.3.1.5.3 Handshaking

The transmission of command and response frames shall take place using a full duplex arrangement. The transmission of command frames shall begin at the start of each one second window. Following the transmission of each command frame, there shall be a **Dead Time** during which the CU does not transmit. Following the **Dead Time** interval, the CU shall begin the transmission of the next frame in the prescribed sequence. Each secondary station shall begin its response to command frames following the reception of command frames, as outlined in 3.3.1.5.2. Failure to receive at the CU a given complete response frame type from a secondary station prior to receiving any other complete response frame type shall be cause to count a **No Response** for the given response frame type. The transmission of each response frame shall be completed before the completion of the transmission of the next command frame in the prescribed sequence. This is illustrated in Figure 3-5. In order to meet this requirement, the inequality shown in Equation 3-2 shall be met at all times.

Equation 3-2

$$[\text{Service}(N)+\text{Response}(N)] \leq [\text{Dead}(N)+\text{Command}(N+1)]$$

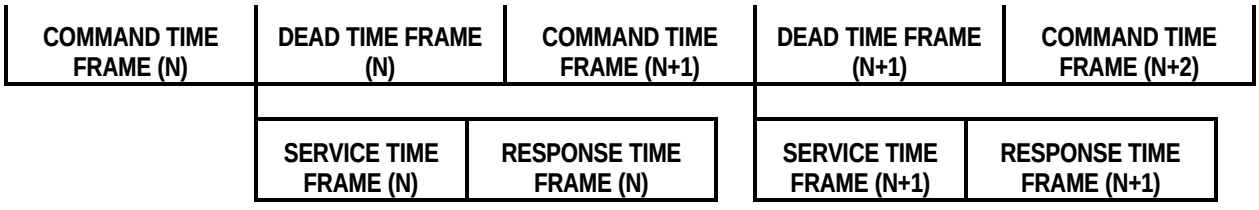


Figure 3-5
COMMAND AND RESPONSE FRAME TIMING

Where **Service** (N) represents the maximum service time at secondaries for any frame (i.e., 0.5 milliseconds), **Response** (N) represents the maximum response frame transmission time at a secondary in responding to a given frame (i.e., frame number N), **Dead** (N) represents the minimum dead time following the transmission of a given frame (i.e., frame number N), and **Command** (N+1) represents the minimum command frame transmission time for the next frame in the prescribed sequence (i.e., frame number N+1). Thus, the **Dead Time** following the transmission of each command frame shall have a

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

minimum value that meets the requirements of Equation 3-3, where **Dead** (N), **Service** (N), **Response** (N), and **Command** (N+1) are as described above. In no event, however, shall the **Dead Time** be less than 0.5 milliseconds.

Equation 3-3

Dead(N) = Service(N) + Response(N) - Command(N+1)

For the purpose of calculating the minimum **Dead Time** from Equation 3-3, the values for **Service, Response,** and **Command** for each command frame type shall be taken from Table 3-4, where each of the values shown represents milliseconds.

Table 3-4
SERVICE, RESPONSE, AND COMMAND VALUES (MILLISECONDS)

Frame Type	Service	Response	Command
0	0.5	0.442	1.031
1	0.5	1.074	0.360
3	0.5	1.705	0.360
9	0.5	n/a	0.825
10	0.5	0.758	0.773
11	0.5	0.758	0.773
12	0.5	0.758	0.618
13	0.5	0.758	0.618
18	0.5	n/a	0.360
20	0.5	2.715	0.360
21	0.5	2.715	0.360
22	0.5	2.715	0.360
23	0.5	2.715	0.360
24	0.5	1.453	0.412
25	0.5	1.453	0.412
26	0.5	1.453	0.412
27	0.5	1.453	0.412
30	0.5	1.957	0.360
40	0.5	2.652	0.360
42	0.5	0.442	2.166
43	0.5	0.442	0.360

The values shown in Table 3-4 are based on the following considerations: The maximum service time at secondaries shall be 0.5 milliseconds. The maximum response frame transmission time at secondaries shall be equal to the total number of bits in the response frame (which is equal to the number of information field bits specified in 3.3.1.4 plus 48) divided by the minimum data transfer rate specified in 3.3.1.3 and multiplied by 1.2 (to account for the extreme of maximum zero bit insertion). Thus the maximum response frame transmission time at secondaries shall be equal to the total number of bits in the response frame divided by 126,720. The minimum command frame transmission time shall be equal to the total number of bits in the command frame (which is equal to the number of information field bits specified in 3.3.1.4 plus 48) divided by the maximum data transfer rate specified in 3.3.1.3 (to account for the extreme of no zero bit insertion). Thus the minimum command frame transmission time shall be equal to the total number of bits in the command frame divided by 155,136.

In the event that manufacturer specific command and response frames are generated, the calculation of the minimum **Dead Time** following the transmission of each command frame shall be based on the same considerations specified above.

3.3.1.5.4 Command Frame Scheduling

The one second window described in 3.3.1.5.1, during which time all frame types shall be transmitted, shall be divided into ten 100 millisecond windows, each of which shall have a duration of 100 $\pm$ 10 milliseconds. The summation of the durations of the ten 100 millisecond windows in each one second window shall be 1.0 $\pm$ 0.01 seconds.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

All command frames shown in Table 3-3 and shown as having a frequency of transmission of 10 times/second and required to be transmitted by the CU, as determined by CU programming means, shall be transmitted in their entirety in each of the 100 millisecond windows. The scheduling of the transmission of these frames shall be such that they are transmitted in the following order in each of the 100 millisecond windows: frame Type 0, 1, 10, 11, 12, 13, 18, 20, 21, 22, 23, 40.

All command frames shown in Table 3-3 and shown as having a frequency of transmission of 1 time/second and required to be transmitted by the CU, as determined by CU programming means, shall be transmitted in their entirety in each of the one second windows. The scheduling of the transmission of these frames shall be such that they are transmitted in the following order in each of the one second windows: frame Type 9, 3, 24, 25, 26, 27, 30. Only one of these frames shall be transmitted in each of the 100 millisecond windows. Thus frame Type 9 shall be transmitted in the first 100 millisecond window of each one second window, frame Type 3 shall be transmitted in the second 100 millisecond window, etc.

At a minimum, one Type 40, 42, or 43 Frame shall be transmitted in each 100 millisecond window. Only one command frame type shall be transmitted within each 100 millisecond window. In the event of link errors caused by CRC or timeouts, retries by the primary station shall be optional and shall occur within the same 100 millisecond window. Receipt of a new Type 40 Frame by a source secondary instead of the Type 43 Frame will indicate to the source secondary that the current message exchange may not have been completed successfully and has been aborted.

At the manufacturers discretion, the transmission of manufacturer specific command frames may take place at any point in the one second window, except that frame Type 9 shall be the first frame transmitted in each one second window. The use of manufacturer specific command and response frames shall not preclude the transmission of frame Types 9, 3, 24, 25, 26, 27, 30, 0, 1, 10, 11, 12, 13, 18, 20, 21, 22, 23, 40 and their response frames, in the manner specified on the previous page.

3.3.2 Port 2 Interface

An EIA/TIA-232-E Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) interface and connector shall be provided for interconnecting to a printer or personal computer.

The connector shall be mounted on the front of the CU and shall be a 25 pin metal shell “D” subminiature type connector. The connector shall utilize female contacts with 15 millionths of an inch minimum gold plating in the mating areas. The connector shall be equipped with latching blocks. The connector shall mate with a 25 pin “D” type connector, AMP Incorporated part number 205208-1, or equivalent, which is equipped with spring latches, AMP Incorporated part number 745013-1, or equivalent.

Pin	Function	I/O
1	Earth Ground	[-]
2	Transmitted Data	[O]
3	Received Data	[I]
4	Request To Send	[O]
5	Clear To Send	[I]
6	Not Used	[-]
7	Logic Ground	[-]
8	Received Line Signal Detector	[I]
9–19	Not Used	[-]
20	DTE Ready	[O]
21–25	Not Used	

The EIA/TIA-232-E function reference for Pin 1 is Shield and Pin 7 is Signal Common.

3.3.2.1 Unit to Printer

The CU timing data, operational data, and reports shall be capable of being transmitted to the printer. The CU shall interface with a printer capable of eighty columns or more. The CU shall provide for asynchronous serial data communications with X-On/X-Off handshaking protocols, a word structure of 1 Start Bit + 7 Data Bits + 1 Parity Bit (Even) + 1 Stop Bit, transmit and receive ASCII coded 1200 Bits Per Second serial data.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.3.2.2 Unit to Personal Computer

The CU shall be capable of transmitting and receiving 1) unit timing and operations data, 2) activity status, and 3) unit reports to a personal computer running the appropriate software. The data transmissions shall be checked for accuracy.

3.3.3 Port 3 System Interface

An interface and connector shall be provided for interconnecting the CU to the system interconnect lines.

3.3.3.1 Connector

The Port 3 connector shall be mounted on the front of the CU and shall be a 9 pin metal shell "D" subminiature type connector. The connector shall utilize male contacts with 15 millionths of an inch minimum gold plating in the mating areas. The connector shall be equipped with latching blocks. The connector shall mate with a 9 pin "D" type connector, AMP Incorporated part number 205203-1, or equivalent, which is equipped with spring latches, AMP Incorporated part number 745011-1, or equivalent.

Pin connections shall be as follows:

Pin	Function	I/O
1	Transmit 1	[O]
2	Transmit 2	[O]
3	Reserved	[-]
4	Receive 1	[I]
5	Receive 2	[I]
6	Earth Ground	[-]
7	Reserved	[-]
8	Reserved	[-]
9	Earth Ground	[-]

Pins 6 and 9 are provided for connection to an external cable shield, if appropriate. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

3.3.3.2 Interface

The system interface shall provide four-wire full duplex communications over an unconditioned Type 3002 voice grade private line channel or equivalent customer owned cable.

3.3.3.2.1 Transmission Method

Communications over the system interface shall utilize time division multiplex techniques. Transmissions shall use phase coherent frequency shift keying (FSK) modulation at a data rate of 1200 bps. Data format shall be asynchronous, bit serial.

3.3.3.2.2 Transmitter Characteristics

The transmitter portion of the system interface shall be a digital to FSK modulator. Output level shall be 0 dBm $\pm$15% into a 600 ohm load. Frequency stability of the transmitted signal shall be $\pm$5% over the CU operating temperature range. Transmit frequencies shall be 1200 Hz for MARK (logic 1) and 2200 Hz for SPACE (logic 0).

3.3.3.2.3 Receiver Characteristics

The receiver portion of the system interface shall be a FSK to digital demodulator. Receiver sensitivity shall be a minimum of -34dBm. In band signal-to-noise ratio shall be 10dB or greater.

3.3.4 Type 1—Interface Standards

A Type A1 or P1 CU shall provide an Input / Output interface to meet the following requirements.

The connector shall have a metallic shell, be connected to the Earth Ground internally, be mounted on the front of the unit, and intermate with a MS3106( )-18-1S.

Input / Output connector pin terminations shall be as follows:

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Connector "A" Pin/Function

Pin	Function	I/O
A	AC Neutral	[I]
B	Not Used	
C	AC Line	[I]
D	Not Used	
E	Not Used	
F	Fault Monitor	[O]
G	Logic Ground	[O]
H	Earth Ground	[I]
I	Not Used	
J	Not Used	

3.3.5 Type 2—Interface Standards

A Type A2 or P2 CU shall provide an Input / Output interface to meet the following requirements.

3.3.5.1 Electrical Limits of Input / Output Terminations

3.3.5.1.1 Logic Levels

All logic signals (except as explicitly defined elsewhere in these standards) shall be **Low** state (nominal 0 volts) for the **True** (operate) state of all input and output terminations. Input / Output terminations, when not activated, shall be internally biased to the **False** (**High**) nonoperate state (+24 volts DC).

3.3.5.1.2 Transient Immunity

The operation of the CU shall not be affected during operation by the application to any input or output terminal of pulses of 10 microseconds duration, 300-volt positive or negative amplitude, and with a maximum repetition rate of 1 pulse per second. For the purposes of this requirement, a pulse source having an output impedance of not less than 1K ohms, nor greater than 10K ohms shall be used.

3.3.5.1.3 Inputs

Inputs shall have the following characteristics:

1. A voltage between 0 and 8 volts shall be considered the **Low** state.
2. A voltage greater than 16 volts shall be considered the **High** state.
3. The transition from the **Low** state to **High** state (and vice versa) shall occur between 8 and 16 volts.
4. External transition from the **Low** state to **High** state (and vice versa) shall be accomplished within 0.1 millisecond.
5. Over the voltage range 0 to 26 volts DC, the maximum current **In** or **Out** of any input control terminal shall be less than 10 milliamperes. Input impedance shall not exceed 11K ohms to 24 volts DC, nor shall the surge impedance be less than 100 ohms resistive.
6. Any input signal dwelling in a defined logic state for less than 8 milliseconds shall not be recognized. Any input signal dwelling in a defined logic state for more than 17 milliseconds shall be recognized. Successive similar logic state transitions shall not be recognized when occurring less than 8 milliseconds apart, and shall be recognized when occurring more than 34 milliseconds apart.

3.3.5.1.4 Outputs

Electrical outputs shall have the following characteristics:

1. Output Circuits
   a. The **Low** (operate) voltage shall be between 0 and 4 volts.
   b. Current sinking capability in the **Low** state (**True**) shall be at least 200 milliamperes from an inductive load.
   c. With an external impedance of 100K ohms or greater, the transition from 4 to 16 volts (and vice versa) shall be accomplished within 0.1 millisecond.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

d. The High state impedance shall not exceed 11K ohms to 24 volts DC.

e. Any external steady-state voltage applied to an output terminal shall not exceed +30 volts DC, nor shall it cause flow of more than 3 milliamperes into the terminal, when the output is in the High state.

f. Any valid **True** output signal, except Load Switch Driver outputs when Dimming is enabled, shall dwell in this state for at least 50 milliseconds.

2. Regulated 24 Volts DC for External Use

a. Positive 24 + 2 volts DC shall be regulated over an AC line voltage variation from 89 to 135 volts and from no load to full load.

b. Current capability shall be 500 milliamperes continuous with less than 0.5 volt peak-to-peak ripple.

3.3.5.2 Pin Connections

The Type A2 and P2 CU shall provide Input / Output interface pin connections per 3.3.5.2.1 and 3.3.5.2.2.

3.3.5.2.1 Connectors Used

The connector on the CU shall have a metallic shell. The connector shall be connected to the chassis internally. The connectors shall be mounted on the front of the unit in accordance with the following:

1. Connector A shall intermate with a MS3116( )-22-55S
2. Connector B shall intermate with a MS3116( )-22-55P
3. Connector C shall intermate with a MS3116( )-24-61P

Controller Unit	Conn A	Conn B	Conn C
Type A2 Actuated	X	X	X
Type P2 Pretimed	X	X	-

3.3.5.2.2 Input / Output Connector Pin Terminations

Input / Output connector pin terminations shall be in accordance with the following:

	Connector "A" Pin/Function 55 Pin (Plug) Type # -22-55P	
Pin	Function	I/O
A	Fault Monitor	[O]
B	+24 VDC (External)	[O]
C	Voltage Monitor	[O]
D	Vehicle 1 Red	[O]
E	Pedestrian 1 Don't Walk	[O]
F	Vehicle 2 Red	[O]
G	Pedestrian 2 Don't Walk	[O]
H	Pedestrian 2 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
J	Pedestrian 2 Walk	[O]
K	Vehicle 2 Detector	[I]
L	Pedestrian 2 Detector	[I]
M	Input 1	[I]
N	Input 2	[I]
P	Input 3	[I]
R	Input 4	[I]
S	Input 5	[I]
T	Input 6	[I]
U	AC Neutral	[I]
V	Earth Ground	[I]
W	Logic Ground	[O]
X	Flashing Logic	[O]
Y	Output 1	[O]
Z	Vehicle 1 Yellow	[O]
a	Pedestrian 1 Pedestrian Clear	[O]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Connector "A" Pin/Function
55 Pin (Plug) Type # -22-55P

Pin	Function	I/O
b	Vehicle 2 Yellow	[O]
c	Vehicle 2 Green	[O]
d	Output 2	[O]
e	Output 3	[O]
f	Vehicle 1 Detector	[I]
g	Pedestrian 1 Detector	[I]
h	Input 7	[I]
i	Input 8	[I]
j	Input 9	[I]
k	Input 10	[I]
m	Input 11	[I]
n	Test A	[I]
p	AC Line	[I]
q	I/O Mode Bit A	[I]
r	Output 4	[O]
s	Vehicle 1 Green	[O]
t	Pedestrian 1 Walk	[O]
u	Output 5	[O]
v	Input 12	[I]
w	Input 13	[I]
x	Input 14	[I]
y	I/O Mode Bit B	[I]
z	Input 15	[I]
AA	Test B	[I]
BB	Input 16	[I]
CC	Output 6	[O]
DD	Output 7	[O]
EE	Input 17	[I]
FF	Input 18	[I]
GG	Input 19	[I]
HH	I/O Mode Bit C	[I]

Connector "B" Pin/Function
55 Pin (Socket) Type # -22-55S

Pin	Function	I/O
A	Output 8	[O]
B	Input 20	[I]
C	Output 9	[O]
D	Vehicle 3 Green	[O]
E	Vehicle 3 Yellow	[O]
F	Vehicle 3 Red	[O]
G	Vehicle 4 Red	[O]
H	Pedestrian 4 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
J	Pedestrian 4 Don't Walk	[O]
K	Output 10	[O]
L	Vehicle 4 Detector	[I]
M	Pedestrian 4 Detector	[I]
N	Vehicle 3 Detector	[I]
P	Pedestrian 3 Detector	[I]
R	Input 21	[I]
S	Input 22	[I]
T	Input 23	[I]
U	Input 24	[I]
V	Input 25	[I]
W	Input 26	[I]
X	Input 27	[I]
Y	Pedestrian 3 Walk	[O]
Z	Pedestrian 3 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
a	Pedestrian 3 Don't Walk	[O]
b	Vehicle 4 Green	[O]
c	Vehicle 4 Yellow	[O]
d	Pedestrian 4 Walk	[O]
e	Output 11	[O]
f	Output 12	[O]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Connector "B" Pin/Function
55 Pin (Socket) Type # -22-55S

Pin	Function	I/O
g	Input 28	[I]
h	Input 29	[I]
i	Input 30	[I]
j	Input 31	[I]
k	Input 32	[I]
m	Input 33	[I]
n	Input 34	[I]
p	Vehicle A Yellow	[O]
q	Vehicle A Red	[O]
r	Output 13	[O]
s	Output 14	[O]
t	Output 15	[O]
u	Vehicle D Red	[O]
v	Input 35	[I]
w	Vehicle D Green	[O]
x	Input 36	[I]
y	Input 37	[I]
z	Input 38	[I]
AA	Vehicle A Green	[O]
BB	Vehicle B Yellow	[O]
CC	Vehicle B Red	[O]
DD	Vehicle C Red	[O]
EE	Vehicle D Yellow	[O]
FF	Vehicle C Green	[O]
GG	Vehicle B Green	[O]
HH	Vehicle C Yellow	[O]

Connector "C" Pin/Function
61 Pin (Socket) Type # -24-61S

Pin	Function	I/O
A	Output 16	[O]
B	Output 17	[O]
C	Pedestrian 8 Don't Walk	[O]
D	Vehicle 8 Red	[O]
E	Vehicle 7 Yellow	[O]
F	Vehicle 7 Red	[O]
G	Vehicle 6 Red	[O]
H	Vehicle 5 Red	[O]
J	Vehicle 5 Yellow	[O]
K	Pedestrian 5 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
L	Pedestrian 5 Don't Walk	[O]
M	Output 18	[O]
N	Output 19	[O]
P	Vehicle 5 Detector	[I]
R	Pedestrian 5 Detector	[I]
S	Vehicle 6 Detector	[I]
T	Pedestrian 6 Detector	[I]
U	Pedestrian 7 Detector	[I]
V	Vehicle 7 Detector	[I]
W	Pedestrian 8 Detector	[I]
X	Input 39	[I]
Y	Input 40	[I]
Z	Input 41	[I]
a	Input 42	[I]
b	Test C	[I]
c	Output 20	[O]
d	Pedestrian 8 Walk	[O]
e	Vehicle 8 Yellow	[O]
f	Vehicle 7 Green	[O]
g	Vehicle 6 Green	[O]
h	Vehicle 6 Yellow	[O]
i	Vehicle 5 Green	[O]
j	Pedestrian 5 Walk	[O]
k	Output 21	[O]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Connector "C" Pin/Function 61 Pin (Socket) Type # -24-61S		
Pin	**Function**	**I/O**
m	Input 44	[I]
n	Input 45	[I]
p	Input 46	[I]
q	Input 47	[I]
r	Input 48	[I]
s	Input 49	[I]
t	Vehicle 8 Detector	[I]
u	Input 50	[I]
v	Input 51	[I]
w	Pedestrian 8 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
x	Vehicle 8 Green	[O]
y	Pedestrian 7 Don't Walk	[O]
z	Pedestrian 6 Don't Walk	[O]
AA	Pedestrian 6 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
BB	Output 23	[O]
CC	Output 24	[O]
DD	Output 25	[O]
EE	Input 52	[I]
FF	Output 26	[O]
GG	Output 27	[O]
HH	Output 28	[O]
JJ	Pedestrian 7 Walk	[O]
KK	Pedestrian 7 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
LL	Pedestrian 6 Walk	[O]
MM	Output 29	[O]
NN	Output 30	[O]
PP	Output 31	[O]

3.3.6 NTCIP Requirements

The CU (Type A1N, A2N, P1N, and P2N) shall comply with the referenced National Transportation Communications for ITS Protocol (NTCIP) Standards when installed. The software shall comply with the versions of the relevant NTCIP standards that are current at the date of this document.

The CU (Type A1N, A2N, P1N and P2N) shall comply with NEMA TS 3.2 the Simple Transportation Management Framework, and shall meet the requirements for Conformance Level 2. The software shall comply with NEMA TS 3.3, the Class B Profile, and shall include both an EIA/TIA 232-E and an FSK modem interface for NTCIP based communications.

The CU shall implement *conformance groups* as defined in NEMA TS 3.4 Global Object Definitions in accordance with the following:

TS 3.4 CONFORMANCE GROUPS		**STATUS**				
FEATURE	**TS 3.4 Clause**	**Base**	**A1N & A2N**		**P1N & P2N**	
			Level 1	**Level 2**	**Level 1**	**Level 2**
Configuration	3.1	M	M	M	M	M
Database Management	3.2	O	O	M	O	M
Time Management	3.3	O	O	M	O	M
Time Base Event Schedule	3.4	O	O	M	O	M
Report	3.5	O	O	M	O	M
STMF	3.6	O	O	M	O	M
PMPP	3.7	O	O	M	O	M

The notation key 'M' for Status indicates that support of the feature is mandatory for all implementations claiming support. The notation key 'O' for Status indicates that support of the feature is optional and left to the implementor.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The CU shall implement *conformance groups* as defined in NEMA TS 3.5 Actuated Signal Controller Object Definitions in accordance with the following:

TS 3.5 CONFORMANCE GROUPS		STATUS				
FEATURE	TS 3.5 Clause	Base	A1N & A2N		P1N & P2N	
			Level 1	Level 2	Level 1	Level 2
Phase	3.1	M	M	M	--	--
Detector	3.2	M	M	M	--	--
Volume Occupancy Report	3.3	O	O	M	O	M
Unit	3.4	O	O	M	--	--
Special Function	3.5	O	O	M	O	M
Coordination	3.6	O	O	M	--	--
Time Base	3.7	O	O	M	O	M
Preempt	3.8	O	O	M	--	--
Ring	3.9	O	O	M	--	--
Channel	3.10	O	O	M	--	--
Overlap	3.11	O	O	M	--	--
TS 2 Port 1	3.12	O	O	M	0	M

The CU shall implement *optional objects* as defined in NEMA TS 3.4 Global Object Definitions in accordance with the following:

TS 3.4 OPTIONAL OBJECTS		STATUS				
FEATURE	TS 3.4 Clause	Base	A1N & A2N		P1N & P2N	
			Level 1	Level 2	Level 1	Level 2
globalSetIDParameter	2.2.1	O	O	M	O	M
dbMakeID	2.3.5	O	O	M	O	M
eventConfigLogOID	2.5.2.7	O	O	M	O	M
eventConfigAction	2.5.2.8	O	O	M	O	M
eventClassDescription	2.5.6.4	O	O	M	O	M

The CU shall implement *optional objects* as defined in NEMA TS 3.5 Actuated Signal Controller Object Definitions in accordance with the following:

TS 3.5 OPTIONAL OBJECTS		STATUS				
FEATURE	TS 3.5 Clause	Base	A1N & A2N		P1N & P2N	
			Level 1	Level 2	Level 1	Level 2
phaseControlGroupTable	2.2.5	O	O	M	--	--
vehicleDetectorQueueLimit	2.3.2.7	O	O	M	--	--
vehicleDetectorFailTime	2.3.2.11	O	O	M	--	--
vehicleDetectorReportedAlarms	2.3.2.13	O	O	M	--	--
alarmGroupTable	2.4.12	O	O	M	--	--
specialFunctionOutputTable	2.4.14	O	O	M	--	--
preemptMinimumGreen	2.7.2.6	O	O	M	--	--
preemptMinimumWalk	2.7.2.7	O	O	M	--	--
preemptEnterPedClear	2.7.2.8	O	O	M	--	--
preemptState	2.7.2.16	O	O	M	--	--
preemptControlTable	2.7.3	O	O	M	--	--
ringControlGroupMax2	2.8.5.4	O	O	M	--	--
ringControlGroupMaxInhibit	2.8.5.5	O	O	M	--	--

NTCIP Level 1 requirements provide only the mandatory objects of TS 3.4 and TS 3.5. The mandatory objects of TS 3.4 and TS 3.5 do not address the advanced functions relative to Coordination, Time Base, Preemption, System Control, Overlaps, or TS 2 Port 1. A user requesting this level of NTCIP

© NEMA

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

requirements should not expect those features unless the user specification includes a definition of additional conformance groups from the standard or defines and lists specific alternates.

All objects required by this standard shall support all values within its standardized range. The standardized range is defined by a size, range, or enumerated listing indicated in the object's SYNTAX field and/or through descriptive text in the object's DESCRIPTION field of the relevant standard. The following provides the current listing of known variances for this standard:

Table 3-5
OBJECT RANGE VALUES FOR ACTUATED SIGNAL CONTROLLERS

Object	MINIMUM PROJECT REQUIREMENTS
TS 3.4-1996	
moduleType	Value 3
dbCreateTransaction	All Values
dbErrorType	All Values
globalDaylightSaving	Values 2 & 3
maxTimeBaseScheduleEntries	16
maxDayPlans	15
maxDayPlanEvents	10
maxEventLogConfigs	50
eventConfigMode	Values 2 thru 5
eventConfigAction	Values 2 & 3
maxEventLogSize	255
maxEventClasses	7
maxGroupAddress	2
TS 3.5-1996	
maxPhases	8
phaseStartup	Values 2 thru 6
phaseOptions	All Values
maxPhaseGroups	1
maxVehicleDetectors	64
vehicleDetectorOptions	All Values
maxPedestrianDetectors	8
unitAutoPedestrianClear	All Values
unitControlStatus	All Values
unitFlashStatus	All Values
unitControl	All Values
maxAlarmGroups	1
maxSpecialFunctionOutputs	8
coordCorrectionMode	Values 2 thru 4
coordMaximumMode	Values 2 thru 4
coordForceMode	Values 2 & 3
maxPatterns	48
patternTableType	Either 2, 3, or 4
maxSplits	16
splitMode	Values 2 thru 7
localFreeStatus	Values 2 thru 11
maxTimebaseASCActions	48
maxPreempts	6
preemptControl	All Values
preemptState	Values 2 thru 9

© NEMA

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Object	MINIMUM PROJECT REQUIREMENTS
maxRings	2
maxSequences	16
maxChannels	16
channelControlType	Values 2 thru 4
channelFlash	Values 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, & 14
channelDim	Values 0 thru 15
maxChannelStatusGroups	2
maxOverlaps	4
overlapType	Values 2 & 3
maxOverlapStatusGroups	1
maxPort1Addresses	18
port1Status	Values 2 & 3

The CU shall be supplied with documentation, including a 3.5in. floppy disk(s) and/or CD-ROM containing ASCII versions of the following MIB files in ASN.1 format:

1. The relevant version of each official NEMA Standard MIB Module referenced by the device functionality; and
2. If the device does not support the full range of any given object within a NEMA Standard MIB Module, a manufacturer specific version of the official NEMA Standard MIB Module with the supported range indicated in ASN.1 format in the SYNTAX field of the OBJECT-TYPE macro.

3.4 PRETIMED CONTROL

The Standards in 3.4 respond to the need for the functional interchangeability of Solid State Traffic Signal CUs, pretimed type. Interchangeability of equipment manufactured in conformance with these standards has been promoted by connector plug compatibility.

Interchangeability of equipment can be achieved only when units are configured to produce the same functional operation utilizing exactly the same inputs and outputs.

Configurations 'P1' and 'P2' CUs (see 3.2) shall provide functional capability to meet the pretimed control requirement herein.

3.4.1 Definitions

3.4.1.1 Signal Plan

A unique set of parameters that define the sequence and control for one cycle.

3.4.2 General

The solid state pretimed CU shall be an interval oriented device. The conditions of the output circuits (Load Switch Drivers) shall be programmable as to condition in each of the Signal Plan intervals. The interval sequence, interval timing, and output circuit condition are used to control the order in which traffic movements are assigned the right-of-way at the intersection and the time allocated to each.

The CU shall be capable of operating as a master controller, isolated controller, or secondary controller without changes or additions.

The CU shall accept Timing Plan and Offset commands from traditional interconnect systems, the internal system interface, and/or from a companion Time Base program.

The CU shall be capable of providing the following features:

3.4.2.1 Timing Plans

The CU shall provide control for a minimum of sixteen timing plans. The CU shall select the timing plan to be used, according to the current status of the Timing Plan request.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.4.2.1.1 Cycles

The CU shall be capable of providing a minimum of one cycle length for each timing plan. Each cycle length shall be adjustable over a range of 30 to 255 seconds in 1 second increments.

3.4.2.1.2 Splits

The CU shall be capable of providing a minimum of one set of splits for each timing plan. Each split shall provide an adjustable time for each interval in the sequence in accordance with the following:

a. 0 to 25.5 seconds in 0.1 second increments, and

b. 0 to 255 seconds in 1 second increments, or

c. 0 to 99 percent (of cycle length) in 1% increments.

3.4.2.2 Intervals

The CU shall be capable of providing a minimum of 24 intervals per Timing Plan. When less than 24 intervals are required, it shall be possible to program only the number used.

3.4.2.3 Signal Plans

The CU shall be capable of implementing four different signal plans. All signal plans shall have the same number of intervals.

Signal plans shall be capable of being selected based on program entry, interconnect inputs, time base control events, and a system interface.

The CU shall provide the following capability within each signal plan:

3.4.2.3.1 Minimum Time

Means shall be provided, for user definition, of a Minimum Time for each interval (0 to 25.5 seconds in 0.1 second increments).

3.4.2.3.2 Load Switch Driver Condition

Means shall be provided, for user definition, of the output condition (**Green**, **Yellow**, or **Red**) of each Vehicle Load Switch Driver Group for each interval. A circuit closure to **Logic Ground** shall be maintained at one of these three outputs at all times. The three outputs shall energize the appropriate vehicle signal load switching circuit to result in a **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Red** indication for the duration of such required indication.

Means shall be provided, for user definition, of the output condition (**Walk**, **Pedestrian Clear**, or **Don't Walk**) of each Pedestrian Load Switch Drivers Group for each interval. A circuit closure to **Logic Ground** shall be maintained on at least one of these three outputs at all times. The three outputs shall energize the appropriate pedestrian signal load switching circuit to result in a **Walk, Pedestrian Clearance**, or **Don't Walk** indication. The **Don't Walk** output shall flash only during the **Pedestrian Clearance** interval(s).

3.4.2.3.3 Timing Plan Transfer

Means shall be provided, for user definition, of the interval end at which a Timing Plan transfer may occur.

3.4.2.3.4 Signal Plan Transfer

Means shall be provided, for user definition, of the interval end at which a Signal Plan transfer may occur.

3.4.2.3.5 Variable Interval

Means shall be provided, for user definition, of the intervals which shall be considered **variable** for offset correction, force off, and manual control enable operation.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.4.2.3.6 Automatic Flash

Means shall be provided, for user definition, of the interval end as the Automatic Flash Entry point and the interval beginning as the Automatic Flash Exit point.

3.4.2.3.7 Actuated Interval(s)

Means shall be provided, for user definition, of the interval(s) which are serviced based on the activity of vehicle and/or pedestrian detectors.

3.4.2.4 Offset

The CU shall provide three offset settings for each of the Timing Plans.

Each offset shall provide an adjustable interval time in accordance with either of the following:

1. 0 to 254 seconds in 1.0 second increments, or
2. 0 to 99 percent (of cycle length) in 1% increments.

The values shall determine the time in seconds that the starting point of Interval #1, local time zero, shall lag the Synchronization pulse, system time zero.

The CU shall recognize when the sync reference and local offset in control indicate local zero is not correct. When establishing its offset based on the sync pulse, the CU shall reference only the leading edge, regardless of the width of the sync pulse.

3.4.2.5 Sync Monitor

The CU shall monitor the Offset command requests for validity of the imposed sync reference.

The CU shall revert to Free mode when:

1. No sync pulse is received for 3 consecutive cycles.
2. No offset line is active for 15 seconds.
3. More than one offset line is active for 15 seconds.

During Sync Monitor **Free** mode, the Offset command requests shall continue to be monitored and should the command request return to valid operation, the CU shall implement the pattern commanded.

The Sync Monitor **Free** mode may be replaced by a Time Base Control event. See the **On-Line** definition in the Time Base section.

3.4.2.6 Manual Control

The CU shall be capable of being set to manually operate in any pattern (Timing Plan plus Offset) and Signal Plan via program entry. A manual selection of pattern and signal plan shall override all other pattern interface commands.

3.4.2.7 Free Mode

The CU shall be capable of Free mode of operation. During this mode all pattern inputs (**Timing Plan** and **Offset**) shall be ignored and offset correction shall not occur.

The coordinator shall be capable of being set to the Free mode defined under Sync Monitor and via program entry.

The coordinator shall recognize input requests that conflict with coordinated operation and automatically revert to Free mode while the inputs are active. The inputs that conflict with internal coordination are:

1. Manual Control Enable
2. Stop Time
3. Automatic Flash

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4. Any Preemption

3.4.3 Initialization

Initialization shall occur under either of the following conditions:

1. Restoration of power after a defined power interruption.
2. Activation of **External Start** input.

A program entry for initialization shall be provided to cause the CU to start at the beginning of the defined signal plan interval.

As part of the initialization routine, calls shall be placed on all actuated movements and retained until serviced.

3.4.4 Actuated Movements

The CU shall provide actuated operation to the extent that the signal sequence may be dependent on vehicle and/or pedestrian detector actuations.

3.4.4.1 Provision for Storing a Demand

There shall be a provision for storing a call for vehicle service on four vehicle movements when the specific movement is not displaying a **Green** indication. The vehicle memory feature shall be capable of being disabled via program entry.

There shall be a provision for storing a call for pedestrian service on each of the four movements, when the movement is not displaying a **Walk** indication.

3.4.4.2 Placement of Vehicle Recall

Means shall be provided, via program entry, to place a recurring demand for vehicle service on the movement when that movement is not in its **Green** interval.

3.4.4.3 Placement of Pedestrian Recall

Means shall be provided, via program entry, to place a recurring demand for pedestrian service on the movement when that movement is not in its **Walk** interval.

3.4.5 External Interface

The CU shall operate with an external interface as follows:

3.4.5.1 Pin Connections

A Type P2 CU shall provide input-output connector pin terminations in accordance with the following:

	Connector "A" Pin/Function 55 Pin (Plug) Type # -22-55P	
Pin	**Function**	**I/O**
A	Fault Monitor	[O]
B	+24 VDC (External)	[O]
C	Voltage Monitor	[O]
D	Vehicle 1 Red	[O]
E	Pedestrian 1 Don't Walk	[O]
F	Vehicle 2 Red	[O]
G	Pedestrian 2 Don't Walk	[O]
H	Pedestrian 2 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
J	Pedestrian 2 Walk	[O]
K	Vehicle 2 Detector	[I]
L	Pedestrian 2 Detector	[I]
M	Mode* Input 2	[I]
N	Stop Time	[I]
P	Reserved	[I]
R	External Start	[I]
S	Interval Advance	[I]
T	Ind. Lamp Control	[I]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Connector "A" Pin/Function
55 Pin (Plug) Type # -22-55P

Pin	Function	I/O
U	AC Neutral	[I]
V	Earth Ground	[I]
W	Logic Ground	[O]
X	Flashing Logic	[O]
Y	Status Bit C	[O]
Z	Vehicle 1 Yellow	[O]
a	Pedestrian 1 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
b	Vehicle 2 Yellow	[O]
c	Vehicle 2 Green	[O]
d	Mode* Output 10	[O]
e	Mode* Output 2	[O]
f	Vehicle 1 Detector	[I]
g	Pedestrian 1 Detector	[I]
h	Mode* Input 1	[I]
i	Force Off	[I]
j	External Recall	[I]
k	Manual Control Enable	[I]
m	Reserved	[I]
n	Test A	[I]
p	AC Line	[I]
q	I/O Mode Bit A	[I]
r	Status Bit B	[O]
s	Vehicle 1 Green	[O]
t	Pedestrian 1 Walk	[O]
u	Mode* Output 9	[O]
v	Mode* Input 10	[I]
w	Reserved	[I]
x	Reserved	[I]
y	I/O Mode Bit B	[I]
z	Reserved	[I]
AA	Test B	[I]
BB	Reserved	[I]
CC	Status Bit A	[O]
DD	Mode* Output 1	[O]
EE	Mode* Input 9	[I]
FF	Reserved	[I]
GG	Reserved	[I]
HH	I/O Mode Bit C	[I]

Connector "B" Pin/Function
55 Pin (Socket) Type # -22-55S

Pin	Function	I/O
A	Mode* Output 5	[O]
B	Preempt 2 Detector	[I]
C	Mode* Output 6	[O]
D	Vehicle 3 Green	[O]
E	Vehicle 3 Yellow	[O]
F	Vehicle 3 Red	[O]
G	Vehicle 4 Red	[O]
H	Pedestrian 4 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
J	Pedestrian 4 Don't Walk	[O]
K	Mode* Output 12	[O]
L	Vehicle 4 Detector	[I]
M	Pedestrian 4 Detector	[I]
N	Vehicle 3 Detector	[I]
P	Pedestrian 3 Detector	[I]
R	Mode* Input 7	[I]
S	Mode* Input 6	[I]
T	Mode* Input 13	[I]
U	Mode* Input 5	[I]
V	Reserved	[I]
W	Preempt 4 Detector	[I]
X	Preempt 5 Detector	[I]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Connector "B" Pin/Function
55 Pin (Socket) Type # -22-55S

Pin	Function	I/O
Y	Pedestrian 3 Walk	[O]
Z	Pedestrian 3 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
a	Pedestrian 3 Don't Walk	[O]
b	Vehicle 4 Green	[O]
c	Vehicle 4 Yellow	[O]
d	Pedestrian 4 Walk	[O]
e	Mode* Output 4	[O]
f	Mode* Output 8	[O]
g	Mode* Input 8	[I]
h	Mode* Input 4	[I]
i	Mode* Input 3	[I]
j	Mode* Input 11	[I]
k	Mode* Input 14	[I]
m	Mode* Input 15	[I]
n	Mode* Input 16	[I]
p	Vehicle A Yellow	[O]
q	Vehicle A Red	[O]
r	Mode* Output 11	[O]
s	Mode* Output 3	[O]
t	Mode* Output 7	[O]
u	Vehicle D Red	[O]
v	Preempt 6 Detector	[I]
w	Vehicle D Green	[O]
x	Mode* Input 12	[I]
y	Free Mode	[I]
z	Reserved	[I]
AA	Vehicle A Green	[O]
BB	Vehicle B Yellow	[O]
CC	Vehicle B Red	[O]
DD	Vehicle C Red	[O]
EE	Vehicle D Yellow	[O]
FF	Vehicle C Green	[O]
GG	Vehicle B Green	[O]
HH	Vehicle C Yellow	[O]

* Input / Output Functions are dependent on the I/O Mode Bit inputs. See 3.4.5.2(17) for a definition of the function assigned to each mode.

3.4.5.2 Inputs

1. **AC Line**—Current protected side of 120 VAC 60 Hertz power source within the CU.

   The CU shall have a front panel mounted over-current protection device in the 120 VAC input to the unit.

2. **AC Neutral**—Unfused and unswitched side of 120 VAC 60 Hertz power source taken from neutral output of AC power source.

   This input must not be connected to **Logic Ground** or **Earth Ground** within the CU.

3. **Earth Ground**—Terminal for connection to the chassis of the CU. **Earth Ground** shall be electrically connected to the shell of the connector(s) where applicable. This input shall not be connected to **Logic Ground** or **AC Neutral** within the CU.

4. **External Start**—An input to cause the CU to revert to its programmed initialization interval upon application. Upon removal of this input the CU shall commence normal timing.

5. **Interval Advance**—A complete On-Off operation of this input shall cause immediate termination of the interval in process of timing. The CU shall select the next interval to service based on it's normal sequence control method.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Interval Advance shall be used in conjunction with **Manual Control Enable** to produce manual control of the programmable variable intervals with the remaining intervals self timing (see **Manual Control Enable**).

Interval Advance shall be used in conjunction with **Stop Time** to advance through all serviceable intervals. The termination of all signal plan intervals will be controlled by the **Interval Advance** input.

6. **Stop Timing**—An input which when activated causes cessation of CU interval timing for the duration of such activation. Upon removal of activation from this input, all portions which were timing will resume timing.

   During **Stop Timing**, the CU shall not terminate any signal plan, interval, or interval portion, except by activation of the **Interval Advance** input.

7. **Force Off**—An input when active causes the termination of the signal plan variable interval subject to the completion of any programmed signal plan **Minimum Interval** timing.

8. **Manual Control Enable**—An input to place calls on all actuated movements, stop CU timing in programmed variable intervals, and inhibit the operation of **Interval Advance** during all other intervals.

9. **External Recall**—Input to place a recurring demand for service on all actuated vehicle movements.

10. **Indicator Lamp Control**—Input to disable CU indicators.

    The CU might not employ this input. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

11. **Test Input** (Two per Unit)—Test Input, two per unit, for manufacturer's use only.

12. **Pattern Inputs**—The CU shall select the pattern to be used, according to the current status of the **Timing Plan** and **Offset** requests. In the applicable mode, seven inputs for a hardwire type interconnect interface shall be available.

    Pattern inputs shall be interpreted as command requests in accordance with Table 3-6 and Table 3-7.

Table 3-6
TIMING PLAN

Command Request	TP A Input	TP B Input	TP C Input	TP D Input	Reference
TP 00	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	Dial 1 Split 1
TP 01	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	Dial 1 Split 2
TP 02	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	Dial 1 Split 3
TP 03	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	Dial 1 Split 4
TP 04	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	Dial 2 Split 1
TP 05	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	Dial 2 Split 2
TP 06	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	Dial 2 Split 3
TP 07	ON	OFF	ON	ON	Dial 2 Split 4
TP 08	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	Dial 3 Split 1
TP 09	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	Dial 3 Split 2
TP 10	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	Dial 3 Split 3
TP 11	OFF	ON	ON	ON	Dial 3 Split 4
TP 12	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	Dial 4 Split 1
TP 13	ON	ON	ON	OFF	Dial 4 Split 2
TP 14	ON	ON	OFF	ON	Dial 4 Split 3
TP 15	ON	ON	ON	ON	Dial 4 Split 4

For the purpose of utilization in an existing traditional interconnect system, a Reference with Dial and Split numbers is provided.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 3-7
OFFSET

Command Request	Off 1 Input	Off 2 Input	Off 3 Input
Offset 1	ON	OFF	OFF
Offset 2	OFF	ON	OFF
Offset 3	OFF	OFF	ON
Sync	OFF	OFF	OFF
Voltage Levels: OFF = +24V; ON = 0V			

13. **Signal Plan** Inputs—The CU shall select the signal plan to be used, according to the current status of the **Signal Plan** requests. In the applicable mode, two inputs for a hardwire type interconnect interface shall be available.

    Signal Plan inputs shall be interpreted as command requests in accordance with Table 3-8.

Table 3-8
SIGNAL PLAN

Command Request	Sig Plan A Input	Sig Plan B Input
Signal Plan 1	OFF	OFF
Signal Plan 2	ON	OFF
Signal Plan 3	OFF	ON
Signal Plan 4	ON	ON
Voltage Levels: OFF = +24V; ON = 0V		

14. **Vehicle Detector**—Provision to enter a vehicle call into the CU.

    Vehicle Detector inputs shall be provided as follows:

    a. Type P1 CU—10

    b. Type P2 CU—4 (10 in the applicable mode)

    As a minimum, each **Vehicle Detector** input shall be enabled by assignment to any one movement, via program entry. Each shall be capable of Delay, and Extension as follows:

    a. **Delay**—The vehicle detector actuation (input recognition) shall be capable of being delayed, by an adjustable program entered time (0–255 seconds in increments of 1 second), when the movement is not green. Once the actuation has been present for the delay time it shall be continued for as long as it is present.

    b. **Extension**—The vehicle detector actuation (input duration) shall be capable of being extended from the point of termination by an adjustable program entered time (0–25.5 seconds in increments of 0.1 second), when the movement is green.

       The special vehicle detector functions shall be capable of being used in any combination.

       As a minimum, the following number of **Vehicle Detector** inputs shall be capable of assignment to a System Detector function, via program entry.

       1) Type P1 Unit—8

       2) Type P2 Unit—6 (in the applicable mode)

15. **Pedestrian Detector**—Provision to enter a pedestrian call into the CU.

    As a minimum, each **Pedestrian Detector** input shall be enabled by assignment to any one movement, via program entry.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

16. **System Address Bits**—Five System Address inputs shall be provided. The CU shall respond to the system address defined by the binary decoding of these five inputs.

17. **Input / Output Mode** (Three per Unit)—The CU shall select the Input / Output function of specific hardware I/O based on the current status of these three inputs.

Table 3-9
I/O MODE BITS (3 PER UNIT)

Mode #	Bit States A	B	C	State Names
0	OFF	OFF	OFF	Not Used
1	ON	OFF	OFF	Hardwire Interconnect
2	OFF	ON	OFF	System Interface
3	ON	ON	OFF	Hardwire Interconnect
4	OFF	OFF	ON	Reserved
5	ON	OFF	ON	Reserved
6	OFF	ON	ON	Manufacturer Specific
7	ON	ON	ON	Manufacturer Specific

Voltage Levels: OFF = +24V; ON = 0V

a. Mode 0 Input / Output Functions

Mode 0 is not used. The CU shall not recognize any mode dependent input as valid nor shall it provide a valid output on any mode dependent output when Input / Output Mode 0 is active.

b. Mode 1 Input / Output Functions

Inputs		Outputs	
Pin	**Function**	**Pin**	**Function**
A-h	Preempt 1 Detector	A-DD	Preempt 1 Status
A-M	Preempt 3 Detector	A-e	Preempt 3 Status
B-i	Signal Plan A	B-s	TBC Auxiliary 1
B-h	Signal Plan B	B-e	TBC Auxiliary 2
B-U	Reserved	B-A	Preempt 2 Status
B-S	Reserved	B-C	Preempt 4 Status
B-R	Timing Plan C	B-t	Preempt 5 Status
B-g	Timing Plan D	B-f	Preempt 6 Status
A-EE	Dimming Enable	A-u	Reserved
A-v	Automatic Flash	A-d	Automatic Flash Status
B-j	Timing Plan A	B-r	TBC Auxiliary 3
B-x	Timing Plan B	B-K	Reserved
B-T	Offset 1		
B-k	Offset 2		
B-m	Offset 3		
B-n	TBC On Line		

c. Mode 2 Input / Output Functions

Inputs		Outputs	
Pin	**Function**	**Pin**	**Function**
A-h	Preempt 1 Detector	A-DD	Preempt 1 Status
A-M	Preempt 3 Detector	A-e	Preempt 3 Status
B-I	Vehicle Detector 5	B-s	TBC Auxiliary 1
B-h	Vehicle Detector 6	B-e	TBC Auxiliary 2
B-U	Vehicle Detector 7	B-A	Preempt 2 Status
B-S	Vehicle Detector 8	B-C	Preempt 4 Status
B-R	Vehicle Detector 9	B-t	Preempt 5 Status
B-g	Vehicle Detector 10	B-f	Preempt 6 Status
A-EE	Dimming Enable	A-u	Reserved
A-v	Local Flash Status	A-d	Automatic Flash Status
B-j	Address Bit 0	B-r	TBC Auxiliary 3
B-x	Address Bit 1	B-K	Reserved
B-T	Address Bit 2		

© NEMA

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Inputs		Outputs	
Pin	**Function**	**Pin**	**Function**
B-k	Address Bit 3		
B-m	Address Bit 4		
B-n	MMU Flash Status		

d. Mode 3 Input / Output Functions

Inputs		Outputs	
Pin	**Function**	**Pin**	**Function**
A-h	Preempt 1 Detector	A-DD	Timing Plan A
A-M	Preempt 3 Detector	A-e	Timing Plan B
B-i	Signal Plan A	B-s	TBC Auxiliary 1
B-h	Signal Plan B	B-e	TBC Auxiliary 2
B-U	Reserved	B-A	Timing Plan C
B-S	Reserved	B-C	Timing Plan D
B-R	Timing Plan C	B-t	Offset 1
B-g	Timing Plan D	B-f	Offset 2
A-EE	Dimming Enable	A-u	Offset 3
A-v	Automatic Flash	A-d	Automatic Flash Status
B-j	Timing Plan A	B-r	Signal Plan A
B-x	Timing Plan B	B-K	Signal Plan B
B-T	Offset 1		
B-k	Offset 2		
B-m	Offset 3		
B-n	TBC On Line		

e. Mode 4 and 5 Input / Output Functions

Mode 4 and 5 are reserved for future definition and use by NEMA. The CU shall not recognize any mode dependent input as valid nor shall it provide a valid output on any mode dependent output when one of these Input / Output Modes is active.

f. Mode 6 and 7 Input / Output Functions

Mode 6 and 7 are for manufacturer specific applications.

A Terminal and Facilities wired to utilize Mode 6 or Mode 7 may not be compatible with other manufacturer's CUs. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

18**.** Free Mode—An input when activated causes the CU to operate in Free Mode (See 3.4.2.7).

3.4.5.3 Outputs

1. **Logic Ground**—Voltage reference point and current return for CU input and output logic circuits. This output must not be connected to **AC Neutral** or **Earth Ground** within the CU.

2. **Fault Monitor**—An open collector output which is maintained **True** (**Low** state) as long as the voltages within the CU do not drop below predetermined levels required to provide normal operation.

   The output will also be **False** (**High** state) during CU generated flash modes as defined elsewhere in this section.

3. **CU Voltage Monitor** (Type P2 Only)—An open collector output which is maintained **True** (**Low** state) as long as the voltages within the CU do not drop below predetermined levels required to provide normal operation.

   The output will also be **False** (**High** state) during CU generated flash modes as defined elsewhere in this section.

   This output operates concurrently with Fault Monitor output except during periods of No Fault Flash (i.e., Automatic Flash and Preempt Flash).

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4. **Regulated 24 Volts DC For External Use** (Type P2 Only)—Positive 24 ± 2 volts DC shall be regulated over an AC line voltage variation from 89 to 135 volts from no-load to full-load. Current capability shall be 500 milliamperes continuous with less than 0.5 volt peak-to-peak ripple.

5. **Flashing Logic Output** (Type P2 Only)—Alternating True/False logic output at 1 pulse per second repetition rate with 50 ± 2 percent duty cycle. In its **False** state, this output shall be capable of providing 50 milliamperes of current. In its **True** state, this output shall be capable of sinking 200 milliamperes. This output shall switch within 5 degrees of the zero crossover point of the AC line.

6. **Load Switch Drivers, Vehicle** (Three Per Group)—Provision for separate **Green**, **Yellow**, and **Red** outputs for each basic group. The three outputs shall energize the appropriate signal load switching circuit to result in a **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Red** indication for the duration of such required indication.

7. **Load Switch Drivers, Pedestrian** (Three Per Group)—Provision of separate **Walk**, **Pedestrian Clearance**, and **Don't Walk** outputs for each pedestrian movement. The three outputs shall energize the appropriate pedestrian signal load switching circuit to result in a **Walk**, **Pedestrian Clearance**, or **Don't Walk** indication. The **Don't Walk** output shall flash only during the **Pedestrian Clearance** interval as shown in Figure 3-12.

8. **Pattern Outputs**—In the applicable mode, seven outputs for master type interconnect interface drivers shall be available. The outputs shall echo the active pattern. All outputs shall be constantly **ON** when active except offset which is **OFF** for a minimum of 3 seconds or 3% of the cycle once each cycle beginning at the "0" point of the cycle.

   Pattern outputs shall be interpreted as command requests in accordance with Table 3-6 and Table 3-7.

9. **Signal Plan Outputs**—In the applicable mode, two outputs for master type interconnect interface drivers shall be available. The outputs shall echo the active signal plan.

   Signal plan outputs shall be interpreted as command requests in accordance with Table 3-8.

10. **Coded Status Bits**—Only one of the coded status codes shall be active when the following conditions are present in the CU:

Table 3-10
CODED STATUS BITS (3 PER UNIT)

Code #	Bit States A	B	C	State Names
0	OFF	OFF	OFF	Minimum
1	ON	OFF	OFF	Variable
2	OFF	ON	OFF	Not Used
3	ON	ON	OFF	Not Used
4	OFF	OFF	ON	Not Used
5	ON	OFF	ON	Not Used
6	OFF	ON	ON	Not Used
7	ON	ON	ON	Undefined

Voltage Levels: OFF = +24V; ON = 0V

Code 0: Minimum—When timing the Signal Plan Minimum portion of the Interval.

Code 1: Variable—That portion of the interval following the completion of the Signal Plan Minimum time.

Code 2: Not Used.

Code 3: Not Used.

Code 4: Not Used.

Code 5: Not Used.

© NEMA

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Code 6: Not Used.

Code 7: Undefined.

3.4.6 Priority Of Input Functions

The priority of input functions shall be in the following order:

1. Power-Up
2. External Start
3. Preemption
4. Interval Advance
5. Stop Time
6. Automatic Flash
7. Manual Control Enable
8. Force Off

Lower priority inputs shall condition those of higher priority as defined elsewhere in this standard.

Patterns and signal plans are capable of being selected based on program entry, Interconnect Inputs, Time Base Control events, and a System Interface. The pattern and signal plan select priority shall be as follows:

1. Program Entry
2. System Interface
3. Time Base Control Event
4. Interconnect Inputs

When the Time Base Control **On-line** input is active, the Time Base Control event priority will be lower than Interconnect Inputs. Should the Sync Monitor diagnostic determine the Interconnect Offset to be invalid, a Time Base Control event may control.

3.4.7 Indications

Indications shall be provided on the display and appropriately identified to facilitate the determination of the operation of the CU. These indications shall consist of the following as a minimum requirement:

The indications shall provide for the simultaneous (i.e., concurrent) presentation, where concurrent states exists, of the following states/functions:

Current Status

1. Running Pattern, Control Source
2. Running Pattern, Timing Plan plus Offset
3. Correction In Progress
4. System Zero
5. Cycle Counter
6. Interval In Service
7. Interval Counter
8. Presence of vehicle call
9. Presence of pedestrian call

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.5 ACTUATED CONTROL

The Standards in 3.5 respond to the need for the functional interchangeability of Solid State Traffic Signal CUs, actuated Type (2 through 8 phase). Interchangeability of equipment manufactured in conformance with these standards has been promoted by connector plug compatibility.

Interchangeability of equipment can be achieved only when units are configured to produce the same functional operation utilizing exactly the same inputs and outputs.

Configurations 'A1' and 'A2' CUs (see 3.2) shall provide functional capability to meet the actuated control requirements contained herein.

3.5.1 Definitions

These definitions define the nomenclature frequently used in this part of the Standard Publication.

3.5.1.1 Ring

A ring consists of two or more sequentially timed and individually selected conflicting phases so arranged as to occur in an established order.

3.5.1.2 Barrier (Compatibility Line)

A barrier (compatibility line) is a reference point in the preferred sequence of a multi-ring CU at which all rings are interlocked. Barriers assure there will be no concurrent selection and timing of conflicting phases for traffic movement in different rings. All rings cross the barrier simultaneously to select and time phases on the other side.

3.5.1.3 Multi-Ring Controller Unit

A multi-ring CU contains two or more interlocked rings which are arranged to time in a preferred sequence and to allow concurrent timing of all rings, subject to the restraint in 3.5.1.2. A dual-ring CU is illustrated in Figure 3-6.

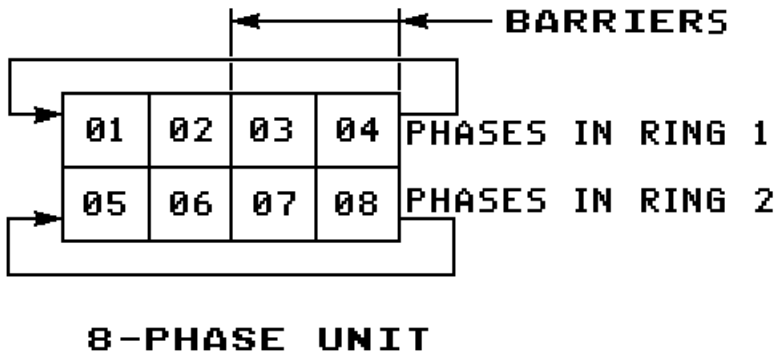


Figure 3-6
DUAL RING CONTROLLER UNIT

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.5.1.4 Single-Ring Controller Unit

A single-ring CU contains two or more sequentially timed and individually selected conflicting phases so arranged as to occur in an established order. Single-ring CUs are illustrated in Figure 3-7.

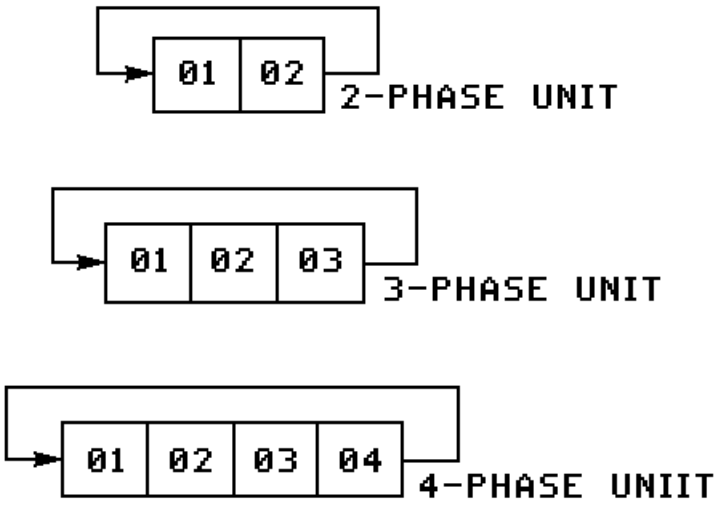


Figure 3-7
SINGLE RING CONTROLLER UNIT

3.5.1.5 Dual Entry

Dual entry is a mode of operation (in a multi-ring CU) in which one phase in each ring must be in service. If a call does not exist in a ring when it crosses the barrier, a phase is selected in that ring to be activated by the CU in a predetermined manner.

3.5.1.6 Single Entry

Single entry is a mode of operation (in a multi-ring CU) in which a phase in one ring can be selected and timed alone if there is no demand for service in a nonconflicting phase on the parallel ring(s).

3.5.1.7 Pedestrian Recycle

Pedestrian recycle is any start of pedestrian service after the start of the associated phase **Green**.

3.5.1.8 Preferred Sequence

Preferred sequence is the normal order of phase selection within a ring with calls on all phases.

3.5.2 General

Inputs, outputs, functions, and programming controls are separated into the following three categories:

1. Per phase (3.5.3)
2. Per ring (3.5.4)
3. Per unit (3.5.5)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.5.2.1 Pin Connections

A Type A2 CU shall provide Input / Output connector pin terminations shall be in accordance with the following:

Connector "A" Pin/Function
55 Pin (Plug) Type # -22-55P

Pin	Function	I/O
A	Fault Monitor	[O]
B	+24 VDC (External)	[O]
C	Voltage Monitor	[O]
D	Phase 1 Red	[O]
E	Phase 1 Don't Walk	[O]
F	Phase 2 Red	[O]
G	Phase 2 Don't Walk	[O]
H	Phase 2 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
J	Phase 2 Walk	[O]
K	Vehicle Detector 2	[I]
L	Pedestrian Detector 2	[I]
M	Mode* Input 2	[I]
N	Stop Time (1)	[I]
P	Inhibit Max Term (1)	[I]
R	External Start	[I]
S	Interval Advance	[I]
T	Indicator Lamp Control	[I]
U	AC Neutral	[I]
V	Earth Ground	[I]
W	Logic Ground	[O]
X	Flashing Logic Out	[O]
Y	Status Bit C (1)	[O]
Z	Phase 1 Yellow	[O]
a	Phase 1 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
b	Phase 2 Yellow	[O]
c	Phase 2 Green	[O]
d	Mode* Output 18	[O]
e	Mode* Output 2	[O]
f	Vehicle Detector 1	[I]
g	Pedestrian Detector 1	[I]
h	Mode* Input 1	[I]
i	Force Off (1)	[I]
j	External Min Recall	[I]
k	Manual Control Enable	[I]
m	Call To NA I	[I]
n	Test A	[I]
p	AC Line	[I]
q	I/O Mode Bit A	[I]
r	Status Bit B (1)	[O]
s	Phase 1 Green	[O]
t	Phase 1 Walk	[O]
u	Mode* Output 17	[O]
v	Mode* Input 18	[I]
w	Omit Red Clear (1)	[I]
x	Red Rest (1)	[I]
y	I/O Mode Bit B	[I]
z	Call To NA II	[I]
AA	Test B	[I]
BB	Walk Rest Modifier	[I]
CC	Status Bit A (1)	[O]
DD	Mode* Output 1	[O]
EE	Mode* Input 17	[I]
FF	Pedestrian Recycle (1)	[I]
GG	Max II Selection (1)	[I]
HH	I/O Mode Bit C	[I]

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
© NEMA
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Connector "B" Pin/Function
55 Pin (Socket) Type # -22-55S

Pin	Function	I/O
A	Mode* Output 9	[O]
B	Preempt 2 Detector	[I]
C	Mode* Output 10	[O]
D	Phase 3 Green	[O]
E	Phase 3 Yellow	[O]
F	Phase 3 Red	[O]
G	Phase 4 Red	[O]
H	Phase 4 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
J	Phase 4 Don't Walk	[O]
K	Mode* Output 20	[O]
L	Vehicle Detector 4	[I]
M	Pedestrian Detector 4	[I]
N	Vehicle Detector 3	[I]
P	Pedestrian Detector 3	[I]
R	Mode* Input 11	[I]
S	Mode* Input 10	[I]
T	Mode* Input 21	[I]
U	Mode* Input 9	[I]
V	Pedestrian Recycle (2)	[I]
W	Preempt 4 Detector	[I]
X	Preempt 5 Detector	[I]
Y	Phase 3 Walk	[O]
Z	Phase 3 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
a	Phase 3 Don't Walk	[O]
b	Phase 4 Green	[O]
c	Phase 4 Yellow	[O]
d	Phase 4 Walk	[O]
e	Mode* Output 4	[O]
f	Mode* Output 12	[O]
	Mode* Input 12	[I]
h	Mode* Input 4	[I]
i	Mode* Input 3	[I]
j	Mode* Input 19	[I]
k	Mode* Input 22	[I]
m	Mode* Input 23	[I]
n	Mode* Input 24	[I]
p	OL A Yellow	[O]
q	OL A Red	[O]
r	Mode* Output 19	[O]
s	Mode* Output 3	[O]
t	Mode* Output 11	[O]
u	OL D Red	[O]
v	Preempt 6 Detector	[I]
w	OL D Green	[O]
x	Mode* Input 20	[I]
y	Free (No Coordination)	[I]
z	Max II Selection (2)	[I]
AA	OL A Green	[O]
BB	OL B Yellow	[O]
CC	OL B Red	[O]
DD	OL C Red	[O]
EE	OL D Yellow	[O]
FF	OL C Green	[O]
GG	OL B Green	[O]
HH	OL C Yellow	[O]

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Connector "C" Pin/Function
61 Pin (Socket) Type # -24-61S

Pin	Function	I/O
A	Status Bit A (2)	[O]
B	Status Bit B (2)	[O]
C	Phase 8 Don't Walk	[O]
D	Phase 8 Red	[O]
E	Phase 7 Yellow	[O]
F	Phase 7 Red	[O]
G	Phase 6 Red	[O]
H	Phase 5 Red	[O]
J	Phase 5 Yellow	[O]
K	Phase 5 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
L	Phase 5 Don't Walk	[O]
M	Mode* Output 13	[O]
N	Mode* Output 5	[O]
P	Vehicle Detector 5	[I]
R	Pedestrian Detector 5	[I]
S	Vehicle Detector 6	[I]
T	Pedestrian Detector 6	[I]
U	Pedestrian Detector 7	[I]
V	Vehicle Detector 7	[I]
W	Pedestrian Detector 8	[I]
X	Mode* Input 8	[I]
Y	Force Off (2)	[I]
Z	Stop Time (2)	[I]
a	Inhibit Max Term (2)	[I]
b	Test C	[I]
c	Status Bit C (2)	[O]
d	Phase 8 Walk	[O]
e	Phase 8 Yellow	[O]
f	Phase 7 Green	[O]
g	Phase 6 Green	[O]
h	Phase 6 Yellow	[O]
i	Phase 5 Green	[O]
j	Phase 5 Walk	[O]
k	Mode* Output 21	[O]
m	Mode* Input 5	[I]
n	Mode* Input 13	[I]
p	Mode* Input 6	[I]
q	Mode* Input 14	[I]
r	Mode* Input 15	[I]
s	Mode* Input 16	[I]
t	Vehicle Detector 8	[I]
u	Red Rest Mode (2)	[I]
v	Omit Red Clear (2)	[I]
w	Phase 8 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
x	Phase 8 Green	[O]
y	Phase 7 Don't Walk	[O]
z	Phase 6 Don't Walk	[O]
AA	Phase 6 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
BB	Mode* Output 22	[O]
CC	Mode* Output 6	[O]
DD	Mode* Output 14	[O]
EE	Mode* Input 7	[I]
FF	Mode* Output 24	[O]
GG	Mode* Output 8	[O]
HH	Mode* Output 16	[O]
JJ	Phase 7 Walk	[O]
KK	Phase 7 Pedestrian Clear	[O]
LL	Phase 6 Walk	[O]
MM	Mode* Output 23	[O]
NN	Mode* Output 7	[O]
PP	Mode* Output 15	[O]

© NEMA

--`,,`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

* Input / Output Functions are dependent on the I/O Mode Bit inputs. See for a definition of the function assigned to each mode.

3.5.3 Per Phase

The following inputs, outputs, functions, and programming controls shall be provided on a per phase basis:

3.5.3.1 Time Settings

The following functions, with the associated minimum timing ranges and maximum increments, shall be provided as a minimum when required by the application. For timing accuracy See 2.2.1.

Function	Range, Seconds	Increments, Seconds
Min Green	1–255	1
Passage Time	0–25.5	0.1
Maximum 1	1–255	1
Maximum 2	1–255	1
Yellow Change	3–25.5	0.1
Red Clearance	0–25.5	0.1
Walk	0–255	1
Pedestrian Clearance	0–255	1
Added Initial	0–25.5	per Actuation
Time to Reduce	1–255	1
Time Before Reduction	1–255	1
Minimum Gap	0–25.5	0.1

Zero shall be satisfied by any time between zero and 100 milliseconds.

3.5.3.2 Phase Intervals

1. **Green Interval—Actuated Phase**

   a. **Without Volume Density**—The **Green** interval is a variable interval dependent upon vehicle actuations. The **Green** interval time shall be limited by the **Maximum Green** time function which shall commence timing upon registration of a serviceable conflicting call. The **Minimum Green** time shall not be preempted by a **Maximum Green** termination.

   Three time settings shall be provided for determination of **Green** timing on an actuated phase without volume density.

   1) **Minimum Green**—The first timed portion of the **Green** interval which may be set in consideration of the storage of vehicles between the zone of detection for the approach vehicle detector(s) and the stop line.

   2) **Passage Time** (Vehicle Interval, Preset Gap)—The extensible portion of the **Green** shall be a function of vehicle actuations that occur during the **Green** interval. The phase shall remain in the extensible portion of the **Green** interval as long as the passage timer is not timed out.

   The timing of this portion of the **Green** interval shall be reset with each subsequent vehicle actuation and shall not commence to time again until the vehicle actuation is removed from the CU. The duration of the **Green** interval shall be subject to the limit of the **Maximum Green**.

   3) **Maximum Green**—This time setting shall determine the maximum length of time this phase may be held **Green** in the presence of a serviceable conflicting call. In the absence of a serviceable conflicting call the **Maximum Green** timer shall be held reset.

   b. **With Volume Density**—In addition to **Minimum Green, Passage Time,** and **Maximum Green** timing functions, phases provided with **Volume Density** operation shall include **Variable Initial** timings and **Gap Reduction** timings. The effect on the **Initial** timing shall be to increase the timing in a manner dependent upon the number of vehicle actuations stored on this phase while

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
© NEMA
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

its signal is displaying **Yellow** or **Red**. The effect on the extensible portion shall be to reduce the allowable gap between successive vehicle actuations by decreasing the extension time in a manner dependent upon the time waiting of vehicles on a conflicting phase.

1. **Variable Initial** (see Figure 3-8)—The **Variable Initial** timing period shall be determined by an interrelationship of two time settings as described below:
   a. **Minimum Green** setting shall determine the minimum **Variable Initial** time period. **Seconds**/**Actuation** setting shall determine the time by which the **Variable Initial** time period will be increased from zero with each vehicle actuation received during the associated phase **Yellow** and **Red** intervals.
   b. The maximum of the **Variable Initial** timing period shall be settable (on a per-phase basis) in the range of 0–255 seconds with increments of 1 second. The maximum **Variable Initial** setting shall be subordinate to **Minimum Green** time setting.
   c. Initial timing shall equal (**Seconds/Actuation**) multiplied by (number of actuations) within the constraint of **Maximum Initial** and shall be not less than **Minimum Green**.
2. **Gap Reduction** (see Figure 3-9)—The **Gap Reduction** function shall be accomplished by means of the following functional settings:
   a. **Time Before Reduction**
   b. **Passage Time**
   c. **Minimum Gap**
   d. **Time To Reduce**

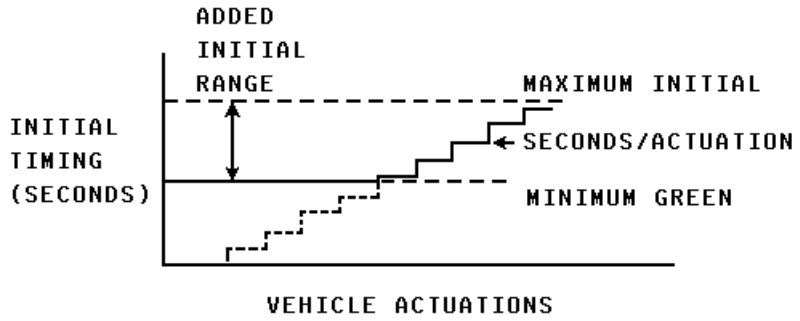


Figure 3-8
VARIABLE INITIAL TIMING

© NEMA
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

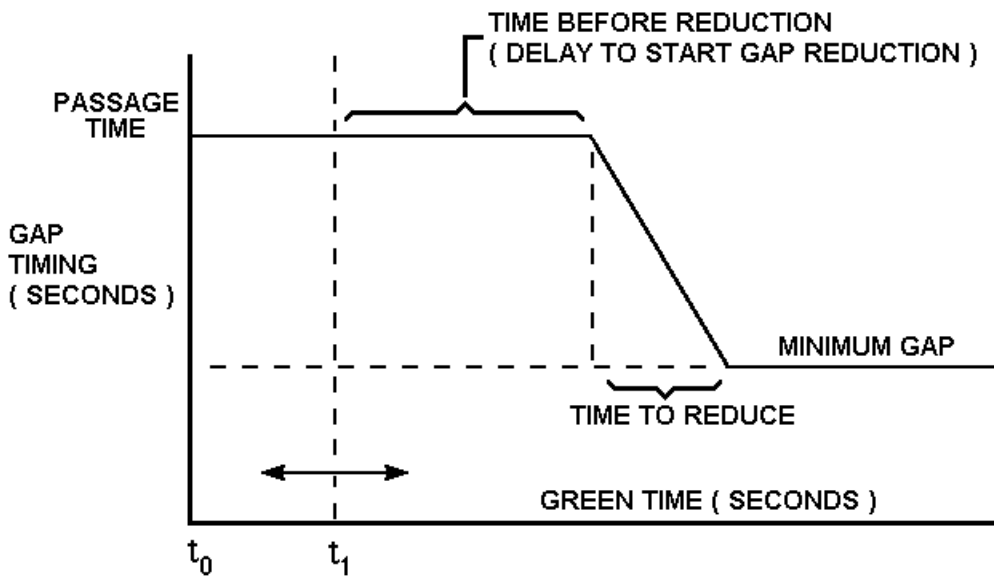


Figure 3-9
GAP REDUCTION

NOTES:
1. **to** = Start of phase Green.
2. **t1** = Registration of serviceable conflicting call.
3. **Time Before Reduction** shall not start timing before **t1**.
4. **Maximum** timer start shall be conditional upon being in the **Green** interval and registration of a serviceable conflicting call - vehicle or pedestrian.
5. **Passage Time** portion of **Green** interval must time concurrently with **Initial** subject to vehicle actuation.

The **Time Before Reduction** period shall begin when the phase is **Green** and there is a serviceable conflicting call. If the serviceable conflicting call is withdrawn while timing this period, the timer shall be reset and remain reset until the next serviceable conflicting call is received.

Upon completion of the **Time Before Reduction** period, the linear reduction of the allowable gap from the **Passage Time** level shall begin.

The rate of reduction shall be based on the setting of the **Passage Time**, **Minimum Gap**, and **Time To Reduce** controls. This method shall reduce the allowable gap at a rate equal to the difference between the **Passage Time** and **Minimum Gap** setting divided by the setting of the **Time To Reduce** control.

The reduction of the allowable gap shall continue until the gap reaches a value equal to or less than the **Minimum Gap** as set on the **Minimum Gap** control after which the allowable gap shall remain fixed at the values set on the **Minimum Gap** control. In the presence of a continuous vehicle actuation, the phase shall not gap out even if the gap is reduced to zero (i.e., **Minimum Gap** set at zero).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

If at any time the serviceable conflicting call is withdrawn, the gap shall revert to the **Passage Time** setting value, and the **Time Before Reduction** period timer shall be reset and remain reset until the next serviceable conflicting call is received.

2. **Pedestrian Timing, Concurrent**

Concurrent pedestrian timing shall be permitted in association with any mode of vehicle signal timing. Two time settings shall be required:

a. **Walk**—This shall control the amount of time the **Walk** indication shall be displayed.

b. **Pedestrian Clearance**—This shall control the duration of the **Pedestrian Clearance** output and the flashing period of the **Don't Walk** output.

When a pedestrian call is stored in pedestrian memory and pedestrian indications are concurrent with an associated vehicle phase, the pedestrian sequence shall commence service when entering the vehicle **Green** of that phase unless the **Pedestrian Omit** line is activated.

During the display of the **Walk** and **Pedestrian Clearance** indications, a concurrent **Green** vehicle indication shall be shown. It shall be possible to recycle the pedestrian indications in response to succeeding pedestrian calls for service subject to absence of serviceable conflicting calls (vehicle or pedestrian) and nonactivation of the **Pedestrian Omit** line.

3. **Actuated Phase Operating in the Nonactuated Mode**

The actuated phases that are converted to **Nonactuated** operation by activation of either the **Call To Nonactuated Mode** inputs shall have a permanent demand placed for vehicle and pedestrian service. Each such phase shall be equipped with pedestrian timing capability.

These phases shall be considered to have the four **Green** states indicated in Figure 3-10.

STATE A - CODE "0" WALK
STATE B - CODE "1" WALK HOLD
STATE C - CODE "2" PEDESTRIAN CLEARANCE
STATE D - CODE "3" GREEN REST

CODED STATUS BITS CODE

Figure 3-10
ACTIVATED PHASE OPERATING IN THE NONACTIVATED MODE

a. State A shall be the minimum timing state. The duration of State A shall be equal to the **Walk** time setting. Signal indications for State A shall be **Green** and **Walk**.

b. State B shall be a state immediately following the minimum timing state. The CU shall dwell in this state in the presence of a **Hold** signal or when the **Walk Rest Modifier** is active and no serviceable conflicting call exists. The signal indications shall remain in **Green** and **Walk**. The CU shall leave this state when the **Hold** input is not active; or when the **Hold** input is active, a serviceable conflicting call exists, and the **Force-Off** input is activated. If the phase **Hold** is active

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

and the **Force-Off** is activated when the phase is active and a serviceable conflicting call does not exist, the CU shall continue to dwell in State B of the phase.

c. State C shall be the **Pedestrian Clearance** state. During State C, the phase shall activate its **Pedestrian Clearance** output and flash its **Don't Walk** output. The duration of the state shall be equal to the **Pedestrian Clearance** setting. The phase shall time the clearance and, upon completion of the timing, advance to State D.

d. State D shall be a **Green Dwell/Select** state from which the CU may select the next phases(s) to be serviced. During State D signal indications shall be **Green** and steady **Don't Walk**. When a serviceable conflicting call does not exist and the **Pedestrian Recycle** input is active, or when a serviceable conflicting call does not exist and the **Walk Rest Modifier** is active, the phase shall return to State A and retime the **Walk** interval. If the **Pedestrian Recycle** input is not active and the **Walk Rest Modifier** is not active, the pedestrian movement shall not recycle.

In the presence of external signals which may be used for coordination, the sequence of these states shall be as follows.

The **Green** interval begins with the existence of State A. Upon the completion of this state the CU exits to State B. If the **Hold** input is active at this point, the CU shall remain in this state. If **Force-off** is applied and if a serviceable conflicting call exists, the CU shall advance to State C; otherwise State B exists as long as **Hold** remains active. If **Hold** is released while the CU is in State B, the CU shall advance to State C without regard to the presence of a serviceable conflicting call. If the CU advances to State C, it shall advance to State D even in the presence of **Hold**. When in State D, the CU shall terminate the phase if a serviceable conflicting call exists. If no serviceable conflicting call exists, the CU returns to State A of this interval if **Pedestrian Recycle** is active. If **Pedestrian Recycle** is not active and no serviceable conflicting call exists, the CU rests in State D. The **Hold** function has no effect on the duration of State D.

The duration of the **Green** interval shall not be less than the setting of the **Minimum Green** control. In those instances where the sum of the **Walk** setting, the **Hold** state duration, and the **Pedestrian Clearance** setting is less than the setting on the **Minimum Green** control, the CU shall remain in State C until the phase has displayed a **Green** indication for a time equal to the **Minimum Green** time setting, and shall display a steady **Don't Walk**. Refer to Figure 3-11.

4. **Termination of Green Timing**—**Green** timing termination shall occur in response to one of the following conditions:

   a. **Interval Advance** when timing the last portion of the **Green** interval, as described in 3.5.5.5.6.

   b. **Interval Advance** with **Manual Control Enable** activated as described in 3.5.5.5.7.

   c. Initial including variable portion completed, the pedestrian service completed, a serviceable conflicting call, and one of the following:

      1) **Passage Time** timed out without **Hold** applied.

      2) Reduced gap timed out without **Hold** applied.

      3) **Maximum Green** termination without **Hold** applied.

      4) **Force-Off** applied.

   d. Initial including the variable portion completed, the pedestrian service completed, **Red Rest** activated and **Passage Time** timeout without **Hold** applied.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

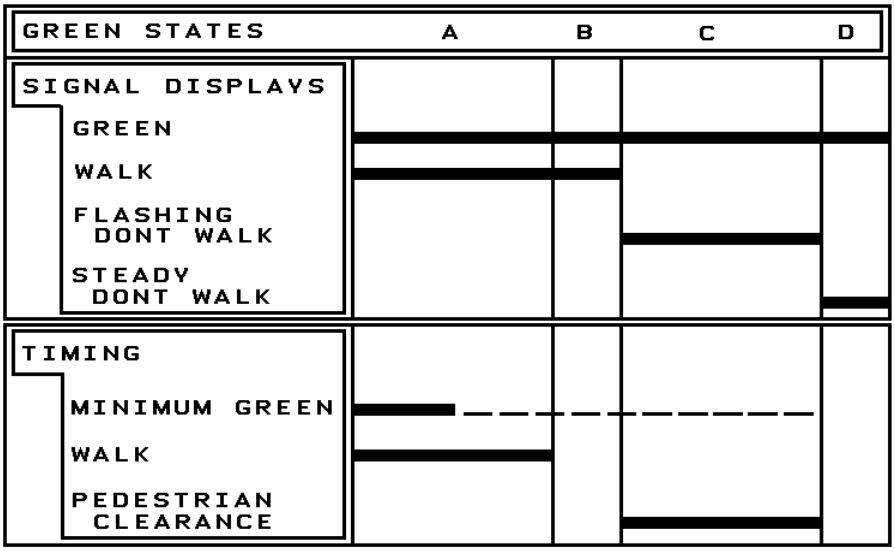


Figure 3-11
ACTIVATED PHASE OPERATING IN THE NONACTIVATED MODE

NOTE—**MINIMUM GREEN** time out during state A, B, or C. State D shall not be entered until **MINIMUM GREEN** is timed out.

5. **Vehicle Change and Clearance Intervals**

   a. Following the **Green** interval of each phase the CU shall provide a **Yellow Change** interval which is timed according to the **Yellow Change** timing control for that phase.

   b. Following the **Yellow Change** interval for each phase, the CU shall provide a **Red Clearance** interval which is timed according to the **Red Clearance** timing control for that phase. During this **Red Clearance** interval, no Green indication shall be shown to any conflicting phase. This **Red Clearance** interval is subject to omission in response to operation of the per ring **Omit Red Clearance** input.

6. **Pedestrian Timing, Exclusive**—Exclusive pedestrian service shall be permitted. When servicing a pedestrian movement exclusively, no other phase shall be active. It shall not be required in a dual ring CU to provide more than two phases in the second timing ring when Exclusive Pedestrian timing is employed in the other timing ring, neither of which can be employed on the same side of the barrier with the Exclusive Pedestrian phase.

   It shall not be required in a four-phase sequential CU to provide more than three phases in addition to an Exclusive Pedestrian phase.

   Two time settings shall be required on the phase, **Walk** and **Pedestrian Clearance**, as described in 3.5.3.2.3.

   When a pedestrian call is stored in pedestrian memory, the Exclusive Pedestrian phase shall be serviced with appropriate consideration of its order in the priority of phase sequencing.

   The Exclusive Pedestrian phase shall rest with a steady **Don't Walk** indication displayed. It shall be possible to recycle the pedestrian indication in response to succeeding pedestrian calls for service, subject to absence of serviceable conflicting calls (vehicle or pedestrian) and nonactivation of the **Pedestrian Omit line**.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.5.3.3 Phase Selection Points

The phase next to be serviced shall be determined at the end of the **Green** interval of the terminating phase; except that if the decision cannot be made at the end of the **Green** interval, it shall not be made until after the end of all vehicle change and clearance intervals.

3.5.3.4 Provision for Storing a Demand

There shall be a provision for storing a call for vehicle service on each vehicle phase when that phase is not displaying a **Green** indication. The vehicle memory feature shall be capable of being disabled via program entry. There shall be a provision for storing a call for pedestrian service on phases equipped with pedestrian time setting, when that phase is not displaying a **Walk** indication.

3.5.3.5 Placement of Maximum Recall

Means shall be provided to place a call on a phase, via program entry, such that the timing of the **Green** interval for that phase shall be extended to **Maximum Green** time.

When such a call is placed, the maximum timing shall commence to time as if there were always a serviceable conflicting call, but the phase shall not terminate unless there is an actual serviceable conflicting call.

3.5.3.6 Placement of Minimum Recall

Means shall be provided, via program entry, to place a recurring demand for vehicle service on the phase when that phase is not in its **Green** interval.

3.5.3.7 Placement of Pedestrian Recall

Means shall be provided to place a recurring pedestrian demand, via program entry, which shall function in the same manner as an external pedestrian call except that it shall not recycle the pedestrian service until a conflicting phase is serviced.

3.5.3.8 Placement of Call at Phase Termination

When a phase is terminated with time remaining in the **Passage Time**, a call shall be left on that phase. Disabling the vehicle call memory shall defeat this feature. If a phase is terminated with no passage time remaining, no call shall be left on the phase.

3.5.3.9 Conditional Service

Conditional service shall provide an optional method for phase selection. When timing phases concurrently with the next serviceable call on a phase that conflicts with more than one of the phases timing (about to cross a barrier), if one of the phases is prepared to terminate due to gap out or max time out, the ring containing the timed out phase shall revert to a preceding vehicle phase if all of the following conditions apply:

1. A call exists on a preceding actuated vehicle phase. (Non-Actuated Phases shall not be conditionally reserviced.)
2. The gapped/maxed phase is enabled for conditional service via program entry.
3. There is sufficient time remaining before max time out of the phase(s) not prepared to terminate.
4. The CU is not in coordinated mode.

3.5.3.10 Automatic Pedestrian Clearance

The CU design shall provide an alternate mode of operation to enable the CU timing of the Pedestrian Clearance interval when **Manual Control Enable** is active.

When enabled, via program entry, this feature shall prevent the Pedestrian Clearance interval from being terminated by the Interval Advance input.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.5.3.11 Inputs

1. **Hold** (In the applicable mode)—Command that retains the existing **Green** indications and has different CU responses depending upon operation in the vehicle-actuated or nonactuated mode. The operation is as follows:

   a. For a nonactuated phase, energization of the **Hold** input shall maintain the CU in the timed-out **Walk** period with a **Green** and **Walk** indication displayed. Energization of the **Hold** input while timing the **Walk** portion shall not inhibit the timing of this period. De-energization of the **Hold** input and with the **Walk** interval timed out shall cause the CU to advance into the **Pedestrian Clearance** interval. (See 3.5.3.2.3.) Re-application of the **Hold** input while timing the **Pedestrian Clearance** portion shall neither inhibit the timing of this period nor termination of the phase.

   b. For an actuated phase, energization, and de-energization of the **Hold** input shall be as follows:

      Energization of the **Hold** input shall allow the CU to time normally but shall inhibit its advance into the vehicle change interval. Energization of the **Hold** input shall inhibit the recycle of the pedestrian service unless the **Pedestrian Recycle** input is active and a serviceable pedestrian call exists on the phase. The rest state indications for that phase shall be **Green** for traffic and **Don't Walk** for pedestrians.

      De-energization of **Hold** input shall allow the CU to advance into the **Green Dwell/Select** state when all **Green** periods are timed out.

      De-energization of **Hold** input with all intervals timed out, shall allow the CU to recycle the **Walk** interval if there is no conflicting demand for service and a pedestrian call exists for that phase. However, if there is any serviceable demand on a conflicting phase with the **Hold** de-energized and with all intervals timed-out, the CU shall advance into the **Yellow Change** interval and not recycle the **Walk** on that phase until those demands have been served.

2. **Phase Omit** (In the applicable mode)—Input to cause omission of a phase, even in presence of demand, by application of an external signal. It shall affect phase selection. The omission shall continue in effect until the signal is removed. The phase to be omitted shall not present a conflicting call to any other phase, but shall accept and store calls. Activation of this input shall not affect a phase in the process of timing.
3. **Pedestrian Omit** (In the applicable mode)—Input to inhibit the selection of a phase due to a pedestrian call on that phase and to prohibit the servicing of a pedestrian call on the phase. This input when active shall prevent the starting of the pedestrian movement of that phase. After the beginning of the phase **Green**, a pedestrian call shall be serviced or recycled only in the absence of a serviceable conflicting call and with **Pedestrian Omit** on the phase nonactive. Activation of this input shall not affect a pedestrian movement in the process of timing.

3.5.3.12 Outputs

1. **Load Switch Drivers, Basic Vehicle** (Three Per Phase)—Provision for separate **Green, Yellow**, and **Red** outputs for each basic vehicle phase. A circuit closure to **Logic Ground** shall be maintained at one of these three outputs at all times. The three outputs shall energize the appropriate vehicle signal load switching circuit to result in a **Green, Yellow,** or **Red** indication for the required duration of such indication.
2. **Load Switch Drivers, Pedestrian** (Three Per Phase)—Provision of separate **Walk, Pedestrian Clearance**, and **Don't Walk** outputs for each pedestrian movement. A circuit closure to **Logic Ground** shall be maintained on at least one of these three outputs at all times. The three outputs shall energize the appropriate pedestrian signal load switching circuit to result in a **Walk, Pedestrian Clearance**, or **Don't Walk** indication. The **Don't Walk** output shall flash only during the **Pedestrian Clearance** interval as shown in Figure 3-12.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

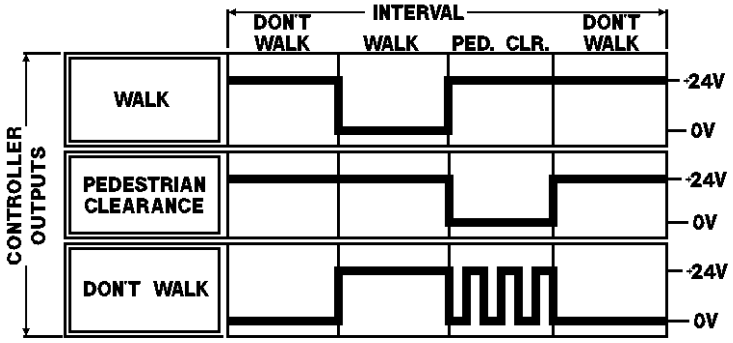


Figure 3-12
LOAD SWITCH DRIVERS, PEDESTRIAN

The **Don't Walk** flashing shall provide an alternating **True/False** output at 1 pulse per second repetition rate with 50 ± 2 percent duty cycle.

3. **Check** (In the applicable mode)—An output to indicate call status (vehicle or pedestrian, or both) of the phase, activated when the CU is not in the **Green** interval of that phase, which has a demand in that phase. Neither the **Phase Omit** nor **Pedestrian Omit** inputs shall affect the **Check** output.
4. **Phase On** (In the applicable mode)—An output to indicate phase status. The **Phase On** output of a particular phase is activated during the **Green, Yellow**, and **Red Clearance** intervals of that phase. It shall be permissible for this output to be active during the **Red Dwell** state.
5. **Phase Next** (In the applicable mode)—An output of a particular phase activated when the phase is committed to be next in sequence and remains present until the phase becomes active. The phase next to be serviced shall be determined at the end of the **Green** interval of the terminating phase; except that if the decision cannot be made at the end of the **Green** interval, it shall not be made until after the end of all **Vehicle Change** and **Clearance** intervals.

3.5.4 Per Ring

The following inputs, outputs, functions, and programming controls shall be provided on a ring basis:

3.5.4.1 Inputs

1. **Force Off**—Provision for termination of the **Green** timing in the actuated mode or **Walk Hold** in the nonactuated mode of the active phase in the timing ring by application of this signal, such terminating subject to presence of a serviceable conflicting call. The **Force Off** function shall not be effective during the timing of the **Initial, Walk**, or **Pedestrian Clearance**. The **Force Off** input shall be effective only as long as the input is sustained. (See 3.5.3.8.)
2. **Red Rest**—Input to require rest in **Red** of all phases in the timing ring by continuous application of an external signal. Registration of a serviceable conflicting call shall result in immediate advance from **Red Rest** to **Green** of the demanding phase. Registration of a serviceable conflicting call before entry into the **Red Rest** state, even with this signal applied, shall result in termination of the active phase and selection of the next phase in the normal manner and with appropriate change and clearance intervals. (See 3.5.5.7.)
3. **Inhibit Maximum Termination**—An input to disable the maximum termination functions of all phases in the selected timing ring. The input shall not inhibit the timing of **Maximum Green**.
4. **Omit Red Clearance**—An input to cause omission of **Red Clearance** interval timing(s).
5. **Pedestrian Recycle**—An input to control the recycling of the pedestrian movement. The recycling operation is dependent upon whether the phase is operating in the actuated or nonactuated mode:

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

a. When the phase is operating in the actuated mode, if a serviceable pedestrian call exists on the phase and the **Hold** input is active, the pedestrian movement shall be recycled when the **Pedestrian Recycle** input is active, regardless of whether a serviceable conflicting call exists.

b. When the phase is operating in the nonactuated mode, if the phase has reached State D (see 3.5.3.2.3), the **Pedestrian Omit** is not active on the phase and a serviceable conflicting call does not exist, the pedestrian movement shall be recycled when the **Pedestrian Recycle** input is active.

6. **Stop Timing**—An input which when activated causes cessation of CU ring timing for the duration of such activation. Upon removal of activation from this input, all portions which were timing will resume timing. During stop timing, vehicle actuations on non-**Green** phases shall be recognized; vehicle actuations on **Green** phase(s) shall reset the **Passage Time** timer in the normal manner; and the CU shall not terminate any interval or interval portion or select another phase, except by activation of the **Interval Advance** input. Operation of the **Interval Advance** with **Stop Time** activated shall clear any stored calls on a phase when the CU is advanced through the **Green** interval of that phase.

7. **Maximum II Selection**—Input to allow the selection of a second maximum time setting on all phases of the timing ring.

3.5.4.2 Outputs

One or more of the coded status bit states shown in Table 3-11 might be omitted from a normal cycle of operation. (Authorized Engineering Information.) Only one of the coded status codes shall be active when the following conditions are present in the CU:

Table 3-11
CODED STATUS BITS (3 PER RING)

Code #	Bit States A	B	C	State Names
0	OFF	OFF	OFF	Min Green
1	ON	OFF	OFF	Extension
2	OFF	ON	OFF	Maximum
3	ON	ON	OFF	Green Rest
4	OFF	OFF	ON	Yellow Change
5	ON	OFF	ON	Red Clearance
6	OFF	ON	ON	Red Rest
7	ON	ON	ON	Undefined

Voltage Levels: OFF = +24V; ON = 0V

1. The active phase is in its **Green** interval and operating in the actuated mode.

   Code 0 **Minimum Timing**—When timing in **Initial, Walk**, or **Pedestrian Clearance** portions of the **Green** interval.

   Code 1 **Extension Timing**—That portion of the **Green** interval following the completion of the minimum timings (**Initial, Walk**, and **Pedestrian Clearance**) when timing an extension(s).

   Code 2 **Maximum Timing**—That portion of the Green interval following the completion of the minimum timings, (Initial, Walk, and Pedestrian Clearance) when not timing an extension and the Maximum Green is timing (e.g., when the Hold input is active).

   Code 3 **Green Rest**—That portion of the **Green** interval when the minimum timings (**Initial, Walk**, and **Pedestrian Clearance**) are complete, **Passage Timer** is timed out and the **Maximum Green** timer is either timed out or has not started.

2. The active phase is in its **Green** interval and operating in the nonactuated mode.

   Code 0 **Walk Timing**—When timing the **Walk** portion of the **Green** interval (nonactuated State A).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Code 1 **Walk Hold**—When the **Walk** output is active, **Walk** timing is complete and the **Hold** input is active (nonactuated State B).

Code 2 **Pedestrian Clearance Timing**—When timing the **Pedestrian Clearance** interval or the remaining portion of **Minimum Green** (nonactuated State C).

Code 3 **Green Rest**—When the timing of **Pedestrian** and **Minimum Green** intervals are complete (nonactuated State D).

3. The active phase is not in its **Green** interval.

   Code 4 **Yellow Change**—When timing Yellow Change.

   Code 5 **Red Clearance**—When timing Red Clearance.

   Code 6 **Red Rest**—When timing is complete and a Red indication is displayed.

   Code 7 **Undefined**

3.5.5 Per Unit

The following inputs, outputs, functions, and programming controls shall be provided on a per unit basis:

3.5.5.1 Initialization

Initialization shall occur under either of the following conditions:

1. Restoration of power after a defined power interruption.
2. Activation of **External Start** input.

A program entry for initialization shall be provided to cause the CU to start at the beginning of the **Green, Yellow**, or **Red** interval of any phase or nonconflicting phase pair.

As part of the initialization routine, vehicle and pedestrian calls shall be placed on all phases and retained until serviced.

3.5.5.2 Simultaneous Gap Out

Multi-Ring CU configurations shall provide the capability of Simultaneous Gap Out when servicing cross barrier calls.

When timing phases concurrently with the next serviceable call on a phase that conflicts with more than one of the phases timing (about to cross a barrier), Simultaneous Gap Out, if enabled via program entry, shall insure that all phases which will terminate, must simultaneously reach a point of being committed to terminate before **Green** timing termination shall begin (i.e., Gap-Out, Max-Out, or Force-Off). When all phases have not yet reached such a point, any gapped out phase shall revert to the extensible portion and time passage intervals based on vehicle calls.

Under the conditions as defined above, Simultaneous Gap Out, if disabled, shall allow a phase to reach a point of being committed to terminate independently of any other phase and shall not revert to the extensible portion from a gapped out condition.

3.5.5.3 Dual Entry

Dual Entry is a mode of operation (in multi-ring CUs) in which one phase in each ring must be in service, where possible subject to compatibility, at all times.

If a call does not exist in a ring when the CU is committed to cross a barrier, a phase may be selected, via program entry, in that ring to be active.

3.5.5.4 Alternate Sequences

The CU shall provide the capability of fifteen alternates to the standard sequence. The alternates shall be variations to the sequence based on four groups of two phases (Phase Pair) being serviced in reverse order.

© NEMA

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

As a minimum, the sixteen sequences shall provide every combination of lead-lag (phase pair reversal) for an eight phase dual ring CU configuration. For the purpose of this minimum requirement, the Alternate Sequences (AS) shall be capable of:

1. AS A—Phase 1 and Phase 2 Reversed
2. AS B—Phase 3 and Phase 4 Reversed
3. AS C—Phase 5 and Phase 6 Reversed
4. AS D—Phase 7 and Phase 8 Reversed

The alternate sequences may be selected by the Alternate Sequence external interface inputs (in the applicable mode) or the coordinator as a function of the pattern (Timing Plan/Offset) in effect. When the internal coordinator is running, the external interface inputs for alternate sequences shall be ignored.

Alternate Sequence inputs shall be interpreted as command requests in accordance with Table 3-12.

Table 3-12
ALTERNATE SEQUENCE

Command Request	AS A Input	AS B Input	AS C Input	AS D Input
Sequence 00	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Sequence 01	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Sequence 02	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF
Sequence 03	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
Sequence 04	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
Sequence 05	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
Sequence 06	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Sequence 07	ON	ON	ON	OFF
Sequence 08	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON
Sequence 09	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
Sequence 10	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
Sequence 11	ON	ON	OFF	ON
Sequence 12	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
Sequence 13	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Sequence 14	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Sequence 15	ON	ON	ON	ON
Voltage Levels: OFF = +24V; ON = 0V				

Connector Pins—In the applicable mode, input pin terminations shall be provided in accordance with the following:

1. Alternate Sequence A
2. Alternate Sequence B
3. Alternate Sequence C
4. Alternate Sequence D

3.5.5.5 Inputs

1. **AC Line**—Current protected side of 120 VAC 60 Hertz power source within the CU.

   The CU shall have a front panel mounted over-current protection device in the 120 VAC input to the unit.

2. **AC Neutral**—Unfused and unswitched side of 120 VAC 60 Hertz power source taken from neutral output of ac power source.

   This input must not be connected to **Logic Ground** or **Earth Ground** within the CU.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3. **Earth Ground**—Terminal for connection to the chassis of the unit. **Earth Ground** shall be electrically connected to the shell of the connector(s) where applicable. This input shall not be connected to **Logic Ground** or **AC Neutral** within the CU.

4. **Vehicle Detector**—Provision to enter a vehicle call into the CU.

   Vehicle Detector inputs shall be provided as follows:

   a. Type A1 CU—32

   b. Type A2 CU—8 (20 in the applicable mode—see 3.5.5.5.15)

      As a minimum, each Vehicle Detector input shall be enabled by assignment to any one phase, via program entry. Each shall be capable of Delay, Extension, and Switching as follows:

   c. **Delay**—The vehicle detector actuation (input recognition) shall be capable of being delayed, by an adjustable program entered time (0–255 seconds in increments of 1 second), when the phase is not **Green**. Once the actuation has been present for the delay time it shall be continued for as long as it is present. If an actuation is removed prior to delay timing out, no call is placed.

   d. **Extension**—The vehicle detector actuation (input duration) shall be capable of being extended from the point of termination by an adjustable program entered time (0–25.5 seconds in increments of 0.1 second), when the phase is Green.

   e. **Switch**—The vehicle detector actuation shall be capable of being switched to another phase when the assigned phase is **Yellow** or **Red** and the program entered phase is **Green**. Detector Switching provides a per detector entry identifying the program entered phase that will receive the switched actuations.

   The special vehicle detector functions shall be capable of being used in any combination.

   As a minimum, eight Vehicle Detector inputs shall be capable of assignment to a System Detector function, via program entry.

5. **Pedestrian Detector Call** (8 per unit)—Provision to enter a pedestrian demand for service into the appropriate phase of the CU.

   As a minimum, each Pedestrian Detector Call input shall be enabled by assignment to any one phase, via program entry.

6. **Interval Advance**—A complete **On-Off** operation of this input shall cause immediate termination of the interval in process of timing. Where concurrent interval timing exists, use of this input shall cause immediate termination of the interval which would terminate next without such actuation.

   Phases without stored vehicle or pedestrian calls shall be omitted from the resultant phase sequencing of the CU unless **External Min. Recall To All Vehicle Phases** or **Manual Control Enable** inputs are activated.

   The CU shall select the next phase to service based on its normal sequence control method. If **Interval Advance** is activated during the **Green** interval and no serviceable call exists, the CU shall not advance beyond the **Green Dwell/Select** state, except when **Red Rest** is active.

   If **Interval Advance** is applied when the CU is displaying **Green** and **Walk** indications, the unit shall advance to the state of displaying **Green** and **Pedestrian Clearance**. If **Interval Advance** is applied when the unit is displaying **Green** and **Pedestrian Clearance**, the unit shall display a steady **Don't Walk** indication and advance to the **Green Dwell/Select** state, from which it shall immediately select a phase next and advance to the **Yellow** subject to the presence of a serviceable conflicting call and the constraints of concurrent timing.

   If no pedestrian provisions exist, application of the **Interval Advance** signal at any point in the **Green** interval shall cause the unit to advance to the **Green Dwell/Select** state from which it shall

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

immediately select a phase next and advance to the **Yellow** subject to the presence of a serviceable conflicting call and the constraints of concurrent timing.

Interval Advance may be used in conjunction with **Manual Control Enable** to produce manual control of the CU with timed vehicle change and clearance intervals.

Interval Advance shall be used in conjunction with **Stop Time** to advance through all serviceable intervals except that the CU shall not advance beyond the **Green Dwell/Select** state without a serviceable conflicting call, except when **Red Rest** is active.

7. **Manual Control Enable**—An input to place vehicle and pedestrian calls on all phases, stop CU timing in all intervals except vehicle change and clearance intervals, and inhibit the operation of **Interval Advance** during vehicle change and clearance intervals. When this function is used in conjunction with **Interval Advance**, the operation of the CU shall be as follows:

   a. When concurrent pedestrian service is not provided, an activation of the **Interval Advance** shall advance the CU to **Green Dwell/Select**, from which it shall immediately select a phase next and advance to the **Yellow**, subject to the constraints of concurrent timing.

   b. When concurrent pedestrian service is provided, an activation of the **Interval Advance** input shall terminate the **Walk** interval. When **Automatic Pedestrian Clearance** is enabled, the **Pedestrian Clearance** interval is timed internally by the CU (see 3.5.3.10). When **Automatic Pedestrian Clearance** is not enabled, a second activation of the **Interval Advance** input is required to terminate the **Green** interval, including the **Pedestrian Clearance** interval.

   c. All vehicle change and clearance intervals are timed internally by the CU. Actuations of the **Interval Advance** input during vehicle change and clearance intervals shall have no effect on the CU.

8. **Call To Nonactuated Mode** (Two per Unit)—Two inputs shall be provided which when activated shall cause any phases(s) appropriately programmed to operate in the **Nonactuated Mode**.

   The two inputs shall be designated **Call To Nonactuated Mode I** and **Call To Nonactuated Mode II**. When both inputs are active, all phases programmed for **Nonactuated Mode** shall operate in the **Nonactuated Mode** as described in 3.5.3.2.3.

   Only phases equipped for pedestrian service shall be used for **Nonactuated Mode** operation.

9. **External Minimum Recall To All Vehicle Phases**—Input to place a recurring demand on all vehicle phases for a minimum vehicle service.

10. **Indicator Lamp Control**—Input to disable CU indicators.

    The CU might not employ this input. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

11. **Test Input** (Two or three per Unit)—Test input, two or three per CU, for manufacturer's use only.

12. **External Start**—An input to cause the CU to revert to its programmed initialization phase(s) and interval(s) upon application. Upon removal of this input the CU shall commence normal timing.

13. **Walk Rest Modifier**—This input when true shall modify nonactuated operation only. With this input active, nonactuated phase(s) shall remain in the timed-out **Walk** state (rest in **Walk**) in the absence of a serviceable conflicting call without regard to the **Hold** input status. With this input nonactive, nonactuated phase(s) shall not remain in the timed-out **Walk** state unless the **Hold** input is active.

    The CU shall recycle the pedestrian movement when reaching State D in the absence of a serviceable conflicting call. See 3.5.3.2.3.d.

14. **System Address Bits**—Five System Address inputs shall be provided. The CU shall respond to the system address defined by the binary decoding of these five inputs.

15. **Input / Output Mode** (Three per Unit)—The Type A2 CU shall select the Input / Output function of specific hardware I/O based on the current status of these three inputs.

© NEMA

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 3-13
I/O MODE BITS (3 PER UNIT)

Mode #	Bit States A	B	C	State Names
0	OFF	OFF	OFF	TS 1 Compatible
1	ON	OFF	OFF	Hardwire Interconnect
2	OFF	ON	OFF	System Interface
3	ON	ON	OFF	Reserved
4	OFF	OFF	ON	Reserved
5	ON	OFF	ON	Reserved
6	OFF	ON	ON	Manufacturer Specific
7	ON	ON	ON	Manufactured Specific
Voltage Levels: OFF = +24V; ON = 0V				

a. Mode 0 Input / Output Functions

Inputs		Outputs	
Pin	**Function**	**Pin**	**Function**
A-h	Phase 1 Hold	A-DD	Phase 1 Phase On
A-M	Phase 2 Hold	A-e	Phase 2 Phase On
B-i	Phase 3 Hold	B-s	Phase 3 Phase On
B-h	Phase 4 Hold	B-e	Phase 4 Phase On
C-m	Phase 5 Hold	C-N	Phase 5 Phase On
C-p	Phase 6 Hold	C-CC	Phase 6 Phase On
C-EE	Phase 7 Hold	C-NN	Phase 7 Phase On
C-X	Phase 8 Hold	C-GG	Phase 8 Phase On
B-U	Phase 1 Phase Omit	B-A	Phase 1 Phase Next
B-S	Phase 2 Phase Omit	B-C	Phase 2 Phase Next
B-R	Phase 3 Phase Omit	B-t	Phase 3 Phase Next
B-g	Phase 4 Phase Omit	B-f	Phase 4 Phase Next
C-n	Phase 5 Phase Omit	C-M	Phase 5 Phase Next
C-q	Phase 6 Phase Omit	C-DD	Phase 6 Phase Next
C-r	Phase 7 Phase Omit	C-PP	Phase 7 Phase Next
C-s	Phase 8 Phase Omit	C-HH	Phase 8 Phase Next
A-EE	Phase 1 Pedestrian Omit	A-u	Phase 1 Check
A-v	Phase 2 Pedestrian Omit	A-d	Phase 2 Check
B-j	Phase 3 Pedestrian Omit	B-r	Phase 3 Check
B-x	Phase 4 Pedestrian Omit	B-K	Phase 4 Check
B-T	Phase 5 Pedestrian Omit	C-k	Phase 5 Check
B-k	Phase 6 Pedestrian Omit	C-BB	Phase 6 Check
B-m	Phase 7 Pedestrian Omit	C-MM	Phase 7 Check
B-n	Phase 8 Pedestrian Omit	C-FF	Phase 8 Check

b. Mode 1 Input / Output Functions

Inputs		Outputs	
Pin	**Function**	**Pin**	**Function**
A-h	Preempt 1 Detector	A-DD	Preempt 1 Status
A-M	Preempt 3 Detector	A-e	Preempt 3 Status
B-i	Vehicle Detector 9	B-s	TBC Auxiliary 1
B-h	Vehicle Detector 10	B-e	TBC Auxiliary 2
C-m	Vehicle Detector 13	C-N	Timing Plan A
C-p	Vehicle Detector 14	C-CC	Timing Plan B
C-EE	Vehicle Detector 15	C-NN	Offset 1
C-X	Vehicle Detector 16	C-GG	Offset 2
B-U	Vehicle Detector 11	B-A	Preempt 2 Status
B-S	Vehicle Detector 12	B-C	Preempt 4 Status
B-R	Timing Plan C	B-t	Preempt 5 Status
B-g	Timing Plan D	B-f	Preempt 6 Status
C-n	Alternate Sequence A	C-M	Offset 3
C-q	Alternate Sequence B	C-DD	Timing Plan C
C-r	Alternate Sequence C	C-PP	Timing Plan D
C-s	Alternate Sequence D	C-HH	Reserved

© NEMA

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Inputs		Outputs	
Pin	**Function**	**Pin**	**Function**
A-EE	Dimming Enable	A-u	Free/Coord Status
A-v	Automatic Flash	A-d	Automatic Flash Status
B-j	Timing Plan A	B-r	TBC Auxiliary 3
B-x	Timing Plan B	B-K	Reserved
B-T	Offset 1	C-k	Reserved
B-k	Offset 2	C-BB	Reserved
B-m	Offset 3	C-MM	Reserved
B-n	TBC On Line	C-FF	Reserved

c. Mode 2 Input / Output Functions

Inputs		Outputs	
Pin	**Function**	**Pin**	**Function**
A-h	Preempt 1 Detector	A-DD	Preempt 1 Status
A-M	Preempt 3 Detector	A-e	Preempt 3 Status
B-i	Vehicle Detector 9	B-s	TBC Auxiliary 1
B-h	Vehicle Detector 10	B-e	TBC Auxiliary 2
C-m	Vehicle Detector 13	C-N	Timing Plan A
C-p	Vehicle Detector 14	C-CC	Timing Plan B
C-EE	Vehicle Detector 15	C-NN	Offset 1
C-X	Vehicle Detector 16	C-GG	Offset 2
B-U	Vehicle Detector 11	B-A	Preempt 2 Status
B-S	Vehicle Detector 12	B-C	Preempt 4 Status
B-R	Vehicle Detector 17	B-t	Preempt 5 Status
B-g	Vehicle Detector 18	B-f	Preempt 6 Status
C-n	Vehicle Detector 19	C-M	Offset 3
C-q	Vehicle Detector 20	C-DD	Timing Plan C
C-r	Alarm 1	C-PP	Timing Plan D
C-s	Alarm 2	C-HH	Reserved
A-EE	Dimming Enable	A-u	Free / Coord Status
A-v	Local Flash Status	A-d	Automatic Flash Status
B-j	Address Bit 0	B-r	TBC Auxiliary 3
B-x	Address Bit 1	B-K	Reserved
B-T	Address Bit 2	C-k	System Special Function 1
B-k	Address Bit 3	C-BB	System Special Function 2
B-m	Address Bit 4	C-MM	System Special Function 3
B-n	MMU Flash Status	C-FF	System Special Function 4

d. Mode 3, 4, and 5 are reserved for future definition and use by NEMA. The CU shall not recognize any mode dependent input as valid nor shall it provide a valid output on any mode dependent output when this Input / Output Mode is active.

e. Mode 6 and 7 Input / Output Functions

Mode 6 and 7 are for manufacturer specific applications.

A Terminal and Facilities wired to utilize Mode 6 or Mode 7 may not be compatible with other manufacturer's CUs. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

3.5.5.6 Outputs

1. **Logic Ground**—Voltage reference point and current return for CU input and output logic circuits. This output must not be connected to **AC Neutral** or **Earth Ground** within the CU.

2. **Fault Monitor**—An open collector output which is maintained **True** (**Low** state) as long as the voltages within the CU do not drop below predetermined levels required to provide normal operation.

   The output will also be **False** (**High** state) during CU generated flash modes as defined elsewhere in this section.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3. **Controller Unit Voltage Monitor** (Type A2 Only)—An open collector output which is maintained **True** (**Low** state) as long as the voltages within the CU do not drop below predetermined levels required to provide normal operation.

   The output will also be **False** (**High** state) during CU generated flash modes as defined elsewhere in this section.

   This output operates concurrently with Fault Monitor output except during periods of No Fault Flash (i.e., Automatic Flash, and Preempt Flash).

4. **Regulated 24 Volts DC For External Use** (Type A2 Only)—Positive 24 $\pm$ 2 volts DC shall be regulated over an AC line voltage variation from 89 to 135 volts from no-load to full-load. Current capability shall be 500 milliamperes continuous with less than 0.5 volt peak-to-peak ripple.

5. **Flashing Logic Output** (Type A2 Only)—Alternating **True/False** logic output at 1 pulse per second repetition rate with 50 $\pm$ 2 percent duty cycle. In its **False** state, this output shall be capable of providing 50 milliamperes of current. In its **True** state, this output shall be capable of sinking 200 milliamperes. This output shall switch within 5 degrees of the zero crossover point of the AC line.

6. **Load Switch Drivers, Vehicle Overlap** (Three per Overlap)—Provision of separate **Green**, **Yellow**, and **Red** outputs for each overlap when determined internal to the CU, four overlaps maximum. A circuit closure to **Logic Ground** shall be maintained at one of these three outputs at all times. The three outputs shall energize the appropriate overlap signal load switching circuit to result in a **Green, Yellow**, or **Red** indication for the duration of such required indication.

3.5.5.7 Red Revert

A provision within the CU whereby an adjustable (2–6 seconds)* minimum **Red** indication will be timed following the **Yellow Change** interval and prior to the next display of **Green** on the same phase.

* Not less than 2 seconds and in increments not greater than 1 second.

3.5.6 Priority of Input Functions

The priority of input functions shall be in the following order:

1. Power-Up
2. External Start
3. Preemption
4. Phase Omit
5. Pedestrian Omit
6. Interval Advance
7. Stop Time
8. Automatic Flash
9. Manual Control Enable
10. Ring Force Off
11. Phase Hold
12. Pedestrian Recycle

Lower priority inputs shall condition those of higher priority as defined elsewhere in this standard.

3.5.7 Indications

Indications shall be provided on the display and appropriately identified to facilitate the determination of the operation of the CU. These indications shall consist of the following as a minimum requirement:

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The indications shall provide for the simultaneous (i.e., concurrent) presentation, where concurrent states exists, of the following states/functions:

Phase Information:

1. Phase or phases in service
2. Phase or phases next to be serviced
3. Presence of vehicle call
4. Presence of pedestrian call

The above information shall be displayed simultaneously for all phases.

Status of Active Phase in the Ring:

1. Initial
2. Extension
3. Yellow change
4. Red clearance
5. Walk
6. Pedestrian clearance
7. Reason for **Green** termination
    a. Gap-out
    b. Maximum time-out
    c. Force-off
8. Rest state (dwell)

The above information shall be presented simultaneously for two rings in a multi-ring CU.

3.5.8 Overlaps

All CUs shall include internally generated overlaps.

Overlaps are designated alphabetically A, B, C, and D. The generation of control for overlap signal indications shall be programmable and shall provide **Green, Yellow**, and **Red** load switch drivers for each of four overlap signals. Change and Clearance Timing—The timing for **Yellow Change** and **Red Clearance** overlap signals shall be determined by either:

1. The phase terminating the overlap, or
2. An independent adjustment for each overlap signal.

3.6 ACTUATED COORDINATION

The CU shall include provisions for an internal coordinator. The coordinator shall accept Timing Plan (Dial/Split) and Offset commands from traditional (pretimed) interconnect systems, from a companion Time Base program, and/or an Internal System Interface.

3.6.1 Definitions

These definitions define the nomenclature frequently used in this part of the Standard Publication.

3.6.1.1 Permissive

A time period, during which the CU is allowed to leave the coordinated phase(s) under coordination control to go to other phases.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.6.2 Operation

Coordination shall be implemented by holding the CU in the programmed coordinated phase(s) until a specific point in the cycle, and forcing-off non-coordinated phase(s) at predetermined points within the cycle.

Coordination controls shall be internally applied (i.e., Hold, Omit, Force Ring 1, etc.) while the CU inputs for these same functions remain active and may impact coordinator operation.

Coordination shall be capable of implementing alternate sequence operations. It shall be possible to transfer from one sequence to another based on a change in pattern (Timing Plan plus Offset). When the internal coordinator is running, external selection of alternate sequences shall be ignored.

3.6.2.1 Timing Plans

The coordinator shall provide control for a minimum of 16 timing plans. The Coordinator shall select the timing plan to be used, according to the current status of the Timing Plan request.

3.6.2.1.1 Cycles

The coordinator shall be capable of providing a minimum of 1 cycle length for each timing plan. Each cycle shall be adjustable over a range of 30 to 255 seconds in 1-second increments.

3.6.2.1.2 Splits

A minimum of 1 set of splits shall be provided for each timing plan. Each split shall provide an adjustable time for each phase, each adjustable from 0 to 100 percent in 1-percent increments or from 0 to 255 seconds in 1-second increments.

3.6.2.2 Offset

Coordination shall include a minimum of three offsets per timing plan, each adjustable from 0 to 100 percent in 1 percent increments or from 0 to 254 seconds in 1 second increments.

The values shall determine the latest time that the starting point of the coordinated phase **Green**, local time zero, shall lag the Synchronization pulse, system time zero.

The Coordinator shall recognize when the sync reference and local offset in control indicate local zero is not correct. When establishing its offset based on the sync pulse, the coordinator shall reference only the leading edge, regardless of the width of the sync pulse. The pulse width shall be a minimum of 3 seconds or 3 percent of the cycle.

It shall be possible to enact Free Mode as a function of the Timing Plan plus Offset in effect. This shall be accomplished via program entry.

3.6.2.3 Sync Monitor

The coordinator shall monitor the Offset command requests for validity of the imposed sync reference.

The coordinator shall cause the CU to revert to Free mode when:

1. No sync pulse is received for three consecutive cycles.
2. No offset line is active for 15 seconds.
3. More than one offset line is active for 15 seconds.

During Sync Monitor Free mode, the Offset command requests shall continue to be monitored and should the command request return to valid operation, the coordinator shall implement the pattern commanded.

The Sync Monitor Free mode may be replaced by a TBC event. See the **On-Line** definition in the Time Base section.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.6.2.4 Manual Control

The coordinator shall be capable of being set to manually operate in any pattern (Timing Plan plus Offset) via program entry. A manual selection of pattern overrides all other pattern interface commands.

3.6.2.5 Free Mode

The coordinator shall be capable of Free mode of operation. During this mode all coordinator control of the CU operation shall be removed.

The coordinator shall be capable of being set to the Free mode defined under Sync Monitor and via program entry.

The coordinator shall recognize input requests that conflict with the internal coordination operation and automatically revert to Free mode while the inputs are active. The inputs that conflict with internal coordination are:

1. Manual Control Enable
2. Any Stop Time
3. Automatic Flash
4. Any Preemption

3.6.3 Command Priority

The coordination patterns are capable of being selected based on program entry, Interconnect Inputs, Time Base Control events, and a System Interface. The pattern select priority shall be as follows:

1. Program Entry
2. System Interface
3. Time Base Control Event
4. Interconnect Inputs

3.6.4 External Interface

The coordinator external interface for Type A1 CUs shall be via Port 1 (see 3.3.1). The external interface for Type A2 CUs shall be via Connectors A, B, and C (see 3.3.5).

The coordinator shall operate with an external interface as follows:

1. Coord Inputs—The Coordinator shall select the pattern to be used, according to the current status of the Timing Plan and Offset requests. In the applicable mode, seven inputs for a hardwire type interconnect interface shall be available.
2. Coord Outputs—Seven outputs for master type interconnect interface drivers shall be available. The coord outputs shall echo the active pattern. All outputs shall be constantly **On** when active except offset which is **Off** for a minimum of 3 seconds or 3 percent of the cycle once each cycle beginning at the “0” point of the cycle.
3. Levels—All logic signals shall be **Low** state (nominal 0 volts dc) for the operate condition of all coord inputs and outputs.
4. Connector Pins—Input / Output pin terminations shall be provided in accordance with the following table:

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Coordination Inputs	Coordination Outputs
Timing Plan A	Timing Plan A
Timing Plan B	Timing Plan B
Timing Plan C	Timing Plan C
Timing Plan D	Timing Plan D
Offset 1	Offset 1
Offset 2	Offset 2
Offset 3	Offset 3

5. Input / Output Command Association—Coord inputs and outputs shall be interpreted as command requests in accordance with Table 3-14 and Table 3-15.

Table 3-14
TIMING PLAN

Command Request	TP A Input	TP B Input	TP C Input	TP D Input	Reference
TP 00	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	Dial 1 Split 1
TP 01	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	Dial 1 Split 2
TP 02	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	Dial 1 Split 3
TP 03	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	Dial 1 Split 4
TP 04	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	Dial 2 Split 1
TP 05	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	Dial 2 Split 2
TP 06	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	Dial 2 Split 3
TP 07	ON	OFF	ON	ON	Dial 2 Split 4
TP 08	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	Dial 3 Split 1
TP 09	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	Dial 3 Split 2
TP 10	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	Dial 3 Split 3
TP 11	OFF	ON	ON	ON	Dial 3 Split 4
TP 12	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	Dial 4 Split 1
TP 13	ON	ON	ON	OFF	Dial 4 Split 2
TP 14	ON	ON	OFF	ON	Dial 4 Split 3
TP 15	ON	ON	ON	ON	Dial 4 Split 4

For the purpose of utilization in an existing traditional interconnect system, a Reference with Dial and Split numbers is provided.

Table 3-15
OFFSET

Command Request	Off 1 Input	Off 2 Input	Off 3 Input
Offset 1	ON	OFF	OFF
Offset 2	OFF	ON	OFF
Offset 3	OFF	OFF	ON
Sync	OFF	OFF	OFF

Voltage Levels: OFF = +24V; ON = 0V

3.6.5 Indications

Indications shall be provided on the display and appropriately identified to facilitate the determination of coord operation.

Coordinator settings and activity shall be capable of being monitored on the display (i.e., Hold, Omit, and Force Off indication shall denote when these functions are used).

As a minimum, the indications shall provide the following:

Current Status

1. Running Pattern, Control Source

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2. Running Pattern, Timing Plan plus Offset
3. Correction In Progress
4. System Zero
5. Cycle Counter

3.7 PREEMPTION

The CU shall include provisions for an internal preemptor with the capability of 6 unique preempt sequences.

3.7.1 Definitions

These definitions define the nomenclature frequently used in this part of the Standard Publication.

3.7.2 Operation

Internal Preemption shall be a special program operating within the CU. The preemption program shall accept commands from 6 preempt inputs and provide the timing and signal display programmed to occur in response to each.

Preemption controls shall be internally applied. Internally applied preempt controls shall have priority as defined in 3.5.6.

The preemption program shall recognize the current signal display at the time of preempt and shall provide transition timing and signal display to a programmed preempt condition. Once the preempt has been satisfied, the preemption program shall provide an exit transition timing and signal display to a programmed (one for each of the six preempt inputs) return-to-normal condition.

3.7.2.1 Input Priority

The Preemption program shall provide for setting priorities of the preemption inputs with respect one to the other and to other inputs. The priorities shall be as follows:

1. Preempt 1 shall normally have priority over Preempt 2. If Preempt 1 becomes active while the Preemption program is in the Preempt 2 routine, the CU shall immediately terminate the Preempt 2 routine and enter the Preempt 1 routine. When Preempt 2 has been terminated by Preempt 1, control shall not return to Preempt 2 at the end of Preempt 1 except when Preempt 2 demand is still present at the end of Preempt 1.

   The priority of Preempt 1 over Preempt 2 shall be capable of being canceled via program entry. If the priority has been canceled and the Preempt 1 becomes active while the preemption program is in the Preempt 2 routine, the Preempt 2 routine shall complete normally. After Preempt 2 is complete, the CU shall enter the Preempt 1 routine only if the Preempt 1 demand is still present.

   When Preempt 2 becomes active while the preemption program is in the Preempt 1 routine, the Preempt 1 routine shall complete normally regardless of the priority of Preempt 1 versus Preempt 2. After Preempt 1 is complete, the CU shall enter the Preempt 2 routine only if the Preempt 2 demand is still present. Whenever both inputs become active at the same time, Preempt 1 shall occur first.

   Preempt 2 shall normally have priority over Preempt 3. The priority of Preempt 2 over Preempt 3 shall be capable of being canceled via program entry.

   Preempt 3, 4, 5, and 6 shall normally have equal status (priority canceled). A priority of Preempt 3 over Preempt 4, Preempt 4 over Preempt 5, and Preempt 5 over Preempt 6 shall be capable of being established via program entry.

   Operation capability as described above for Preempt 1 and 2 shall be provided for Preempt 2 and 3, 3 and 4, 4 and 5, and 5 and 6.

   The default priorities above were established assuming Preempt 1 and Preempt 2 as railroad and Preempt 3 to Preempt 6 as emergency vehicle. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2. All Preempt routines shall normally have priority over Automatic Flash. If any Preempt becomes active while the CU is in Automatic Flash, Automatic Flash shall terminate normally and the CU shall enter the Preempt routine.

   The priority of Preempt over Automatic Flash shall be capable of being canceled via program entry. If the priority of Preempt over Automatic Flash has been canceled and a Preempt input becomes active while the CU is in Automatic Flash, the CU shall remain in Automatic Flash until the demand (both Automatic Flash and Preempt) is terminated.

3. Start-Up Flash shall always have priority over all Preempt routines. If a Preempt input becomes active or is active during Start-Up Flash, the CU shall maintain the Start-Up Flash condition for the duration of the both Preempt demand and Start-Up Flash time.

4. External Start shall always have priority over all Preempt routines. If External Start becomes active during a Preempt routine, the CU shall revert to Start-Up Flash rather than the Initialization condition. The CU shall maintain the Start-Up Flash condition for the duration of the External Start, Preempt demand, and Start-Up Flash time.

3.7.2.2 Memory

The preemption program shall provide input memory which shall be capable of being set to locking or non-locking via program entry.

When input memory is set for non-locking, termination of the input prior to implementation of the routine shall not initiate preempt operation.

3.7.3 External Interface

The preemptor external interface for Type A1 and P1 CUs shall be via Port 1 (see 3.3.1). The external interface for Type A2 and P2 CUs shall be via Connectors A, B, and C (see 3.3.5).

The preemptor shall operate with an external interface as follows:

1. Preempt Inputs—The Preemptor shall select the preempt routine to be active, according to the current status of the inputs and the preempt priority entries. In the applicable mode, six inputs for preempt actuation shall be available.

2. Preempt Outputs—Six outputs, one for each preempt routine shall be available. The outputs shall be **On** when their respective preempt is in control.

3. Input Levels—All logic signals shall be **Low** state (nominal 0 volts DC) for the operate condition of all preempt inputs.

4. Connector Pins—Input pin terminations shall be provided in accordance with the following table:

Preemption Inputs	Preemption Outputs
Preempt 1 Detector	Preempt 1 Status
Preempt 2 Detector	Preempt 2 Status
Preempt 3 Detector	Preempt 3 Status
Preempt 4 Detector	Preempt 4 Status
Preempt 5 Detector	Preempt 5 Status
Preempt 6 Detector	Preempt 6 Status

3.7.4 Indications

Indications shall be provided on the display and appropriately identified to facilitate the determination of preempt operation.

As a minimum, the indications shall provide the following:

Current Status

1. Preempt Call

2. Preempt In Control

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3. Preempt Interval
4. Preempt Interval Counter

3.8 TIME BASE

The CU shall include provisions for internal Time Base Control.

3.8.1 Definitions

These definitions define the nomenclature frequently used in this part of the Standard Publication.

3.8.1.1 Coordinated Universal Time

The National Institute of Standards and Technology operates standard frequency and time stations at Fort Collins, Colorado. The broadcasts of WWV may be heard via telephone by dialing (303) 499-7111, Boulder, Colorado. (Not a toll-free number.)

3.8.2 Operation

The internal Time Base Control shall be a special program operating within the CU. A minimum of 48 different Time Base Control events shall be capable of being programmed over a one year time frame.

The Time Base calendar shall provide automatic compensation for leap years.

The Time Base Control shall provide for Daylight Savings Time to be programmed to occur automatically as defined by law in most states or not to occur.

The Time Base clock shall be maintained to within $\pm$ 0.005 % at 20°C (68°F) and to within $\pm$ 0.02% over the specified operating temperature range as compared to Coordinated Universal Time (WWV) standard for a period of thirty days during periods when AC power is not applied.

The Time Base Control program shall output Timing Plan plus Offset commands to the coordination program. It shall be possible to perform functions not necessarily traffic related within the Time Base Control program by programming and use of three auxiliary outputs.

The Time Base coordination pattern sync (Cycle Zero) shall be user programmable to be referenced to any hour/minute or the event time.

3.8.3 External Interface

The Time Base Control external interface for Type A1 and P1 CUs shall be via Port 1 (see 3.3.1). The external interface for Type A2 and P2 CUs shall be via Connectors A, B, and C (see 3.3.5).

The Time Base Control shall operate with an external interface as follows:

1. Time Base Inputs—One input for Time Base control shall be available. The Time Base **On Line** input, when active, shall disable the Time Base pattern outputs to the internal coordination program.
2. Time Base Outputs—Three outputs for Time Base Auxiliary shall be available. The outputs shall be **On** when their respective auxiliary is part of the current time base event.
3. Output Levels—All logic signals shall be **Low** state (nominal 0 volts DC) for the operate condition.
4. Connector Pins—Input / Output pin terminations shall be provided in accordance with the following table:

Time Base Inputs	Time Base Outputs
TBC On Line	TBC Auxiliary # 1
	TBC Auxiliary # 2
	TBC Auxiliary # 3

3.8.4 Indications

Indications shall be provided on the display and appropriately identified to facilitate the determination of time base operation.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

As a minimum, the indications shall provide the following:

Current Status

1. Date, Time, Day-Of-Week
2. Current Event Pattern
3. Current Event Auxiliary Functions

3.9 MISCELLANEOUS

3.9.1 Flash

3.9.1.1 Start-Up Flash

The CU shall have provisions whereby an adjustable time period/state (Start-Up Flash—0 to 255 seconds in increments of 1 second) shall occur prior to the Initialization routine.

During the Start-Up Flash state, the **Fault Monitor** and **Voltage Monitor** outputs shall be inactive.

When power is restored following a defined power interruption, the Start-Up Flash state shall become operational. No input, other than the lack of AC power, shall prevent this state from the completion and/or exit to the Initialization routine except as noted in this standard.

If a Preempt Input is active during Start-Up Flash timing, the CU shall maintain the Start-Up Flash state for the duration of the Preempt demand and/or Start-Up Flash time.

3.9.1.2 Automatic Flash

The activation of this input shall cause the following operation to occur:

1. Actuated CUs

   The CU shall assure the completion of the **Minimum Green** or **Walk** plus **PED Clearance** time on the current phase(s). Thereafter, if necessary, it shall proceed to the vehicle clearance intervals followed by the programmed Entry Phase(s). After the Entry Phase(s) **Minimum Green** or **Walk** plus **PED Clearance**, the CU shall proceed to the vehicle clearance intervals. Upon completion of the vehicle **Red Clearance** interval, the CU shall initiate flashing operation. The CU shall maintain this condition as long as the Automatic Flash input is active.

   When the input becomes inactive, the CU shall move immediately to the beginning of the phase(s) programmed as the Exit Phase(s), with a Green/Walk display, calls on all phase vehicle and pedestrian, and shall cease flashing operation.

2. Pretimed CUs

   The CU shall cycle normally to the programmed Entry Interval. Upon completion of the interval, the CU shall initiate flashing operation. The CU shall maintain this condition as long as the Automatic Flash input is active.

   When the input becomes inactive, the CU shall move immediately to the beginning of the programmed Exit Interval, with calls on all actuated vehicle and pedestrian movements, and shall cease flashing operation.

3. Method

   The method by which flashing operation is accomplished shall be determined via program entry and shall be either:

   a. **Voltage Monitor** Output inactive, or

   b. Load Switch Driver Output Flashing

   Load Switch Driver Output Flashing shall provide an alternating **True/False** logic output at 1 pulse per second repetition rate with 50 $\pm$ 2 percent duty cycle. The selection, via program entry, of Yellow

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

flashing, Red flashing, or Dark for each vehicle load switch driver group (G/Y/R) shall be provided. All pedestrian load switch driver groups (W/PC/D) shall be inactive (DARK) in flash.

3.9.2 Dimming

The CU shall be programmed to provide output dimming based on a Time Base Auxiliary Event and Dimming Enable input (both must be active to enable). The dimming function shall be accomplished by controlling the load switch driver outputs with respect to the AC line voltage.

For a Type A1 and P1 CU, the dimming function shall be accomplished within the TF.

For a Type A2 and P2 CU, the dimming function shall be integral to the CU.

The dimming function shall be accomplished by the elimination of alternate one-half wave segments from the AC sinusoid applied to the field indications. When **Dimmed** by this method, the control transition from the **On** (**Low** state) to **Off** (**High** state) and vice versa should not occur within 20° of AC line zero crossing.

Dimming control shall provide selection, via program entry (individual Green, Yellow, Red, Walk, Pedestrian Clear, and Don't Walk output), of which load switch driver shall have a **Dimmed** output and which half cycle (+ or -) shall be eliminated.

When the Type A2 and P2 CU is used in a cabinet that employs Absence of Red Monitoring with a NEMA TS 1 Monitor, the user may be required to make a choice between:

1. Absence of Red Monitoring.
2. Dimming the Red Display.

For additional information about this subject, reference is made to Federal Highway Administration Report No. FHWA-TS-85-213 entitled "Traffic Signal Brightness: An Examination of Nighttime Dimming." (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Some types of signals may not operate properly or may be damaged if dimmed. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

3.9.3 Diagnostics

The CU shall be provided with a resident series of diagnostic capabilities describing its own internal state. It shall not require internal access or changes to the CU to initiate diagnostic programs.

3.9.3.1 Automatic Diagnostics

The CU shall perform diagnostics automatically (i.e., without operator request) to verify essential elements are operating properly and take the action defined herein based on those diagnostics.

3.9.3.1.1 Memory

The CU shall contain provisions to verify all memory elements on power up. When a fault is detected, an appropriate Message shall be displayed and the unit shall maintain the Start-Up Flash state.

As a minimum, the following memory diagnostics shall be performed:

1. RAM Diagnostic—This test shall verify that all RAM is operating correctly. Patterns shall be automatically written to RAM. Each write shall be followed by a read and compare to verify that it contains the pattern.
2. ROM Diagnostic—This test shall verify that the Operating System ROM contains the proper program. The routine shall perform a check on ROM and make a comparison with a pre-programmed value.
3. Non-Volatile Memory Diagnostic—This test shall verify whether the Non-Volatile Memory contain data and that data has not changed since the last write. The routine shall perform a check on Non-Volatile Memory and make a comparison with a preprogrammed value.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The CU shall continue to verify ROM and Non-Volatile Memory during normal operation at a minimum rate of 1024 bytes per second. When a fault is detected, the unit shall initiate and maintain the Start-Up Flash state.

3.9.3.1.2 Processor Monitor

The CU shall contain provisions to monitor the operation of the microprocessor. The monitor shall receive signals, at least, once every 100 milliseconds from the microprocessor. When the signal is not received for 1 second maximum, the processor monitor shall initiate flashing operation (**Fault Monitor** and **Voltage Monitor** output inactive).

3.9.3.1.3 Port 1

When AC power is present and the **Port 1 Disable** Input is not **True**, the CU shall transmit Command Frames and expect Response Frames in accordance with 3.3.1.4 and as defined here.

The CU shall log Response Frame Faults in non-volatile memory event history. Each logged event shall denote the date, time, and Response Frame Number.

1. MMU Compatibility Programming

   Command Frame : 3
   Response Frame : 131

   The CU shall transmit the Command Frame in accordance with 3.3.1.4.

   A Response Frame Fault shall be logged in event history when more than 5 out of the most recent 10 Response Frame transfers are not received.

   Actuated CUs shall verify the MMU Channel to Signal Driver Group Utilization (see 3.3.1.4.1.a) with the phase sequence.

   Following a power interruption, when the compatibility defined in the Response Frame does not compare to the resident channel utilization or a Response Frame Fault occurs, the CU shall not exit the Start-Up Flash state.

   Otherwise (actuated CUs only), when the program entry definition is not compatible with the sequence, the compatibility defined in the Response Frame does not compare to the resident channel utilization, or a Response Frame Fault occurs, the CU shall initiate flashing operation **(Fault Monitor** and **Voltage Monitor** Output inactive and Load Switch Driver Red Output Flashing).

2. MMU Field Status

   Command Frame : 1
   Response Frame : 129

   The CU shall transmit the Command Frame in accordance with 3.3.1.4.

   A Response Frame Fault shall be logged in event history when more than 5 out of the most recent 10 response Frame transfers are not received.

   The CU shall evaluate the Response Frame with the MMU Channel to Signal Driver Group Utilization (see 3.3.1.4.1.a) and determine if incompatible channels are active.

   When the above conditions have been true for 10 consecutive Response Frame transfers and the Response Frame indicates the MMU has not transferred to the Fail State or a Response Frame Fault occurs, the CU shall initiate flashing operation (**Fault Monitor** and **Voltage Monitor** Output inactive and Load Switch Driver Red Output Flashing).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3. Signal Control Output Status

   Command Frame : 0
   Response Frame : 128

   The CU shall transmit the Command Frame in accordance with 3.3.1.4.

   A Response Frame Fault shall be logged in event history when more than 5 out of the most recent 10 Response Frame transfers are not received.

   When a Response Frame Fault occurs, the CU shall initiate flashing operation (**Fault Monitor** and **Voltage Monitor** Output inactive and Load Switch Driver Red Output Flashing).

4. Terminal & Facilities (Type A1 and P1 CU)

   Command Frame : 10–13
   Response Frame : 138–141

   The CU shall transmit each Command Frame in accordance with 3.3.1.4.

   A Response Frame Fault shall be logged in event history when more than 5 out of the most recent 10 Response Frame transfers (138–141 exclusive) are not received.

   When a Response Frame Fault occurs, the CU shall initiate flashing operation (**Fault Monitor** and **Voltage Monitor** Output inactive and Load Switch Driver Red Output Flashing).

5. Detector Racks

   Command Frame : 20–23
   Response Frame : 148–151

   The CU shall transmit the Command Frame in accordance with 3.3.1.4.

   A Response Frame Fault shall be logged in event history when more than 5 out of the most recent 10 Response Frame transfers (148–151 exclusive) are not received.

   When a Response Frame Fault occurs, the CU shall operate as though a continuous call is present on all enabled respective detectors.

6. Detector Racks

   Command Frame : 24–27
   Response Frame : 152–155

   The CU shall transmit the Command Frame in accordance with 3.3.1.4.

   A Response Frame Fault shall be logged in event history when more than 5 out of the most recent 10 Response Frame transfers (152–155 exclusive) are not received.

7. Auxiliary Input / Output (Type A1 and P1 CU)

   Command Frame : 30
   Response Frame : 158

   The CU shall transmit the Command Frame in accordance with 3.3.1.4.

   A Response Frame Fault shall be logged in event history when more than 5 out of the most recent 10 Response Frame transfers are not received.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8. Transfer Outputs Frame (Type A1 and P1 CU)

   Command Frame : 18

   The CU shall transmit the Command Frame in accordance with 3.3.1.4.

   A Transfer Outputs Frame Fault shall be logged in event history when the Transfer Outputs Frame has not been transmitted for 500 milleseconds.

   When a Transfer Outputs Frame Fault occurs, the CU shall initiate flashing operation (**Fault Monitor** Output inactive and Load Switch Driver Red Output Flashing).

When the cause of the Frame Fault flash in 1, 2, 3, 4, and 8 above ceases to exist, the CU shall exit to the beginning of the Start-Up Flash period/state (see 3.9.1.1) except when an address (MMU, T&F BIU 1, etc.) has caused three Frame Fault flash conditions in a calendar day or 24 hour period. The CU shall not exit this Third Time Frame Fault flash state prior to user interaction or AC power being removed and reapplied.

A user interaction shall reset all address Frame Fault counts to zero. AC power interruptions shall not reset any address Frame Fault counts and the next Frame Fault from an address with three or more Frame Faults in the same calendar day or 24 hour period shall enter the Third Time Frame Fault flash state.

3.9.3.1.4 Detector Diagnostics

Each active detector (Vehicle and Pedestrian enabled by assignment) shall be capable of being tested by diagnostics for conformance to specified parameters. The detector diagnostics shall monitor activity on each active detector for constant calls, absence of calls, or erratic output.

An active detector is classified as **On-Line** when the results of the Diagnostic procedures indicate that data from the detector is within the allowable range of values.

An active detector is classified as **Failed** when the results the Diagnostic procedures indicate that data from the detector is not within the allowable range of values.

1. **No Activity**—If an active detector does not exhibit an actuation during a program entered period (00–255 minutes in one minute increments), it is considered a fault by the diagnostics and the detector is classified as **Failed**.
2. **Maximum Presence**—If an active detector exhibits continuous detection for a program entered period (00–255 minutes in one minute increments), it is considered a fault by the diagnostics and the detector is classified as **Failed**.
3. **Erratic Output**—If an active detector exhibits excessive actuations (program entered maximum counts per minute 00–255 in increments of one), it is considered a fault by the diagnostics and the detector is classified as **Failed**.
4. **Fault Status**—When a Fault status defined in the respective Response Frame 152 to 155 is **True** for an active detector, it is considered a fault by the diagnostics and the detector is classified as:
   a. Failed—Watchdog,
   b. Failed—Open Loop,
   c. Failed—Shorted Loop,
   d. Failed—Excess Change.

Indications shall be provided to facilitate the determination of current diagnostic status of each detector.

The CU shall include a program entry for No Activity, Maximum Presence, and Erratic Output for each detector. The respective diagnostic shall be disabled when the program entry is “00.”

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

When a detector is classified as **Failed** by these diagnostics, the CU shall operate as though a continuous call is present until such time as the detector is classified as **On-Line**.

The CU shall log detector diagnostic status (i.e., **On-Line** or **Failed**) in non-volatile memory event history. Each logged event shall denote the date and time of occurrence.

The Detector Report shall have the capacity to store a minimum of 50 events. The events once logged shall remain until the report capacity is exceeded at which time the oldest event shall be deleted and the new one shall be added.

3.9.3.1.5 Events Report

The CU shall monitor activity and log status in non-volatile memory event history. Events to be logged shall be selected via program entry. Each logged event shall denote the date and time of occurrence.

The following events shall be monitored and the status of each selected event shall be logged in the Events Report:

1. **Cycle Fault**—When the local CU is operating in the coordinated mode and cycling diagnostics indicate that a serviceable call exists that has not been serviced for two cycles, the Status shall be logged as a **Cycle Fault**. The local intersection shall automatically revert to Free.
2. **Coord Fault**—When a Cycle Fault is in effect and the serviceable call has been serviced within two cycles after the Cycle Fault, the Intersection Status shall be logged as a **Coord Fault**. A coordination retry shall be attempted. If a Cycle Fault does not occur again within two cycles, the Status shall be logged as **Coord Active**, if no other failure or coord fault condition exists.
3. **Coord Failure**—When a Coord Fault is in effect and a Cycle Fault occurs again within two cycles of the coordination retry, the Status shall be logged as a **Coord Failure** and shall not attempt another coordination retry prior to entry of phase, unit, or coord data or the AC power being recycled to the CU.
4. **Cycle Failure**—When a local CU is operating in the non-coordinated mode, whether the result of a Cycle Fault or Free being the current normal mode, and cycling diagnostics indicate that a serviceable call exists that has not been serviced for two cycles, the Status shall be logged as a **Cycle Failure**. The intersection shall automatically and immediately revert to Flash (**Fault Monitor** and **Voltage Monitor** Inactive). The CU shall not exit this state prior to the entry of phase or unit data or AC power being removed and reapplied.

   The cycling diagnostic shall be a phase by phase test. For the purpose of this test, the following definitions are included:

   Not Serviced—A phase does not go green.

   Serviceable Call—A phase has a call and can be serviced normally.

   Serviced Normally—The following conditions are true:

   a. The Phase Is Active
   b. The Phase Omit Is Not Active
   c. No Phase Hold Is Active
   d. External Start Is Not Active
   e. No Stop Time Is Active
   f. Manual Control Enable Is Not Active
   g. Programmed Flash Is Not Active

   Two Cycles—When running coordinated, two times the pattern cycle length. When running non-coordinated, two times the longest path between barriers (Maximum Green, Yellow, and Red times sum).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

5. **MMU Flash**—Should the CU MMU Flash input remain active for a period of time exceeding the Start-Up Flash time, the Status is logged as a **MMU Flash**. If subsequent to a MMU Flash logging the MMU Flash input is removed, the Status shall be logged as **On-Line** if no other failure is present.
6. **Local Flash**—Should the CU Local Flash input become active, MMU Flash input is not active, and Flash is not commanded by the Master, the Status shall be logged as a **Local Flash**. If subsequent to a Local Flash logging the Local Flash input is removed, the Status shall be logged as **On-Line** if no other failure is present.
7. **Preempt**—Should any of the CU Preempt inputs become active, the Status shall be logged as a **Preempt #**. If subsequent to a Preempt logging the Preempt input is removed, the Status shall be logged as **On-Line** if no other failure is present.
8. **Local Free**—Should any of the CU inputs and/or programming cause it to not respond to coordination control, the Status shall be logged as **Local Free**. If subsequent to a Local Free logging the CU becomes able to respond to coordination control, the Status shall be logged as **Coord Active** if no other failure is present.
9. **Power On/Off**—Should a power interruption occur, the Status shall be logged as **Power Off**. When power returns the Status shall be logged as **Power On**.
10. **Low Battery**—Should any battery voltage fall below the required level, the Status shall be logged as **Low Battery**.
11. **Response Fault**—Should a response fault occur (3.9.3.1.3 Port 1), the Status shall be logged as **Response Fault** along with the Response Frame number which caused the fault.
12. **Alarm 1** and **Alarm 2**—Should any of the CU Alarm inputs become active, the Status shall be logged as an **Alarm #**.

The Events Report shall have the capacity to store a minimum of 100 alarms. The alarms once logged shall remain until the report capacity is exceeded at which time the oldest alarm shall be deleted and the new one shall be added.

3.9.3.2 Operator Initiated Diagnostics

The CU shall perform diagnostics enabling operator verification of properly operating inputs, outputs, keypad, and display.

The “operator initiated” diagnostics shall be performed only after an operator request through the CU keypad. The intersection shall automatically and immediately revert to Flash (**Fault Monitor** and **Voltage Monitor** Inactive) during this diagnostic. The diagnostics evaluation shall be displayed on the CU front panel display and/or indications on a Controller Test Set as an operator interface.

This diagnostic is not intended for use while the CU is in control of intersection operation. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

3.9.3.2.1 Inputs

The CU shall provide test routines to enable operator verification that input functions are proper. This test shall determine whether the input buffers are operating correctly. The user shall activate each input. The routine shall identify each input by an indication on the front panel.

The user shall observe the front panel display and determine correct operation.

3.9.3.2.2 Outputs

The CU shall provide test routines to enable operator verification that output functions are proper. This test shall determine whether the output drivers are operating correctly. Each output shall be actuated in a fixed sequence. The user shall observe the output sequence and determine correct operation.

--`,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
© NEMA
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.9.3.2.3 Integral Display

The CU shall provide test routines to enable operator verification that display functions are proper. This test shall determine whether front panel drivers and decoders are operating properly. All the indicators shall be activated. The user shall observe the front panel display and determine correct operation.

3.9.3.2.4 Integral Keypad

The CU shall provide test routines to enable operator verification that keypad functions are proper. This test shall determine whether the keypad is operating correctly. The operator shall test each of the CU keys. The display shall indicate the key pressed. The user shall observe the front panel display and determine correct operation.

3.10 FUTURE

The CUs defined by this standard includes provision for future addition and/or modification that shall not be deemed to be impossible due to Input-Output Interface limitations.

Future functional capabilities may be limited to Type A1 and P1 Cus. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

3.11 PROGRAMMING

The CU shall provide means to enter and view variable data, view current status, and view the event report.

3.11.1 Entry

The method of entering CU variables shall be by:

1. An integral keypad on the face of the unit, and
2. Via Port 2 Interface and a Personal Computer

3.11.2 Display

The method provided to view CU variables, current status, and the event report shall be by:

1. Integral Indication on the face of the unit, and
2. Via Port 2 Interface and a Personal Computer

The method provided shall include a simultaneous display of a minimum of two lines, 16 characters per line of ASCII text (HEX 20 through HEX 7A).

3.11.3 Security

The CU shall maintain user programmable variables in non-volatile memory to assure continued proper CU operation with return of power after power loss.

3.11.4 Backup

The CU shall contain a reserve data base of all CU variables stored in Non-Volatile Memory. The reserve data base may be manually copied into active memory by the user.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.12 POWER INTERRUPTION

A power interruption is defined as 0 volts AC.

Two or more power interruptions which are separated by power restorations of 1500 or more milliseconds shall be considered as separate interruptions.

Three interruptions of 300 milliseconds or less which are separated by power restorations of 300 milliseconds or more shall not cause the CU to revert to its start-up state.

The CU shall react to a power interruption, upon restoring power, as follows:

1. Interruption of 500 Milliseconds or Less: Shall continue to operate as though the power interruption had not occurred.
2. Interruption of More Than 500 Milliseconds and Less than 1000 Milliseconds: Shall either continue to operate (3.1.2.1) or shall revert to its start-up state (3.1.2.3).
3. Interruption of 1000 Milliseconds or More: Shall revert to its start-up state.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Section 4
MALFUNCTION MANAGEMENT UNIT

4.1 OVERVIEW

The standards in Section 4 respond to the need for a **Malfunction Management Unit** (MMU) to accomplish the detection of, and response to, improper and conflicting signals and improper operating voltages in a Controller Assembly (CA). This standard provides interchangeability between units of different manufacturers and downward compatibility to NEMA Standards Publication TS 1-1989.

The MMU shall detect the presence of voltage on conflicting field connection terminals, the absence of proper voltages on all of the signal field connection terminals of a channel, and shall be capable of monitoring for the presence of satisfactory operating voltages within the Controller Unit (CU) and the MMU itself.

The MMU upon sensing any of these conditions, shall cause the transfer of the traffic signals to **Flashing Operation**, and the CA shall be wired in such a manner as to provide **Flash Transfer** if the MMU is removed from service (refer to 5.3.3).

The standards in Section 4 describe an MMU for 12 or 16 channels. The MMU shall operate in two modes determined by the signal level on the **Type Select** input. If the **Type Select** input is at **Logic Ground** potential then the MMU will operate as a Type 16 with sixteen channels, otherwise it will operate as a Type 12 with twelve channels.

Type 16—Each of the sixteen channels consists of three 120 volt AC inputs: **Green/Walk**; **Yellow**; and **Red/Don't Walk**.

Type 12—Each of the twelve channels consists of four 120 volt AC inputs: **Green; Yellow**; **Walk**; and **Red**.

The Type 16 MMU is intended for those applications in which there are three circuits per channel and the MMU channels have been wired in a one-to-one correspondence with the load switches, as defined in 5.5.3 paragraph 9 of this standard. The Type 12 MMU is intended to provide downward compatibility with conflict monitors conforming to TS 1-1989. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

4.1.1 Basic Capability

The **Signal Monitor** portion of the MMU shall be capable of monitoring for the presence of voltage on conflicting field connection terminals in the CA. For the purpose of conflict determination, a signal on any of the **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** inputs associated with a channel shall be considered as that channel being active.

The **Signal Monitor** portion of the MMU shall also detect the absence of any required signal voltage on each channel at the field connection terminals in the CA. For this purpose a signal on the **Green**, **Yellow**, **Walk**, or **Red/Don't Walk** inputs associated with a channel shall be considered as that channel being active.

The **Voltage Monitor** portion of the MMU shall be capable of monitoring the **Controller Unit Voltage Monitor** output which indicates satisfactory operating voltage in the CU and the +24 volt direct current inputs.

4.1.2 TS 1-1989 Compatibility

The MMU shall be capable of operation in a cabinet designed to TS 1 specification with no loss of TS 1 functionality. Some areas of TS 1 functionality will be superseded by this specification. Unless noted otherwise all functions of TS 1-1989, Part 6, shall be complied with by an MMU when it is installed in a CA wired to the requirements of TS 1.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4.2 PHYSICAL

4.2.1 Accessibility

All operating circuitry and components within the MMU shall be readily accessible for maintenance.

4.2.2 Material and Construction of Printed Circuit Assemblies

All printed circuit boards shall meet all requirements as outlined in 3.2.3.

4.2.3 Environmental Requirements

The MMU shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in Section 2, Environmental Requirements.

4.2.4 Size

The overall dimensions of the MMU, including mating connector(s) and harness, shall not exceed 11.43 cm (4.5 in.) width, 26.67 cm (10.5 in.) height, and 27.94 cm (11 in.) depth.

4.3 INTERFACE STANDARDS

The MMU shall use an Input / Output Interface conforming to 3.3.1 for input/output functions with the CU and 4.3.2 for input/output functions with the TF.

If additional input/output terminations are required to allow for the inclusion of additional functional capabilities, such terminations shall be provided on an additional connector which shall not be interchangeable with other connectors on the face of the MMU. The provision of these additional capabilities shall not modify the operating capabilities of the unit when the additional input/output connector is disconnected.

4.3.1 Port 1 Connector

The Port 1 connector shall be a 15 pin metal shell D subminiature type. The connector shall utilize female contacts with 15 millionths of an inch minimum gold plating in the mating area. The connector shall be equipped with latching blocks. The connector shall intermate with a 15 pin D type connector, AMP Incorporated part number 205206-1 or equivalent, which is equipped with spring latches, AMP Incorporated part number 745012-1, or equivalent. Pin connections shall be as follows:

PORT 1 CONNECTOR PIN ASSIGNMENTS

Pin	Function
1	Rx Data +
2	Logic Ground
3	Rx Clock +
4	Logic Ground
5	Tx Data +
6	Logic Ground
7	Tx Clock +
8	Logic Ground
9	Rx Data-
10	Port 1 Disable (0 VDC = disable)
11	Rx Clock-
12	Earth Ground
13	Tx Data-
14	Reserved
15	Tx Clock-

NOTE—Tx pins at the MMU are connected to Rx pins at the CU. Rx pins at the MMU are connected to Tx pins at the CU.

4.3.2 Pin Connections

The MMU shall provide input/output interface pin connections per 4.3.2.1 and 4.3.2.2.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4.3.2.1 Connectors

The connectors on the MMU shall have a metallic shell. The connectors shall be connected to the chassis internally. The connectors shall be mounted on the front of the unit in accordance with the following:

1. Connector A shall intermate with a MS 3116 22-55 SZ
2. Connector B shall intermate with a MS 3116 16-26 S

4.3.2.2 Pin Assignments

Input/output pin terminations shall conform with the following tabulations:

Type 16 Connector-A Pin Terminations

Pin	Function	I/O
A	AC Line	[I]
B	Output Relay 1 Open..... (closes when fault occurs)	[O]
C	Output Relay 2 Closed (opens when fault occurs)	[O]
D	Channel 12 Green	[I]
E	Channel 11 Green	[I]
F	Channel 10 Green	[I]
G	Channel 9 Green	[I]
H	Channel 8 Green	[I]
J	Channel 7 Green	[I]
K	Channel 6 Green	[I]
L	Channel 5 Green	[I]
M	Channel 4 Green	[I]
N	Channel 3 Green	[I]
P	Channel 2 Green	[I]
R	Channel 1 Green	[I]
S	+24 Monitor I.....	[I]
T	Logic Ground	[I]
U	Earth Ground	[I]
V	AC Neutral	[I]
W	Output Relay 1 Common.....	[I]
X	Output Relay 2 Common	[I]
Y	Channel 12 Yellow.....	[I]
Z	Channel 11 Yellow	[I]
a	Channel 10 Walk ..... (Type 12 only)	[I]
b	Channel 10 Yellow	[I]
c	Channel 9 Yellow.....	[I]
d	Channel 8 Yellow	[I]
e	Channel 7 Yellow.....	[I]
f	Channel 6 Yellow	[I]
g	Channel 5 Yellow.....	[I]
h	Channel 3 Yellow	[I]
I	Channel 15 Green	[I]
j	Channel 2 Yellow	[I]
k	Channel 1 Yellow.....	[I]
m	Controller Voltage Monitor	[I]
n	+24V Monitor Inhibit	[I]
p	Output Relay 1 Closed (opens when fault occurs)	[O]
q	Output Relay 2 Open..... (closes when fault occurs)	[O]
r	Channel 12 Walk (Type 12 only)	[I]
s	Channel 11 Walk ..... (Type 12 only)	[I]
t	Channel 9 Walk (Type 12 only)	[I]
u	Channel 16 Yellow.....	[I]
v	Channel 15 Yellow	[I]
w	Channel 13 Yellow.....	[I]
x	Channel 4 Yellow	[I]
y	Channel 14 Green	[I]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 16 Connector-A Pin Terminations

Pin	Function	I/O
z	Channel 13 Green	[I]
AA	Spare 1	[-]
BB	Reset	[I]
CC	Cabinet Interlock A	[I]
DD	Cabinet Interlock B	[O]
EE	Channel 14 Yellow	[I]
FF	Channel 16 Green	[I]
GG	Spare 2	[-]
HH	Type Select	[I]

Type 16 Connector-B Pin Termination

Pin	Function	I/O
A	AC Line	[I]
B	Start-Delay Relay Common	[I]
C	Start-Delay Relay Open (closes during Start Delay period)	[O]
D	Channel 12 Red	[I]
E	Channel 11 Red	[I]
F	Channel 9 Red	[I]
G	Channel 8 Red	[I]
H	Channel 7 Red	[I]
J	Channel 6 Red	[I]
K	Channel 5 Red	[I]
L	Channel 4 Red	[I]
M	Channel 2 Red	[I]
N	Channel 1 Red	[I]
P	Spare 1	[-]
R	+24V Monitor II	[I]
S	Spare 2	[-]
T	Channel 13 Red	[I]
U	Start-Delay Relay Closed (open during Start Delay period)	[O]
V	Channel 10 Red	[I]
W	Channel 14 Red	[I]
X	Channel 15 Red	[I]
Y	Channel 16 Red	[I]
Z	Channel 3 Red	[I]
a	Red Enable	[I]
b	Spare 3	[-]
c	Local Flash Status	[I]

Type 12 Connector-A Pin Terminations

Pin	Function	I/O
A	AC Line	[I]
B	Output Relay 1 Open (closes when fault occurs)	[O]
C	Output Relay 2 Closed (opens when fault occurs)	[O]
D	Channel 12 Green	[I]
E	Channel 11 Green	[I]
F	Channel 10 Green	[I]
G	Channel 9 Green	[I]
H	Channel 8 Green	[I]
J	Channel 7 Green	[I]
K	Channel 6 Green	[I]
L	Channel 5 Green	[I]
M	Channel 4 Green	[I]
N	Channel 3 Green	[I]
P	Channel 2 Green	[I]
R	Channel 1 Green	[I]
S	+24 Monitor I	[I]
T	Logic Ground	[I]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 12 Connector-A Pin Terminations

Pin	Function	I/O
U	Earth Ground	[I]
V	AC Neutral	[I]
W	Output Relay 1 Common	[I]
X	Output Relay 2 Common	[I]
Y	Channel 12 Yellow	[I]
Z	Channel 11 Yellow	[I]
a	Channel 10 Walk	[I]
b	Channel 10 Yellow	[I]
c	Channel 9 Yellow	[I]
d	Channel 8 Yellow	[I]
e	Channel 7 Yellow	[I]
f	Channel 6 Yellow	[I]
g	Channel 5 Yellow	[I]
h	Channel 3 Yellow	[I]
i	Channel 3 Walk	[I]
j	Channel 2 Yellow	[I]
k	Channel 1 Yellow	[I]
m	Controller Voltage Monitor	[I]
n	+24V Monitor Inhibit	[I]
p	Output Relay 1 Closed (opens when fault occurs)	[O]
q	Output Relay 2 Open (closes when fault occurs)	[O]
r	Channel 12 Walk	[I]
s	Channel 11 Walk	[I]
t	Channel 9 Walk	[I]
u	Channel 8 Walk	[I]
v	Channel 7 Walk	[I]
w	Channel 5 Walk	[I]
x	Channel 4 Yellow	[I]
y	Channel 2 Walk	[I]
z	Channel 1 Walk	[I]
AA	Spare 1	[-]
BB	Reset	[I]
CC	Cabinet Interlock A	[I]
DD	Cabinet Interlock B	[O]
EE	Channel 6 Walk	[I]
FF	Channel 4 Walk	[I]
GG	Spare 2	[-]
HH	Type Select	[I]

Type 12 Connector-B Pin Terminations

Pin	Function	I/O
A	AC Line	[I]
B	Start-Delay Relay Common	[I]
C	Start-Delay Relay Open (closes during Start Delay period)	[O]
D	Channel 12 Red	[I]
E	Channel 11 Red	[I]
F	Channel 9 Red	[I]
G	Channel 8 Red	[I]
H	Channel 7 Red	[I]
J	Channel 6 Red	[I]
K	Channel 5 Red	[I]
L	Channel 4 Red	[I]
M	Channel 2 Red	[I]
N	Channel 1 Red	[I]
P	Spare 1	[-]
R	+24V Monitor II	[I]
S	Spare 2	[-]
T	Channel 13 Red (Type 16 only)	[I]
U	Start-Delay Relay Closed (open during Start Delay	[O]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Type 12 Connector-B Pin Terminations

Pin	Function	I/O
	period)	
V	Channel 10 Red.....	[I]
W	Channel 14 Red (Type 16 only)	[I]
X	Channel 15 Red (Type 16 only)	[I]
Y	Channel 16 Red (Type 16 only)	[I]
Z	Channel 3 Red.....	[I]
a	Red Enable	[I]
b	Spare 3	[-]
c	Local Flash Status	[I]

Connector-B pins: S, T, W, X, Y are called out as spare pins in TS 1-1989. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Open contacts of the **Output** relay are the contacts which are open when the MMU is in the no conflict state and all voltages are sufficient for proper operation of the CA. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

4.3.3 Inputs

4.3.3.1 AC Line

The over-current protected side of 120 volt AC 60 hertz source. This input shall be employed to generate the voltages required to operate the monitoring logic.

The MMU shall have a front panel mounted over-current protection device in the 120 volt AC input to the unit.

4.3.3.2 AC Neutral

The unfused and unswitched return side of 120 volt AC 60 hertz power source taken from the neutral output of AC power source. This input shall be the reference signal for all field terminal voltage sensing inputs. This input shall not be connected to **Logic Ground** or **Earth Ground** within the unit.

4.3.3.3 Earth Ground

The MMU shall have an input terminal providing an independent connection to the chassis of the unit. This input shall not be connected to the **Logic Ground** or **AC Neutral** within the unit.

4.3.3.4 Logic Ground

A voltage reference point and current return for the **Reset** input, **Controller Voltage Monitor** input, **+24V Monitor I** input, **+24V Monitor II** input, **Type Select** input, **+24V Monitor Inhibit** input, and **Port 1 Disable** input logic circuits. This termination shall not be connected to either the **AC Neutral** or **Earth Ground** within the unit.

4.3.3.5 +24V Monitor Dc Inputs

Two +24 volt DC inputs are monitored to assure proper +24 volt DC levels.

4.3.3.6 Control Inputs

The **Reset** input, **Controller Voltage Monitor** input, **+24V Monitor Inhibit** input, **Type Select** input , **Local Flash Status** input, and **Port 1 Disable** input are logic level inputs and shall conform to the requirements of 3.3.5.1.1. The MMU shall respond to these inputs as indicated in 4.4.9, 4.4.8, 4.4.7, 4.3.3.10, and 4.4.6.

4.3.3.7 Cabinet Interlock

The MMU shall have two terminals internally connected (#22AWG minimum jumper) to indicate the presence of the unit to the external circuitry. These terminals shall be identified as **Cabinet Interlock A** and **Cabinet Interlock B**.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4.3.3.8 Field Terminals

Type 16—Three inputs shall be provided for each channel to permit the monitoring of voltages at the **Green/Walk**, **Yellow**, and **Red/Don't Walk** signal field terminals. The unit shall be designed so that it shall not be necessary to terminate unused **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** signal sensing inputs when the impedance to AC Line of each of these inputs is less than the equivalent of 1500 picofarads (pF) between the input and AC Line as measured at the input of the unit.

Type 12—Four inputs shall be provided for each channel to permit the monitoring of voltages at the **Green**, **Yellow**, **Red**, and **Walk** signal field terminals. The unit shall be designed so that it shall not be necessary to terminate unused **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** signal sensing inputs when the impedance to AC Line of each of these inputs is less than the equivalent of 1500 picofarads (pF) between the input and AC Line as measured at the input of the unit.

A **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** signal input shall be sensed when it exceeds 25 volts RMS AC and a signal input shall not be sensed when it is less than 15 volts RMS AC. Signals between 15 and 25 volts RMS AC may or may not be sensed. Both positive and negative half wave rectified signals shall be sensed. The RMS measurement shall be made over a minimum period of at least two cycles.

A **Red/Don't Walk** signal input shall require the presence of 60 $\pm$ 10 volts RMS AC at the field terminal to satisfy the requirements of a **Red/Don't Walk** signal indication. Both positive and negative half wave rectified signals shall be sensed. The RMS measurement shall be made over a minimum period of at least two cycles.

A half wave rectified 60 Hz sinusoid of 50 volts peak or more on a **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** input is equivalent to 25 volts RMS AC or more. A half wave rectified 60 Hz sinusoid of 30 volts peak or less on a **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** input is equivalent to 15 volts RMS AC or less. A half wave rectified 60 Hz sinusoid of 140 volts peak or more on a **Red/Don't Walk** input is equivalent to 70 volts RMS AC or more. A half wave rectified 60 Hz sinusoid of 100 volts peak or less on a **Red/Don't Walk** input is equivalent to 50 volts RMS AC or less. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

When the circuit connected to the sensing input of the unit exhibits high impedance characteristics such as caused by dimmers or burned out lamps, it may be necessary to place a low impedance device external to the unit between the unit input and **AC Neutral**. See 6.2.4. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

All unused **Red/Don't Walk** signal inputs shall be terminated to AC Line. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

4.3.3.9 Red Enable

The presence of the proper voltage at this terminal enables the MMU to detect the absence of voltage on all field signal inputs of a channel. The absence of the proper voltage inhibits the detection of the absence of voltage on all field signal inputs of a channel. This input shall be considered enabled when the input voltage exceeds 89 volts RMS AC at the **Red Enable** input. This function shall not be considered enabled when the input voltage is less than 70 volts RMS AC at the **Red Enable** input. Signals between 70 and 89 volts RMS AC may or may not enable the detection of the absence of voltage on all field signal inputs of a channel.

The presence of the proper voltage at this terminal also enables Minimum Yellow Change/Red Clearance Interval Monitoring (4.4.5). The absence of the proper voltage at this terminal shall inhibit Minimum Yellow/Red Clearance Interval Monitoring.

4.3.3.10 Type Select Input

The MMU shall operate as a Type 16 with sixteen channels when the **Type Select** input is at logic **True** (**Low**) state, otherwise it shall operate as a Type 12 with twelve channels.

Type 16—Each of the sixteen channels consists of three 120 volt AC inputs: **Green/Walk**; **Yellow**; and **Red/Don't Walk**.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Type 12—Each of the twelve channels consists of four 120 volt AC inputs: **Green**; **Yellow**; **Walk**; and **Red**.

All Port 1 communications activity shall be disabled when the MMU is selected to operate as a Type 12.

4.3.3.11 Local Flash Status

The MMU shall transfer the Output Relay contacts to the **Conflict** state and set the Local Flash Status bit in the Type 129 Frame to **1** when this input is TRUE. At all other times Local Flash Status bit of the Type 129 Frame shall be set to **0**.

4.3.4 Outputs

4.3.4.1 Output Relay

The **Output** relay of the MMU shall have two sets of isolated Form C contacts. These relay contacts shall be capable of switching all loads in the range from 2 milliamperes at 18 volts direct current to 3 amperes at 135 volts RMS AC.

The open circuit of the **Output** relay shall be the circuits which are open when the unit is in the **No Fault** state and all voltages are sufficient for proper operation of the CA. The relay coil shall be energized in the **No Fault** state.

Prior to the MMU transferring the Output Relay contacts from the **Fault** state to the **No Fault** state, a **Transition** state with a duration of 500 milliseconds shall occur. During the **Transition** state the Output Relay contacts shall be the same as the **Fault** state and the MMU shall set Start-Up Flash Call bit in the Type 129 Frame to **1.** At all other times Start-Up Flash Call bit of the Type 129 Frame shall be set to **0**.

4.3.4.2 Start-Delay Control

The MMU shall include a means of detecting an MMU Power Failure (4.4.1). Upon restoration of AC Line following an MMU Power Failure, the **Start-Delay** relay shall maintain continuity between its common and open contacts for a period of 2.0 $\pm$ 0.5 seconds. Following this 2.0 second period of time, the **Start-Delay** relay shall cause continuity to occur between its common and closed contacts.

The **Start-Delay** relay shall have a Form C relay output contact. These relay contacts shall be capable of switching all loads in the range from 2 milliamperes at 18 volts direct current to 3 amperes at 135 volts RMS AC.

The operation of the **Start-Delay** relay normally results in initiating a start-up sequence within the CU by interrupting the AC Line input to the CU.

4.3.5 Display

The minimum indication shall be as follows:

1. Triggering of the Conflict monitoring portion of the unit.
2. Triggering of the Voltage monitoring portion of the unit.
3. Triggering of the Red monitoring portion of the unit.
4. Triggering of the Minimum Yellow Change/Red Clearance monitoring portion of the unit.
5. Timeout failure on Port 1.
6. Triggering of the microprocessor or memory monitoring portion of the unit.
7. One per channel which indicates the presence of an active **Green**, **Yellow**, or **Walk** field input on that channel during non-fault conditions. The channel indicator display shall latch when the Conflict monitor portion of the unit triggers. The channel indicator display shall show the channels which caused the Red monitoring or Minimum Yellow Change / Red Clearance monitoring portion of the unit to trigger.
8. Local Flash Status input is TRUE.

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The displays specified in 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 shall not be reset by an MMU Power Failure and shall be retained in their latched state until the unit is reset by the activation of the front panel control or the activation of the **Reset** input. If a voltage monitor fault is non-latching, the display specified in 2 shall indicate the state of the Voltage monitoring portion of the MMU.

4.3.6 Control and Programming

The MMU shall have a front panel control for manual reset.

Programming the **Minimum Flash** time, **Minimum Yellow Change** channel disable inputs, **+24 Volt Latch** input, and **CVM Latch** input shall be accomplished through the use of soldered wire jumpers on an interchangeable **Programming Card** (Figure 4-1).

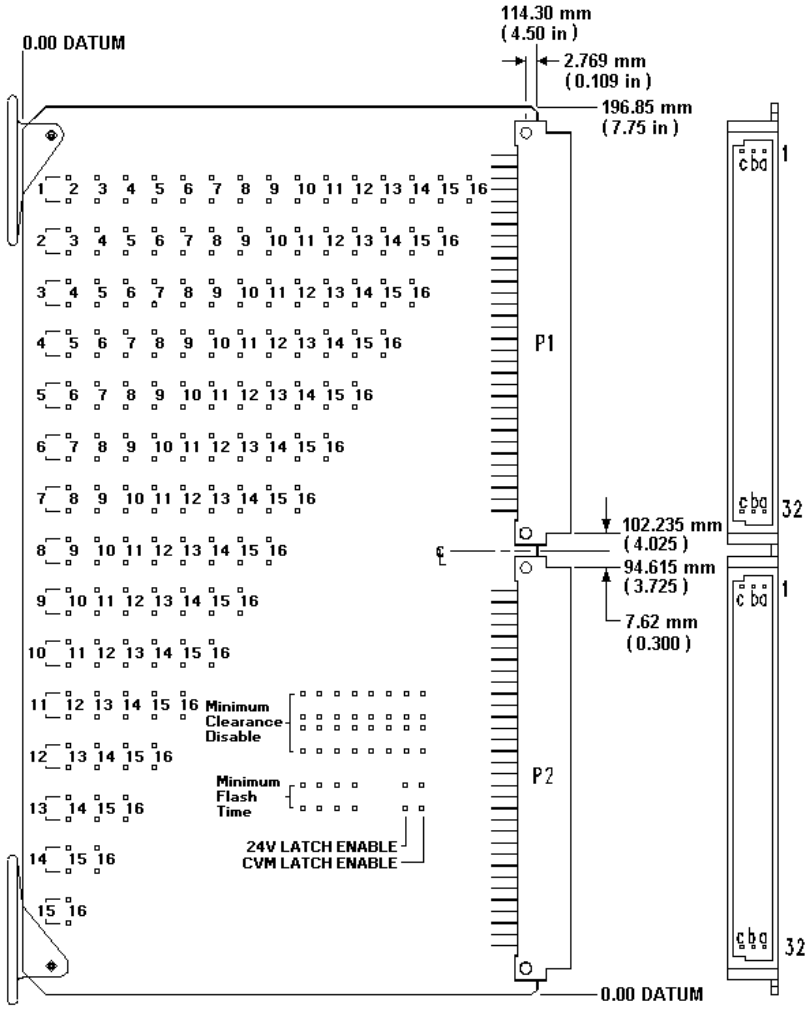


Figure 4-1
PROGRAMMING CARD

NOTES:
1. All dimensions are in metric.
2. Tolerances: x.xx = ±0.254 mm; x.xxx = ± 0.127 mm
3. Printed Circuit Board thickness: 1.60 mm
4. The 94.615 mm & 102.235 mm dimensions are to the center of connector mounting holes.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4.3.6.1 Minimum Flash Programming

The **Programming Card** shall have four pairs of 1.09 mm (0.043 in.) diameter holes for programming jumpers. One hole of each pair shall be connected to the common pin #32 on rows A and B and C on each connector. The four jumper hole pairs shall be logically labeled for easy identification of the jumper holes in binary weighted fashion. A soldered wire jumper in a jumper hole pair shall add that designated input value to the binary weighted sum plus one.

4.3.6.2 Minimum Yellow Change Channel Disable Programming

The **Programming Card** shall have 16 pairs of 1.09 mm (0.043 in.) diameter holes for programming jumpers. One hole of each pair shall be connected to the common pin #32 on rows A and B and C on each connector. The 16 jumper hole pairs shall be logically labeled for easy identification of the channel numbers. A soldered wire jumper in a jumper hole pair shall disable Minimum Yellow Change monitoring for that channel.

4.3.6.3 Voltage Monitor Latch Programming

The **Programming Card** shall have two pairs of 1.09 mm (0.043 in.) diameter holes for programming jumpers. One hole of each pair shall be connected to the common pin #32 on rows A and B and C on each connector. The two jumper hole pairs shall be logically labeled for easy identification of the **+24 Volt Latch** input and **CVM Latch** input. A soldered wire jumper in a jumper hole pair shall cause these fault conditions to be latched.

4.3.7 Compatibility Programming

The MMU is fully programmable and shall require programming action to provide compatibility between channels.

Programming is accomplished through the use of soldered wire jumpers on an interchangeable **Programming Card** (Figure 4-1). The interchangeable **Programming Card** may be used with an MMU operating in either Type 16 or Type 12 mode.

The **Programming Card** shall plug into the MMU through a slot in the front panel. The MMU shall provide card guides to ease the insertion of the **Programming Card**. The **Programming Card** shall be provided with card ejectors, Stanford Applied Engineering part number 6100 or equivalent, to ease the removal of the **Programming Card**.

The edge of the **Programming Card** shall be flush with the surface of the front panel when it is properly seated in the program card slot of the MMU.

The **Programming Card** shall meet the requirements for all printed circuit boards described in The **Programming Card** shall be provided with two male connectors with the following requirements:

1. Each connector having 96 positions in a 3-row contact arrangement with 32 contacts per row on a 2.54 mm (0.1 in.) contact grid.
2. Each connector shall conform to DIN 41612, series C.
3. Each connector shall be positioned with pin 1 located at the top.

The **Programming Card** shall have 120 pairs of 1.09 mm (0.043 in.) diameter holes for programming jumpers. One hole of each pair shall be connected to the common pin #32 on rows A, B, and C on each connector. The 120 jumper hole pairs shall be logically labeled for easy identification of the jumper holes by channel pairs. A soldered wire jumper in a jumper hole pair shall define a pair of channels as permissive or compatible.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4.3.7.1 Connector P1 Programming Card Pin Connections

Pin	Connector P1 Row A Channel Pair	Row B Channel Pair	Row C Channel Pair
1	1-2	1-3	1-4
2	1-5	1-6	1-7
3	1-8	1-9	1-10
4	1-11	1-12	1-13
5	1-14	1-15	1-16
6	2-3	2-4	2-5
7	2-6	2-7	2-8
8	2-9	2-10	2-11
9	2-12	2-13	2-14
10	2-15	2-16	3-4
11	3-5	3-6	3-7
12	3-8	3-9	3-10
13	3-11	3-12	3-13
14	3-14	3-15	3-16
15	4-5	4-6	4-7
16	4-8	4-9	4-10
17	4-11	4-12	4-13
18	4-14	4-15	4-16
19	5-6	5-7	5-8
20	5-9	5-10	5-11
21	5-12	5-13	5-14
22	5-15	5-16	6-7
23	6-8	6-9	6-10
24	6-11	6-12	6-13
25	6-14	6-15	6-16
26	7-8	7-9	7-10
27	7-11	7-12	7-13
28	7-14	7-15	7-16
29	8-9	8-10	8-11
30	8-12	8-13	8-14
31	8-15	8-16	9-10
32	Common	Common	Common

4.3.7.2 Connector P2 Programming Card Pin Connections

Pin	Connector P2 Row A Channel Pair	Row B Channel Pair	Row C Channel Pair
1	9-11	9-12	9-13
2	9-14	9-15	9-16
3	10-11	10-12	10-13
4	10-14	10-15	10-16
5	11-12	11-13	11-14
6	11-15	11-16	12-13
7	12-14	12-15	12-16
8	13-14	13-15	13-16
9	14-15	14-16	15-16
10	MYCD-1	MYCD-2	MYCD-3
11	MYCD-4	MYCD-5	MYCD-6
12	MYCD-7	MYCD-8	MYCD-9
13	MYCD-10	MYCD-11	MYCD-12
14	MYCD-13	MYCD-14	MYCD-15
15	MYCD-16	Reserved	Reserved
16	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
17	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
18	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
19	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
20	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
21	Minimum Flash b8	Minimum Flash b4	Minimum Flash b2

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

	Connector P2		
	Row A	Row B	Row C
Pin	Channel Pair	Channel Pair	Channel Pair
22	Minimum Flash b1	24V Latch Enable	CVM Latch Enable
23	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
24	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
25	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
26	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
27	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
28	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
29	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
30	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
31	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
32	Common	Common	Common

NOTE—MYCD-n refers to Minimum Yellow Change Disable input for channel n

4.4 FUNCTIONS

4.4.1 MMU Power Failure

The MMU shall respond to a **Power Failure** by entering into a non-latching flash state. The MMU shall respond to a **Power Failure** whether it is the result of overcurrent protection device operation, failure of the MMU power supply, or absence of proper operating AC Line as defined below.

A proper operating AC Line input shall be considered to be **On** if the voltage level is greater than 98 volts RMS AC and it shall be considered to be **Off** if the voltage level is less than 89 volts RMS AC. The hysteresis from the **Off** state to the **On** state or vice versa shall be at least 3 volts RMS AC.

The MMU shall respond to a **Power Failure** as follows:

1. If the AC Line input is **Off** for 450 milliseconds or less, the MMU shall continue to operate as though the AC Line had remained **On**. The **Output** relay contacts shall not transfer to the fault condition during this interval. The **Start-Delay** relay contacts shall maintain continuity between its common and closed contacts.
2. If the AC Line input is **Off** for 500 milliseconds or more, the MMU shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. The **Start-Delay** relay contacts shall cause continuity to occur between its common and open contacts. The time interval from the start of the AC Line input being **Off** and the transfer of both relays to these states shall not exceed 525 milliseconds. Both relays shall maintain these states for the duration of the **Power Failure**.
3. If the AC Line input is **Off** for more than 450 milliseconds and less than 500 milliseconds, the MMU shall either continue to operate (4.4.1.1) or shall cause a non-latching flash state (4.4.1.2).

4.4.2 Minimum Flashing Indication

The MMU shall include a means of detecting an MMU **Power Failure** (4.4.1). The detection of an MMU **Power Failure** shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. The state of the **Output** relay contacts shall be maintained for a timed interval following restoration of power to the AC Line input. This timed interval shall be the **Minimum Flash** time. The duration of the **Minimum Flash** time shall be adjustable between the limits of 6 seconds and 16 seconds and with a maximum incremental adjustment of 1 second.

All MMU initiated flash conditions will last for the programmed **Minimum Flash** time unless terminated by the front panel reset or **Reset** input command.

4.4.3 Conflict Monitoring

When voltages on any conflicting channels are detected as concurrently active for less than 200 milliseconds, the MMU shall not transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. When voltages on any conflicting channels are detected as concurrently active for 450 milliseconds or more, the MMU

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. When voltages on any conflicting channels are detected as concurrently active for more than 200 milliseconds but less than 450 milliseconds, the MMU may or may not transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. The time interval between the beginning of the concurrently conflicting channels and the transfer of the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition shall not exceed 450 milliseconds. A status bit shall be set in the Type 129 Frame (3.3.1.4) and transmitted to the CU through Port 1.

When the MMU transfers the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition it shall cause continuity between the open (see 4.3.2.2) and common contacts of the **Output** relay. These contacts shall remain in this fault condition until the unit is reset by the activation of a front panel control or the activation of the **Reset** input.

An MMU **Power Failure** shall not reset the MMU when it has been triggered by a conflict prior to the MMU **Power Failure**.

4.4.4 Red Monitoring

The MMU shall be capable of monitoring for the absence of voltage on all of the inputs of a channel. When an absence of all signal voltage to a channel is detected for less than 700 milliseconds, the MMU shall not transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. When an absence of all signal voltage to a channel is detected for 1000 milliseconds or more, the MMU shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. When an absence of all signal voltage to a channel is detected for more than 700 milliseconds but less than 1000 milliseconds, the MMU may or may not transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. The time interval between the beginning of the absence of signal voltage on a channel and the transfer of the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition shall not exceed 1000 milliseconds. A status bit shall be set in the Type 129 Frame (3.3.1.4) and transmitted to the CU through Port 1.

Red Monitoring shall be disabled when the **Red Enable** input is not active or if the **Load Switch Flash** bit is set to **1** in the Type 0 Frame from the CU.

When the MMU transfers the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition it shall cause continuity between the open (see 4.3.2.2) and common contacts of the **Output** relay. These contacts shall remain in this fault condition until the unit is reset by the activation of a front panel control or the activation of the **Reset** input.

An MMU **Power Failure** shall not reset the MMU when it has been triggered by detection of absence of signal voltage on a channel prior to the MMU **Power Failure**.

4.4.5 Minimum Yellow Change / Red Clearance Interval Monitoring

4.4.5.1 Yellow Plus Red Interval

The MMU shall verify that the Yellow Change plus Red Clearance interval between the end of an active **Green** signal and the beginning of the next conflicting **Green** signal is at least 2.7 $\pm$ 0.1 seconds. When the minimum Yellow Change plus Red Clearance interval is not satisfied, the MMU shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. A status bit shall be set in the Type 129 Frame (3.3.1.4) and transmitted to the CU through Port 1.

4.4.5.2 Yellow Change Interval

The MMU shall verify that the Yellow Change interval is at least 2.7 $\pm$ 0.1 seconds. When the minimum Yellow Change interval is not satisfied, the MMU shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. A programming means shall be provided on the programming card to disable Minimum Yellow Change interval monitoring on a per channel basis.

Minimum Yellow Change/Red Clearance Interval (4.4.5.1 and 4.4.5.2) monitoring shall be disabled when the **Red Enable** input is not active.

When the MMU transfers the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition it shall cause continuity between the open (see 4.3.2.2) and common contacts of the **Output** relay. These contacts shall remain in this fault condition until the unit is reset by the activation of a front panel control or the activation of the **Reset** input.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

An MMU **Power Failure** shall not reset the MMU when it has been triggered by detection of fault prior to the MMU **Power Failure**.

4.4.6 Port 1 Timeout

The MMU shall transfer the **Output Relay** contacts to the **Fault** state when a Type 0 Frame (see 3.3.1.4) has not been received from the CU for 300 milliseconds.

When receipt of a Type 0 Frame again occurs, the MMU shall transfer the **Output Relay** contacts to the **No Fault** state except when three Port 1 timeouts have occurred in a calendar day. The MMU shall not exit this Third Timeout state prior to user interaction (front panel control or activation of the **Reset** input) or AC power being removed and reapplied.

A status bit shall be set to **1** in the Type 129 Frame (3.3.1.4) when the Output Relay Fault state was caused by a Port 1 Timeout.

A user interaction shall reset Port 1 Timeout counts to zero. AC power interruptions shall not reset this count and the next Port 1 Timeout in the same calendar day or 24 hour period shall enter the Third Timeout state.

A Port 1 Timeout failure during the programmed **Minimum Flash** time or during an MMU **Power Failure** shall not cause a latched fault condition. The Port 1 Timeout function shall be disabled if the **Port 1 Disable** input is at a **True** (**Low**) state or the MMU is selected to operate as a Type 12 (see 4.3.3.10).

4.4.7 Voltage Monitoring

The MMU shall include the capability of monitoring two **+24** volt direct current sources applied to its **+24 Volt Monitor** inputs. Absence of the proper voltage level at either of the inputs shall cause the unit to transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. Restoration of all proper voltage levels shall reset the **Voltage Monitoring** portion of the MMU. A +24 volt DC failure during the programmed **Minimum Flash** time or during an MMU **Power Failure** shall not cause a fault condition.

A programming means shall be provided on the programming card to cause +24 volt failures to latch in the fault condition until the unit is reset by the activation of the front panel control or the activation of the **Reset** input. A latched +24 volt DC failure shall not be reset by an MMU **Power Failure**.

4.4.7.1 Volt Direct Current Supply Monitor

A voltage greater than +22 volts DC applied to both of the **+24 Volt Monitor** inputs shall be recognized by the MMU as adequate for proper operation of the CA. A voltage less than +18 volts DC applied to either of the **+24 Volt Monitor** inputs shall be recognized by the MMU as inadequate for proper operation of the CA. Voltages between +22 volts DC and +18 volts DC may or may not be considered inadequate for proper operation of the CA.

When a **+24 Volt Monitor** input is detected as inadequate for less than 125 milliseconds, the MMU shall not transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. When a **+24 Volt Monitor** input is detected as inadequate for more than 175 milliseconds, the MMU shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. When a **+24 Volt Monitor** input is detected as inadequate for more than 125 milliseconds but less than 175 milliseconds, the MMU may or may not transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. The time interval between the beginning of the inadequate voltage level and the transfer of the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition shall not exceed 450 milliseconds. A status bit shall be set in the Type 129 Frame (3.3.1.4) and transmitted to the CU through Port 1.

If only one +24 volt direct current supply is monitored, the two **+24 Volt Monitor** inputs should be jumpered and connected to that +24 volt direct current supply. Over the voltage range of 0 to +30 volts direct current the maximum current **In** or **Out** of the **+24 Volt Monitor** input terminals shall be less than 10 milliamperes. The input impedance of these terminals shall not exceed 11K ohms to **Logic Ground**. The surge impedance shall not be less than 100 ohms.

4.4.7.2 Volt Monitor Inhibit Input

Application of a **TRUE** (**Low**) state to this input shall inhibit the operation of the +24 Volt Monitor.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4.4.8 Controller Voltage/Fault Monitor Input

The MMU shall include an input from the CU **(Controller Unit Voltage Monitor** (CVM) or **Fault Monitor** output). When a **True** (**Low**) state is absent for less than 125 milliseconds, the MMU shall not transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. When a **True** (**Low**) state is absent for more than 175 milliseconds, the MMU shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. When a **True** (**Low**) state is absent for more than 125 milliseconds but less than 175 milliseconds, the MMU may or may not transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. The time interval between the beginning of the absence of a **True** (**Low**) state and the transfer of the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition shall not exceed 450 milliseconds. A status bit shall be set in the Type 129 Frame (3.3.1.4) and transmitted to the CU through Port 1. A CVM failure during the programmed **Minimum Flash** time or during an MMU **Power Failure** shall not cause a fault condition.

A programming means shall be provided on the programming card to cause CVM failures to latch in the fault condition until the unit is reset by the activation of the front panel control or the activation of the **Reset** input. A latched CVM failure shall not be reset by an MMU **Power Failure**.

4.4.9 Reset

Activation of the front panel control for manual reset or the **Reset** input shall cause the two Form C **Output** relay contacts to transfer to the no-fault condition. The MMU shall remain in the no-fault condition only if there are no existing faults and all input voltages are at proper operating levels.

Each activation of the front panel control for manual reset or the **Reset** input shall cause a one time reset input to the MMU. A continuously activated front panel manual reset or **Reset** input shall not prevent the MMU from monitoring any fault conditions and/or transferring the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition. The front panel manual reset or **Reset** input must be removed and reapplied to activate a new reset input to the MMU.

The only intended purpose for the **Reset** input is to facilitate bench testing of the MMU. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

4.5 DIAGNOSTICS

The MMU shall be provided with a resident series of self-check diagnostic capabilities.

4.5.1 Memory

The MMU shall contain provisions to verify all memory elements on power up. When a fault is detected, the **Output** relay contacts shall remain in the fault condition. Failure of any of these diagnostics may result in a status bit being set in the Type 129 Frame (3.3.1.4) and transmitted to the CU through Port 1.

As a minimum, the following memory diagnostics shall be performed:

1. RAM Diagnostic—This test shall verify that all RAM elements are operating correctly. Patterns shall be written to RAM. Each Write shall be followed by a Read to verify that it contains the pattern.
2. ROM Diagnostic—This test shall verify that the Operating System ROM(s) contain the proper program. The routine shall perform a check on each ROM and make a comparison with a preprogrammed value.
3. Non-Volatile Memory Diagnostic—This test shall verify whether the Non-Volatile Memory contains valid data and that the data has not changed since the last write. The routine shall perform a check on each Non-Volatile Memory Element and make a comparison with a preprogrammed value.

The MMU shall continue to verify ROM and Non-Volatile Memory during normal operation at a minimum rate of 1024 bytes per second. When a fault is detected, the unit shall transfer the **Output** relay contacts to the fault condition.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4.5.2 Microprocessor Monitor

The MMU shall monitor the operation of its microprocessor. As a minimum, the monitoring circuit shall receive signals or logic state transitions at least once every 50 milliseconds from the microprocessor. When the signal or logic state transition is not received for 200 milliseconds, maximum, the monitor circuit shall transfer the **Output** relay to the fault condition.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Section 5
TERMINALS AND FACILITIES

These standards define the minimum requirements for Terminals and Facilities (TF) within the cabinet. Specific construction and performance standards are established for the purpose of achieving greater utility and safety.

These standards define the performance and construction requirements of cabinet terminals and facilities that are considered to be of the attached or nonplug-in type. The emphasis is placed upon electrical requirements, cabling, supporting terminal facilities, and labeling.

Any tests or procedures referenced in this section of the standards publication are intended to facilitate type testing of equipment designs and are not intended to be performed on all production units.

5.1 DEFINITIONS

5.1.1 Cabinet

An outdoor enclosure designed for base, pedestal, or pole mounting providing protection, support, ventilation, and security for the enclosed facilities and equipment.

5.1.2 Flash Bus

An **AC Line** feed supplying flashing power to the flash-transfer device(s) from an output of a flasher.

5.1.3 Earth Ground

An electrical connection between a circuit or piece of equipment and the earth.

5.1.4 Logic Ground

Voltage reference point and current return for DC logic circuits.

5.1.5 Primary Feed

The primary feed is the 120 VAC single phase input to the cabinet from the local power distribution system. The primary feed includes the neutral conductor.

5.1.6 Signal Bus

The signal bus is the **AC Line** feed supplying power to the signal load switches from the output of the signal bus relay.

5.1.7 Terminal(s)

A terminal is an electrically conductive member serving as a junction to electrically connect two or more conductors and to also provide a means to individually connect or disconnect conductors. No more than three conductors are permitted to be connected to a terminal.

5.2 PHYSICAL

5.2.1 Material

All ferrous metal parts shall be protected against corrosion. All materials shall be moisture and fungus resistant.

5.2.2 Terminal Identification

Each electrical terminal within the facilities shall be uniquely identified and shall be referenced by the cabinet wiring diagram.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Terminal(s) nomenclature shall be adjacent to the terminal(s). The nomenclature for terminals accessible from the front of a panel shall be visible from the front of the panel. Nomenclature shall be permanent and legible.

5.2.3 Component Identification

All load switches, relays, flasher(s), circuit breakers, fuses, and switches within the facilities shall be uniquely identified, and shall be referenced on the cabinet diagram. Component nomenclature on nonplug-in devices shall be on or adjacent to the component. Component nomenclature for plug-in devices shall be adjacent to the receptacle for the device. Nomenclature shall be permanent and legible.

5.2.4 Printed Circuits

Printed circuits shall meet the requirements of 3.2.3.

Each circuit shall have current carrying capacity for handling the maximum load. The device protecting the circuit shall trip in a direct short circuit condition before the track is damaged in any manner.

If a plug-in base for a load switch, flasher, or flash relay is connected directly to a printed circuit board, the base shall be rigidly connected to another facility surface so that no mechanical strain is placed on the printed circuit solder connections when the plug-in device is inserted or removed.

Connectors used for BIUs and Detectors attached directly to a printed circuit board shall be secured to the printed circuit board by means other than the solder connections.

5.2.5 Wire

1. All wire used in controller cabinets shall be copper. All wire #14 to 30 AWG shall be stranded. Wires shall be sized per the ampacity ratings of Table 5-1.

Table 5-1
AMPACITY

AWG Wire Size	Ampacity Rating
30–24	0.25
22	2
20	4
18	5
16	10
14	15
12	20
10	30
8	50
6	70

2. Conductors shall conform to military specification MIL-W-16878D, Electrical Insulated High Temperature Wire, type B. Conductors #14 AWG or larger shall be permitted to be UL type THHN.
3. Conductors shall not be spliced between terminations.
4. Cable may be used in lieu of individual conductors to interconnect equipment or panels within the controller cabinet. The cable shall be constructed of #28 AWG or larger conductors. Insulation shall have a voltage rating of 300 volts minimum and shall be rated for use at 105°C. Cables shall be provided with strain relief.

5.2.6 Wiring

All terminals and facilities wiring shall be neatly arranged and made secure by the use of wiring harnesses, cable sheaths, cable wraps, or raceways. All wires in a harness shall be laced or bound together.

© NEMA

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Cabling shall be routed to prevent conductors from being in contact with metal edges. Cabling shall be arranged so that any removable assembly may be removed without disturbing conductors not associated with that assembly.

5.2.7 Layout

The terminals and facilities layout shall be arranged in a manner that allow all equipment to be readily accessible.

Terminals and facilities shall be located within the cabinet as follows:

1. Terminals for CU inputs and outputs together with load switch and flasher supports shall be located on the rear portion of the cabinet.
2. Power distribution components as required by 5.4.2 shall be located on the lower right portion of the cabinet.
3. Terminals for auxiliary functions and detector loop field terminal connections shall be located on the left portion of the cabinet.
4. Load Switch Field Terminals shall be located on the lower half of the back or side of the cabinet. Terminals shall be mounted not less than 152.4 mm (6.0 in.) from the bottom of the cabinet in ground or foundation mounted cabinets. This distance shall be not less than 76.2 mm (3.0 in.) in cabinets mounted in other configurations. These terminals shall be readily accessible from the front of the cabinet.

All shelf mounted equipment shall be arranged to allow removal and replacement without the removal of adjacent equipment.

5.2.8 Load Switch and Flasher Support

At least one point of support shall be provided to the load switch or flasher within the area designated as the area of required support as shown in Figure 5-1. The load switch or flasher handle or gripping device shall be readily accessible to allow installation or removal. Flasher and load switch bases shall be mounted so that they are oriented in the manner shown in Figure 5-2 or Figure 5-3.

At least 50% of the area above and beneath the load switch or flasher, between 12.7 and 38.1 mm (0.5 and 1.5 in.) either side of the centerline of the device, shall be open to allow for the free flow of air across the load switches or flashers. There shall be no obstruction within 24.4 mm (1.0 in.) above and below the units within the open area.

5.3 INTERFACE

This standard defines TF interfaces for both Type 1 and Type 2 CUs as defined in Section 3.

5.3.1 Type 1 Controller Interface

The Type 1 TF shall utilize a Bus Interface Unit (BIU) conforming to the requirements of Section 8 for all CU input/output functions except **Controller Fault Monitor** output.

5.3.1.1 Load Switch And Flasher Positions

Wired sockets and BIUs shall be provided as a minimum in the quantities listed in Table 5-2 for the configuration selected.

It shall be possible to flash either the Yellow or Red indication on any load switch output assigned to a vehicle movement and to change from one color indication to the other by use of simple tools without the need to unsolder or resolder connections. All flash change means shall be readily accessible from the cabinet door opening.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 5-2
TYPE 1 CONFIGURATIONS

Config	Load Sw. Sockets	Flash Relay Sockets	Flasher Sockets	TF BIUs Required	Detector Rack Type	MMU Type
1	4	2	1	1	1	16
2	8	4	1	1	1	16
3	12	6	1	2	2	16
4	16	6	1	2	2	16

5.3.1.2 Input/Output Terminals

As a minimum terminals shall be provided for the input/output signals listed in Table 5-3 for the TF configurations indicated.

Table 5-3
INPUT / OUTPUT TERMINALS

Input Functions	Terminals and Facilities Configurations 1	2	3	4
1. Stop Time Ring 1	X	X	X	X
2. Stop Time Ring 2			X	X
3. Call To Nonactuated I	X	X	X	X
4. Walk Rest Modifier	X	X	X	X
5. Manual Control Enable	X	X	X	X
6. Interval Advance	X	X	X	X
7. External Minimum Recall	X	X	X	X
8. External Start	X	X	X	X
9. Test Input A	X	X	X	X
10. Test Input B	X	X	X	X
11. Preempt 1 Input	X	X	X	X
12. Preempt 2 Input	X	X	X	X
13. Preempt 3 Input			X	X
14. Preempt 4 Input			X	X
15. Automatic Flash	X	X	X	X
16. Dimming Enable	X	X	X	X
17. TBC ON Line	X	X	X	X
Output Functions				
1. TBC Auxiliary # 1 Output	X	X	X	X
2. TBC Auxiliary # 2 Output	X	X	X	X
3. TBC Auxiliary # 3 Output			X	X
4. Preempt 1 Output	X	X	X	X
5. Preempt 2 Output	X	X	X	X
6. Preempt 3 Output			X	X
7. Preempt 4 Output			X	X
8. Fault Monitor	X	X	X	X

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

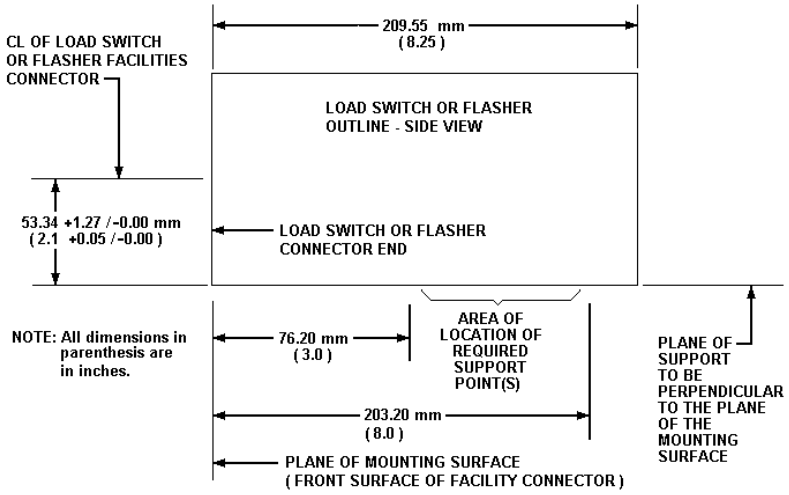
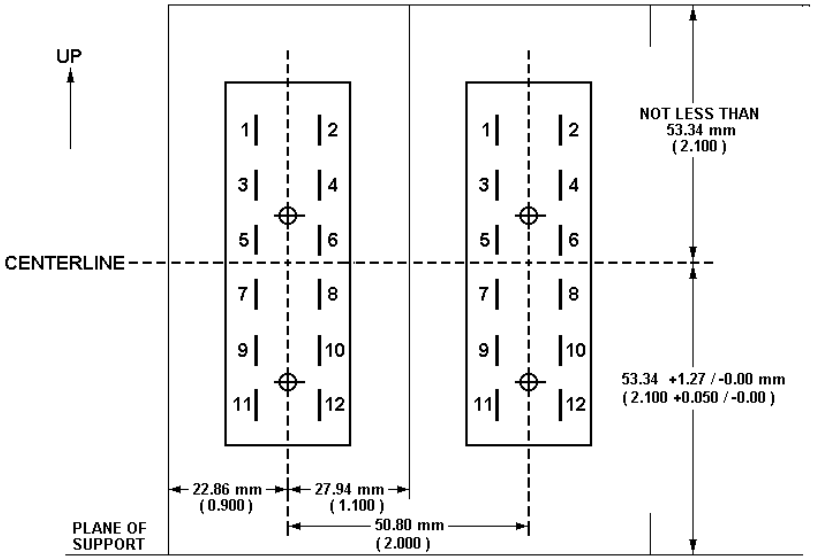


Figure 5-1
LOAD SWITCH OR FLASHER SUPPORT



NOTE: All dimensions in parenthesis are in inches.

Figure 5-2
FRONT VIEW—LOAD SWITCH SUPPORT DIMENSIONS

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

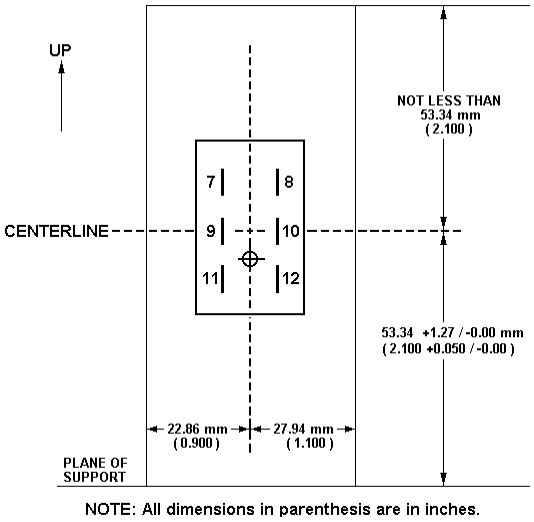


Figure 5-3
FRONT VIEW—FLASHER SUPPORT DIMENSIONS

5.3.1.3 Power and Control Terminals

Terminals shall be provided for each of the following functions:

AC Line
AC Neutral
Earth Ground
Controller Power
Power Supply Power
Logic Ground
+12 VDC
+24 VDC
12 VAC
Line Frequency Reference

5.3.1.4 BIU Interface

5.3.1.4.1 BIU Rack

BIU rack(s) shall be provided to accommodate at a minimum the number of BIUs listed in Table 5-2 for the configuration selected.

The BIU rack design shall accommodate BIU units as defined in Section 8. A dual row 64 pin female DIN 41612 Type B connector shall be provided for each BIU rack position. Card guides shall be provided for both edges of the BIU (reference **Figure 8-1**). Each BIU rack position shall be labeled with the BIU number corresponding to the associated BIU functions. The BIU address pins for each BIU rack position connector shall be connected to correspond to the BIU number as shown in Table 5-4.

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 5-4
BIU ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT

BIU NO	Function Table	BIU Address Bit 0	Bit 1	Bit 2	Bit 3
1	Table 5-5	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
2	Table 5-6	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
3	Table 5-7	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF
4	Table 5-8	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
5	Reserved	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
6	Reserved	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
7	Spare	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
8	Spare	ON	ON	ON	OFF

Voltage Levels: OFF = Not Connected
ON = Connected to Logic Ground

At least 30% of the area above and beneath each BIU shall be open to allow for the free flow of air through the BIU rack. There shall be no obstruction within 25.4 mm (1.0 in.) above and below the BIU rack within the open area.

5.3.1.4.2 BIU Input/Output Functions

The TF BIU address inputs shall control the assignment of input/output functions to the various BIUs as shown in Table 5-5 through Table 5-8. Signal assignments shown correspond to the requirements of both actuated and pretimed controllers. Signals not required by a pretimed controller shall be considered as reserved.

Table 5-5
BIU 1 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Output 1	Load Switch 1 Red Driver
Output 2	Load Switch 1 Yellow Driver
Output 3	Load Switch 1 Green Driver
Output 4	Load Switch 2 Red Driver
Output 5	Load Switch 2 Yellow Driver
Output 6	Load Switch 2 Green Driver
Output 7	Load Switch 3 Red Driver
Output 8	Load Switch 3 Yellow Driver
Output 9	Load Switch 3 Green Driver
Output 10	Load Switch 4 Red Driver
Output 11	Load Switch 4 Yellow Driver
Output 12	Load Switch 4 Green Driver
Output 13	Load Switch 5 Red Driver
Output 14	Load Switch 5 Yellow Driver
Output 15	Load Switch 5 Green Driver
Input / Output 1	Load Switch 6 Red Driver [O]
Input / Output 2	Load Switch 6 Yellow Driver [O]
Input / Output 3	Load Switch 6 Green Driver [O]
Input / Output 4	Load Switch 7 Red Driver [O]
Input / Output 5	Load Switch 7 Yellow Driver [O]
Input / Output 6	Load Switch 7 Green Driver [O]
Input / Output 7	Load Switch 8 Red Driver [O]
Input / Output 8	Load Switch 8 Yellow Driver [O]
Input / Output 9	Load Switch 8 Green Driver [O]
Input / Output 10	TBC Auxiliary 1 [O]
Input / Output 11	TBC Auxiliary 2 [O]
Input / Output 12	Preempt 1 Status [O]
Input / Output 13	Preempt 2 Status [O]

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 5-5
BIU 1 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Input / Output 14	Preempt 1 Detector [I]
Input / Output 15	Preempt 2 Detector [I]
Input / Output 16	Test A [I]
Input / Output 17	Test B [I]
Input / Output 18	Automatic Flash [I]
Input / Output 19	Dimming Enable [I]
Input / Output 20	Manual Control Enable [I]
Input / Output 21	Interval Advance [I]
Input / Output 22	External Minimum Recall [I]
Input / Output 23	External Start [I]
Input / Output 24	TBC ON Line [I]
Input 1	Stop Time Ring 1 (Stop Time)
Input 2	Stop Time Ring 2
Input 3	Max II Selection Ring 1
Input 4	Max II Selection Ring 2
Input 5	Force Off Ring 1 (Force Off)
Input 6	Force Off Ring 2
Input 7	Call To NA I
Input 8	Walk Rest Modifier
Opto Input 1	Pedestrian Detector 1
Opto Input 2	Pedestrian Detector 2
Opto Input 3	Pedestrian Detector 3
Opto Input 4	Pedestrian Detector 4
Opto Common	12 VAC
Data Transmit	Reserved
Data Receive	Reserved
Address Bit 0	Reference Table 5-4
Address Bit 1	
Address Bit 2	
Address Bit 3	
+24 VDC	Power Supply Interface
Logic Ground	
Earth Ground	
Line Freq. Ref.	

Reference Section 8 for BIU signal pin assignment. Signals shown in parenthesis ( ) apply only to a pretimed controller.

Table 5-6
BIU 2 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Output 1	Load Switch 9 Red Driver
Output 2	Load Switch 9 Yellow Driver
Output 3	Load Switch 9 Green Driver
Output 4	Load Switch 10 Red Driver
Output 5	Load Switch 10 Yellow Driver
Output 6	Load Switch 10 Green Driver
Output 7	Load Switch 11 Red Driver
Output 8	Load Switch 11 Yellow Driver
Output 9	Load Switch 11 Green Driver
Output 10	Load Switch 12 Red Driver
Output 11	Load Switch 12 Yellow Driver
Output 12	Load Switch 12 Green Driver
Output 13	Load Switch 13 Red Driver
Output 14	Load Switch 13 Yellow Driver

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 5-6
BIU 2 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Output 15	Load Switch 13 Green Driver
Input / Output 1	Load Switch 14 Red Driver [O]
Input / Output 2	Load Switch 14 Yellow Driver [O]
Input / Output 3	Load Switch 14 Green Driver [O]
Input / Output 4	Load Switch 15 Red Driver [O]
Input / Output 5	Load Switch 15 Yellow Driver [O]
Input / Output 6	Load Switch 15 Green Driver [O]
Input / Output 7	Load Switch 16 Red Driver [O]
Input / Output 8	Load Switch 16 Yellow Driver [O]
Input / Output 9	Load Switch 16 Green Driver [O]
Input / Output 10	TBC Auxiliary 3 [O]
Input / Output 11	Free/Coord Status [O]
Input / Output 12	Preempt 3 Status [O]
Input / Output 13	Preempt 4 Status [O]
Input / Output 14	Preempt 5 Status [O]
Input / Output 15	Preempt 6 Status [O]
Input / Output 16	Preempt 3 Detector [I]
Input / Output 17	Preempt 4 Detector [I]
Input / Output 18	Preempt 5 Detector [I]
Input / Output 19	Preempt 6 Detector [I]
Input / Output 20	Call To NA II [I]
Input / Output 21	Spare
Input / Output 22	Spare
Input / Output 23	Spare
Input / Output 24	Spare
Input 1	Inhibit Max Term Ring 1
Input 2	Inhibit Max Term Ring 2
Input 3	Local Flash Status
Input 4	MMU Flash Status
Input 5	Alarm 1
Input 6	Alarm 2
Input 7	Free (No Coord)
Input 8	Test C
Opto Input 1	Pedestrian Detector 5 (Signal Plan A)
Opto Input 2	Pedestrian Detector 6 (Signal Plan B)
Opto Input 3	Pedestrian Detector 7
Opto Input 4	Pedestrian Detector 8
Opto Common	12 VAC
Data Transmit	Reserved
Data Receive	Reserved
Address Bit 0	Reference Table 5-4
Address Bit 1	
Address Bit 2	
Address Bit 3	
+24 VDC	Power Supply Interface
Logic Ground	
Earth Ground	
Line Freq. Ref.	

Reference Section 8 for BIU signal pin assignment. Signals shown in parenthesis ( ) apply only to a pretimed controller.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Table 5-7
BIU 3 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Output 1	Timing Plan A
Output 2	Timing Plan B
Output 3	Timing Plan C
Output 4	Timing Plan D
Output 5	Offset 1
Output 6	Offset 2
Output 7	Offset 3
Output 8	Automatic Flash Status
Output 9	System Special Function 1
Output 10	System Special Function 2
Output 11	System Special Function 3
Output 12	System Special Function 4
Output 13	Reserved
Output 14	Reserved
Output 15	Reserved
Input / Output 1	Status Bit A Ring 1 [O]
Input / Output 2	Status Bit B Ring 1 [O]
Input / Output 3	Status Bit C Ring 1 [O]
Input / Output 4	Status Bit A Ring 2 [O]
Input / Output 5	Status Bit B Ring 2 [O]
Input / Output 6	Status Bit C Ring 2 [O]
Input / Output 7	Red Rest Ring 1 [I]
Input / Output 8	Red Rest Ring 2 [I]
Input / Output 9	Omit Red Clear Ring 1 [I]
Input / Output 10	Omit Red Clear Ring 2 [I]
Input / Output 11	Pedestrian Recycle Ring 1 [I]
Input / Output 12	Pedestrian Recycle Ring 2 [I]
Input / Output 13	Alternate Sequence A [I]
Input / Output 14	Alternate Sequence B [I]
Input / Output 15	Alternate Sequence C [I]
Input / Output 16	Alternate Sequence D [I]
Input / Output 17	Phase 1 Phase Omit [I]
Input / Output 18	Phase 2 Phase Omit [I]
Input / Output 19	Phase 3 Phase Omit [I]
Input / Output 20	Phase 4 Phase Omit [I]
Input / Output 21	Phase 5 Phase Omit [I]
Input / Output 22	Phase 6 Phase Omit [I]
Input / Output 23	Phase 7 Phase Omit [I]
Input / Output 24	Phase 8 Phase Omit [I]
Input 1	Phase 1 Hold
Input 2	Phase 2 Hold
Input 3	Phase 3 Hold
Input 4	Phase 4 Hold
Input 5	Phase 5 Hold
Input 6	Phase 6 Hold
Input 7	Phase 7 Hold
Input 8	Phase 8 Hold
Opto Input 1	Timing Plan A
Opto Input 2	Timing Plan B
Opto Input 3	Timing Plan C
Opto Input 4	Timing Plan D
Opto Common	Interconnect Common
Data Transmit	Reserved
Data Receive	Reserved
Address Bit 0	Reference Table 5-4
Address Bit 1	
Address Bit 2	

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Table 5-7
BIU 3 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Address Bit 3	
+24 VDC	Power Supply Interface
Logic Ground	
Earth Ground	
Line Freq. Ref.	
Reference Section 8 for BIU signal pin assignment.	

Table 5-8
BIU 4 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Output 1	Phase 1 Phase On
Output 2	Phase 2 Phase On
Output 3	Phase 3 Phase On
Output 4	Phase 4 Phase On
Output 5	Phase 5 Phase On
Output 6	Phase 6 Phase On
Output 7	Phase 7 Phase On
Output 8	Phase 8 Phase On
Output 9	Phase 1 Phase Next
Output 10	Phase 2 Phase Next
Output 11	Phase 3 Phase Next
Output 12	Phase 4 Phase Next
Output 13	Phase 5 Phase Next
Output 14	Phase 6 Phase Next
Output 15	Phase 7 Phase Next
Input / Output 1	Phase 8 Phase Next [O]
Input / Output 2	Phase 1 Check [O]
Input / Output 3	Phase 2 Check [O]
Input / Output 4	Phase 3 Check [O]
Input / Output 5	Phase 4 Check [O]
Input / Output 6	Phase 5 Check [O]
Input / Output 7	Phase 6 Check [O]
Input / Output 8	Phase 7 Check [O]
Input / Output 9	Phase 8 Check [O]
Input / Output 10	Address Bit 0 [I]
Input / Output 11	Address Bit 1 [I]
Input / Output 12	Address Bit 2 [I]
Input / Output 13	Address Bit 3 [I]
Input / Output 14	Address Bit 4 [I]
Input / Output 15	Spare
Input / Output 16	Spare
Input / Output 17	Spare
Input / Output 18	Spare
Input / Output 19	Spare
Input / Output 20	Reserved
Input / Output 21	Reserved
Input / Output 22	Reserved
Input / Output 23	Reserved
Input / Output 24	Reserved
Input 1	Phase 1 Pedestrian Omit
Input 2	Phase 2 Pedestrian Omit
Input 3	Phase 3 Pedestrian Omit
Input 4	Phase 4 Pedestrian Omit
Input 5	Phase 5 Pedestrian Omit
Input 6	Phase 6 Pedestrian Omit
Input 7	Phase 7 Pedestrian Omit

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Table 5-8
BIU 4 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Input 8	Phase 8 Pedestrian Omit
Opto Input 1	Offset 1
Opto Input 2	Offset 2
Opto Input 3	Offset 3
Opto Input 4	Spare
Opto Common	Interconnect Common
Data Transmit	Reserved
Data Receive	Reserved
Address Bit 0	Reference Table 5-4
Address Bit 1	
Address Bit 2	
Address Bit 3	
+24 VDC	Power Supply Interface
Logic Ground	
Earth Ground	
Line Freq. Ref.	
Reference Section 8 for BIU signal pin assignment.	

5.3.2 Type 2 Controller Interface

The Type 2 TF shall provide an interface to a Type 2 CU as defined in 3.3.5. The interface to the CU shall be through the connectors and input/output pin terminations defined in 3.3.5.2.

5.3.2.1 Load Switch and Flash Transfer Positions

Wired sockets shall be provided as a minimum in the quantities listed in Table 5-2 for the configuration selected. A means shall be provided to allow assigning each load switch socket to control either a vehicle, overlap, or pedestrian movement.

It shall be possible to flash either the Yellow or Red indication on any vehicle movement and to change from one color indication to the other by use of simple tools without the need to unsolder or resolder connections. All flash change means shall be accessible from the cabinet door opening without moving or disconnecting any equipment.

5.3.2.2 Interface Terminals

Terminals shall be provided for all input and output functions required by the CU input/output mode in use and the number of load switches of the selected configuration of Table 5-2.

5.3.2.3 Input/Output Mode

Terminals shall be provided for the I/O Mode Bits defined in 3.4.5.2.17 and 3.5.5.5.15. The appropriate input/output mode (0–7) shall be programmed as required by the CU application.

5.3.3 Port 1 Communication Cables

The TF shall provide terminals for connecting communication cables to interconnect the controller Port 1 signals to the BIUs and MMU. Three adjacent terminals shall be provided for each of the **Tx Data**, **Tx Clock**, **Rx Data**, **Rx Clock** signals. Sufficient terminals shall be provided to terminate the required communication cables for the selected configuration of Table 5-2. The signals from no more than three communication cables shall be connected to the same terminal.

Each communication cable shall provide twisted pairs for the **Tx Data**, **Tx Clock**, **Rx Data**, **Rx Clock** signals. The twisted pair shall use at a minimum 24 AWG stranded wire and have a characteristic

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
© NEMA
Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

impedance of 120 ohms nominal. Overall cable length shall not exceed 15 feet. The communication cable shall include an overall shield or alternately each twisted pair within the cable shall be shielded. The shield(s) shall be connected to **Earth Ground** only at the Port 1 connector (pin 12). The other end of the shield(s) shall be left floating.

Because of the transmission line characteristics required the communications cable used should be recommended by its manufacturer for EIA-485 applications. (Authorized Engineering Information)

Each communication cable connector shall be a 15 pin metal shell “D” subminiature type. The connector shall utilize male contacts with 15 millionths of an inch gold plating in the contact area. The connector shall intermate with an Amp Incorporated part number 205205-1 or equivalent and be equipped with spring latches, Amp Incorporated part number 745012-1 or equivalent. Pin connections shall be as follows:

Pin	Function
1	Twisted Pair 1 +
2	Not Used
3	Twisted Pair 2 +
4	Not Used
5	Twisted Pair 3 +
6	Not Used
7	Twisted Pair 4 +
8	Not Used
9	Twisted Pair 1 -
10	Not Used
11	Twisted Pair 2 -
12	Not Used
13	Twisted Pair 3 -
14	Not Used
15	Twisted Pair 4 -

Any communication cables provided for manufacturer specific, diagnostic, or test purposes shall correspond to the above requirements.

5.3.4 Detector Rack

The TF shall include a detector rack that accommodates as a minimum the two and four channel detector configurations shown in Table 5-9. Multiple detector racks shall be capable of being combined to support a quantity of detectors in excess of the configurations listed.

Table 5-9
DETECTOR RACK CONFIGURATIONS

Detector Rack Configuration	Detector Channels	No. of 2/4 Channel Detectors	BIU Req'd
1	8	4/2	1
2	16	8/4	1

The Type 2 CU Interface allows connecting detector outputs directly to the CU. As such the use of the detector rack is optional when using a Type 2 CU. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Pretimed CU may not require the use of detectors. As such, the detector rack is optional when using a pretimed CU. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

5.3.4.1 Dimensions

The detector rack shall be capable of being shelf mounted or in a EIA 482.6 mm (19 in.) rack (EIA Standard RS-310) and shall not exceed 152.40 mm (6.0 in.) in height and have a maximum depth of 215.90 mm (8.50 in.).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

5.3.4.2 Design

The detector rack shall provide a 44 terminal, double row, 3.962 mm (0.156 in.) contact spacing, Cinch Jones card edge connector 50-44A-30M, or equivalent centered vertically for each detector module. Connector center to center spacing shall be 30.48 mm (1.20 in.). In addition, a dual row 64 pin female DIN 41612 Type B connector centered vertically shall be provided for the Detector Rack BIU. Pin 1 for these connectors shall be located at the top of the detector rack. Card guides shall be provided on the top and bottom of the card rack for each connector position.

The BIU connector shall be the first connector in the detector rack, with all other connectors located to the right of the BIU. The detector module connectors shall be numbered sequentially from Slot 1 through Slot 8. The detector rack signals shall be interconnected to allow inserting a two channel detector in each slot and a four channel detector in each even numbered slot. Detector module outputs shall be assigned to channel numbers in pairs sequentially starting with Slot 1. Reference 6.5 for detector module pin assignments.

The detector module communication address inputs shall be connected to correspond to the connector slot number as shown in Table 5-10.

The detector communications address is intended for future use by detectors. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Table 5-10
DETECTOR MODULE COMMUNICATIONS ADDRESS

		Communications Address			
Slot	**Channels**	**Bit 0**	**Bit 1**	**Bit 2**	**Bit 3**
1	3–4	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
2	1–2	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
3	7–8	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF
4	5–6	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
5	11–12	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
6	9–10	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
7	15–16	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
8	13–14	ON	ON	ON	OFF
Voltage Levels:	OFF = Not Connected ON = Connected to Logic Ground				

At least 30% of the area above and beneath each detector shall be open to allow for the free flow of air through the detector rack. There shall be no obstruction within 25.4 mm (1.0 inches) above and below the detector rack within the open area.

The front portion of the detector rack shall be provided with a marker strip to allow identification of detector phase assignment or function.

5.3.4.3 Detector Rack BIU

The Detector Rack shall utilize a BIU conforming to the requirements of Section 8 for all detector interface functions. The detector rack BIU address inputs shall control the assignment of detector functions as shown in Table 5-11 and Table 5-12.

Table 5-11
DETECTOR RACK BIU ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT

BIU	**Detector**	**BIU Address**			
#	**Channels**	**Bit 0**	**Bit 1**	**Bit 2**	**Bit 3**

© NEMA

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 5-11
DETECTOR RACK BIU ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT

BIU	Detector	BIU Address			
#	Channels	Bit 0	Bit 1	Bit 2	Bit 3
9	1–16	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON
10	17–32	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
11	33–48	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
12	49–64	ON	ON	OFF	ON
13	Reserved	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
14	Reserved	ON	OFF	ON	ON
15	Spare	OFF	ON	ON	ON
16	Spare	ON	ON	ON	ON

Voltage Levels: OFF = Not Connected
ON = Connected to Logic Ground

Table 5-12
BIU 9 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Output 1	Detector Reset Slot 1 & 2
Output 2	Detector Reset Slot 3 & 4
Output 3	Detector Reset Slot 5 & 6
Output 4	Detector Reset Slot 7 & 8
Output 5	Reserved
Output 6	Reserved
Output 7	Reserved
Output 8	Reserved
Output 9	Reserved
Output 10	Reserved
Output 11	Reserved
Output 12	Reserved
Output 13	Reserved
Output 14	Reserved
Output 15	Reserved
Input / Output 1	Channel 1 Call [I]
Input / Output 2	Channel 2 Call [I]
Input / Output 3	Channel 3 Call [I]
Input / Output 4	Channel 4 Call [I]
Input / Output 5	Channel 5 Call [I]
Input / Output 6	Channel 6 Call [I]
Input / Output 7	Channel 7 Call [I]
Input / Output 8	Channel 8 Call [I]
Input / Output 9	Channel 9 Call [I]
Input / Output 10	Channel 10 Call [I]
Input / Output 11	Channel 11 Call [I]
Input / Output 12	Channel 12 Call [I]
Input / Output 13	Channel 13 Call [I]
Input / Output 14	Channel 14 Call[I]
Input / Output 15	Channel 15 Call [I]
Input / Output 16	Channel 16 Call [I]
Input / Output 17	Channel 1 Fault Status [I]
Input / Output 18	Channel 2 Fault Status [I]
Input / Output 19	Channel 3 Fault Status [I]
Input / Output 20	Channel 4 Fault Status [I]
Input / Output 21	Channel 5 Fault Status [I]
Input / Output 22	Channel 6 Fault Status [I]
Input / Output 23	Channel 7 Fault Status [I]
Input / Output 24	Channel 8 Fault Status [I]
Input 1	Channel 9 Fault Status

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Table 5-12
BIU 9 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT

Signal	Function
Input 2	Channel 10 Fault Status
Input 3	Channel 11 Fault Status
Input 4	Channel 12 Fault Status
Input 5	Channel 13 Fault Status
Input 6	Channel 14 Fault Status
Input 7	Channel 15 Fault Status
Input 8	Channel 16 Fault Status
Opto Input 1	Reserved
Opto Input 2	Reserved
Opto Input 3	Reserved
Opto Input 4	Reserved
Opto Common	Reserved
Data Transmit	Connected to Data Receive of each detector
Data Receive	Connected to Data Transmit of each detector
Address Bit 0	Reference Table 5-11
Address Bit 1	
Address Bit 2	
Address Bit 3	Logic Ground
+24 VDC	Power Supply Interface
Logic Ground	
Earth Ground	
Line Freq. Ref.	

Reference Section 8 for BIU signal pin assignment.

Detector functions for channels 17–64 shall be assigned to BIU number 10–12 in the same sequence as shown in Table 5-12.

The Detector Reset outputs shall be connected to pin C of both assigned slots to provide for two channel or four channel detector reset functions.

The Data Transmit and Data Receive functions are intended for future use by detectors. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

5.3.4.4 Detector Loop Connections

The channel 1 and 2 loop input pins of each detector connector position actually required for a particular application shall be connected to field terminals using twisted pairs having a minimum of 20 AWG stranded conductor wire with 19 strands. Three adjacent field Terminals shall be provided for each loop input.

Field installation practices or detector unit design may require connecting the shield of the loop lead-in cable to the third terminal. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

5.3.4.5 Power Supply Connections

The detector rack shall provide terminals or other connection means for the following power supply signals:

+12 VDC
+24 VDC
Logic Ground
Earth Ground
Line Frequency Reference

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The +12 VDC is intended to provide power only to detectors. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

5.3.5 Power Supply

The TF shall include a power supply to provide regulated DC power, unregulated AC power, and a line frequency reference for the Detector rack, BIUs, load switches, and other auxiliary equipment.

The Type 2 Controller interface provides 500 milliamps of +24 VDC power. As such the use of the cabinet power supply is optional when using a Type 2 controller. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

5.3.5.1 Dimensions

The power supply shall be capable of being shelf mounted or in an EIA 486.2 mm (19 inches) rack (EIA Standard RS-310). The power supply shall not exceed 152.40 mm (6 inch) in height and have a maximum depth of 215.90 mm (8.50 inches) including connectors, harnesses and protrusions.

5.3.5.2 Environmental Requirements

The power supply shall perform its specified functions under the environmental conditions set forth in Section 2.

5.3.5.3 Electrical Requirements

1. The power supply shall provide positive 12 $\pm$1 volts and 24 $\pm$2 volts DC power regulated over an **AC Line** voltage variation from 89 volts to 135 volts from 1/8 load to full load and unregulated 12 volts AC. The unregulated voltage shall nominally measure 12 volts with an **AC Line** voltage of 120 volts and shall be no less than 7.5 volts with an **AC Line** voltage of 89 volts.
2. Minimum average continuous current capability shall be as shown below with DC voltages having less than 0.5 volts peak-to-peak ripple:

+12 VDC	2.0 Amps
+24 VDC	2.0 Amps
12 VAC	0.250 Amps

   Voltage regulation does not have to be maintained if current exceeds values shown.

   The +12 VDC is intended to provide power only to detectors. (Authorized Engineering Information.)
3. Under full load conditions the power supply shall provide 50 milliseconds of hold up time for +12 VDC and +24 VDC upon loss of **AC Line** voltage. During the hold up period the +12 VDC shall not drop below +10.8 VDC and the +24 VDC shall not drop below +18 VDC.
4. The +12 VDC and +24 VDC outputs shall withstand a 10 millisecond 10 ampere load surge.
5. The front panel of the power supply shall include over current protection devices for the AC Line and all output voltages.
6. A line frequency output shall provide a reference to the AC Line frequency. This output shall alternate at the line frequency (nominally 60 pulses per second) and shall be **True** in phase with the positive half cycle and shall switch within 5 degrees of the zero crossing point of the **AC Line**.

   The line frequency output shall have the following characteristics:

   a. Shall be capable of providing 50 milliamperes of current in the **False** state.

   b. Current sinking capability in the **True** state shall be a minimum of 50 milliamperes.

   c. The output shall have a rise and fall time of no greater than 50 microseconds when switching a load capacitance of 10,000 picofarads.

© NEMA

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

5.3.5.4 Power Supply Inputs

5.3.5.4.1 AC Line

This shall be the current protected side of 120 VAC 60 hertz power source within the power supply.

5.3.5.4.2 AC Neutral

This shall be the unfused and unswitched side of 120 VAC 60 hertz power source taken from neutral output of AC power source. The 12 VAC power supply output shall be referenced to **AC Neutral**.

This input shall not be connected to **Logic Ground** or **Earth Ground** within the power supply.

5.3.5.4.3 Earth Ground

This input shall be electrically connected to the power supply chassis and connector shell.

This input shall not be connected to **Logic Ground** or **AC Neutral** within the power supply.

5.3.5.4.4 Pin Connections

The power supply connector shall be located on the front of the unit, have a metallic shell which is connected to the chassis ground internally and mate with an MS3106( )-18-1SW cable connector, or equivalent.

Connector pin terminations shall be as follows:

Pin	Function
A	AC Neutral
B	Line Frequency Reference
C	AC Line
D	+12 VDC
E	+24 VDC
F	Reserved
G	Logic Ground
H	Earth Ground
I	12 VAC
J	Reserved

5.3.6 Field Terminals

5.3.6.1 General

Terminals for signal heads, detectors, primary feed, and interconnections shall meet the requirements of this section, including Table 5-13.

Table 5-13
FIELD TERMINALS

Function	Type	Size	Characteristics
Signal Feeds	Screw or Compression	#10 or larger 7.93 mm (5/16 inch) minimum	10 Amps min. Shall terminate minimum of three #14 AWG wires
Detector Lead-In	Screw or Compression	#8 or larger 6.35 mm (1/4 inch) minimum	Shall terminate minimum of one #12 AWG wire
Interconnect	Screw or Compression	#6 or larger 6.35 mm (1/4 inch) minimum	Shall terminate minimum of one #12 AWG wire
Primary Feeds	Compression	Not Applicable	Shall terminate minimum of one #6 AWG wire
Earth Ground	Compression	Not Applicable	Shall terminate minimum of one #8 AWG wire

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

1. Terminal connections shall be made with slotted head screws or equivalent connecting means. Screw size shown in Table 5-13 is not applicable to compression type Terminals.
2. All materials, including screws and threaded portions, used in terminals and terminal blocks shall be nickel plated brass or stainless steel.
3. A terminal block shall be capable of withstanding without breakdown for one minute the application of a 60 Hz sinusoidal potential of 600 volts RMS applied to the terminal between live parts that are not conductively interconnected and between live parts and the surface to which the terminal block is mounted.
4. Terminal blocks shall have mechanical characteristics to properly support wiring without warping the block.

5.3.6.2 Number and Size of Terminals

1. One terminal shall be provided for each load switch output.
2. It shall be possible to terminate a minimum of 16 #14 AWG or 5 #10 AWG neutral leads.

5.3.6.3 Field Terminal Nomenclature

Field terminals shall be numbered using the following format:

1. Load Switch Field Terminals shall be labeled with the load switch number and output per the following example:

Signal	Function
Load Switch 1 Green	1G
Load Switch 1 Yellow	1Y
Load Switch 1 Red	1R

2. Detector loop field terminals shall be labeled with the letter “L” followed by the detector channel number and loop connection (A or B) per the following example:

Function	Label
Detector Channel 1 Loop	L1A & L1B
Detector Channel 2 Loop	L2A & L2B

3. Pedestrian call field terminals shall be labeled with the letters “PC” followed by the detector number per the following example:

Function	Label
Pedestrian Detector 1	PC1
Pedestrian Detector 2	PC2
Pedestrian Call Common	PC COMM

4. Preempt call field terminals shall be labeled with the letters “PE” followed by the preempt number per the following example:

Function	Label
Preempt 1 Detector	PE1
Preempt 2 Detector	PE2

5. Coordination interconnect field terminals shall be labeled as follows:

Function	Label
Timing Plan A	TPA
Timing Plan B	TPB
Timing Plan C	TPC
Timing Plan D	TPD
Offset 1	OFT1
Offset 2	OFT2

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Function	Label
Offset 3	OFT3
Interconnect Common	IC COMM

6. The AC power service field terminals shall be labeled as follows:

Function	Label
AC Line	LINE
AC Neutral	NEUTRAL
Earth Ground	EARTH

7. The system interface field terminals shall be labeled as follows:

Function	Label
Transmit 1	TX1
Transmit 2	TX2
Receive 1	RX1
Receive 2	RX2

5.3.7 Terminal Types and Practices

1. All terminals carrying 120 VAC in normal operation shall be covered unless otherwise protected by recessing or by terminal strip barriers. This includes all terminals exposed when the front door of the cabinet is open and all panels and covers are in their normal operation position.
2. All MMU input channels that can be used to monitor the maximum number of signals available in a given configuration in Table 5-2 or Table 5-9 shall be terminated. Provision shall be made to terminate any unused red monitoring inputs.
3. The MMU supply, control input and control output leads actually required to be used in a particular configuration shall be terminated.

All other points not enumerated above, including **Spare**, **Reserved**, **Manufacturers Use Only**, and **No Connection** shall not be required to be installed in the CU, MMU, or detector harness.

5.4 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

5.4.1 AC Service

The TF shall operate properly when supplied with single-phase AC power, 89–135 volts, 60 ±3 Hz.

5.4.2 Power Distribution Within Cabinet

See Figure 5-4.

5.4.2.1 Grounding System

The grounding system in the cabinet shall be divided into three separate and distinct circuits, all of which shall be connected together at a single point as shown in Figure 5-4.

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

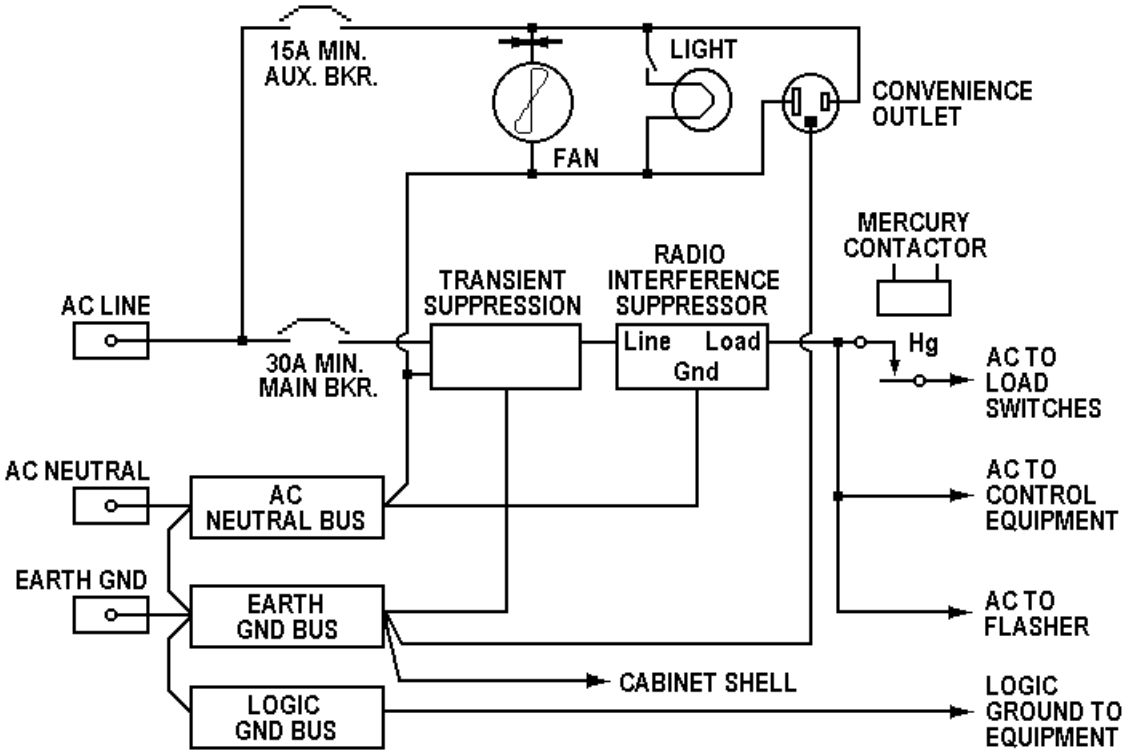


Figure 5-4
CABINET POWER DISTRIBUTION SCHEMATIC

The purpose of this requirement is to eliminate ground loops, adequately direct transients to ground, and to allow for testing of the separation between the grounding circuits by temporarily removing the jumpers. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

Field installation practices may require separating **AC Neutral** and/or **Logic Ground** from **Earth Ground** within the cabinet. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

1. The **AC Neutral Bus** is the set of terminals within the cabinet to which all of the neutral conductors are terminated. The **AC Neutral Bus** shall be a solid metallic multi-terminal strip located in close proximity to the primary feed entering the cabinet. Subsidiary neutral bus terminal strips may be located as necessary in the cabinet for use with the control equipment. Neutral terminal strip(s) shall be insulated from the cabinet.

2. The **Earth Ground Bus** is the set of terminals within the cabinet that is directly and permanently connected to the cabinet shell and the earth. The **Earth Ground Bus** shall be a solid metallic multi-terminal strip located in close proximity to the primary feed service entering the cabinet. This **Earth Ground** shall be connected to the cabinet shell in a manner that minimizes the length of the conducting path.

   It is intended that the **Earth Ground Bus** be connected to a good earth ground such as a driven ground rod or rods. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

   The **Earth Ground** connection to each unit in the cabinet shall be run separately and directly to this terminal strip or to subsidiary **Earth Ground Busses**. Each metallic connector shell on a cable carrying 120 VAC shall be connected to **Earth Ground**.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3. The **Logic Ground Bus** is that set of Terminals within the cabinet to which all **Logic Ground** conductors are terminated.

   All dc circuits shall use the **Logic Ground** as the return circuit.

5.4.2.2 Disconnecting Means

Type	Poles	Min. Amps	Interrupting Capacity
Main	1	30	5,000 amperes
Auxiliary	1	15	5,000 amperes

The rating of the main disconnect means with overcurrent protection shall be not less than 125% of the maximum anticipated continuous load. All disconnecting means when used shall be the **Trip-Indicating-Trip-Free** type.

5.4.2.3 Signal Bus

The signal bus shall be connected to the incoming **AC Line** through a signal bus mercury contactor and a overcurrent protection device. The signal bus mercury contactor shall be energized to provide power to the signal bus. The current rating of the signal bus mercury contactor shall be at least the current rating of the main overcurrent protection device.

5.4.2.4 AC Service Transient Suppression

The transient suppression device for the primary feed of the cabinet shall be connected on the load side of the cabinet overcurrent protection device as shown in Figure 5-4. The transient suppression device shall withstand a 20,000 ampere surge current with a 8x20 microsecond (time to crest x time to second halfcrest) waveform twenty times at 3-minute intervals between surges without damage or degradation to the suppressor. Output voltage must not exceed 500 volts at any time during the test.

Because the severity of naturally occurring transients is highly variable AC service transient suppression requirements may vary with the application. For further information on transient protection of traffic control equipment refer to NCHRP report 317. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

5.4.2.5 Radio Interference Suppression

Each cabinet shall be equipped with a radio interference suppressor installed at the input power point. It shall provide a minimum attenuation of 50 decibels over a frequency range of from 200 kilohertz to 75 megahertz, when used with normal installations.

The radio interference suppressor shall have a current rating equal to as a minimum the rating of the main disconnect means specified in 5.4.2.2 and be designed for operation on 120 volts, 60 hertz, single phase circuits.

The ground connection of the radio interference suppressor shall be connected only to **AC Neutral** and shall not be connected to **Earth Ground** directly.

5.4.2.6 Convenience Receptacle

A convenience receptacle shall be provided as part of the TF. The convenience receptacle shall be a duplex, three-prong, NEMA Type 5-15R grounding type outlet and shall have independent ground fault circuit protection.

5.4.2.7 Lighting Fixture

An incandescent or fluorescent light shall be provided as part of the TF.

5.4.2.7.1 Fluorescent Fixture

The fluorescent lighting fixture shall be mounted on the inside top of the cabinet near the front edge. The fixture shall be rated to accommodate a F15T8 lamp operated from a normal power factor UL or ETL listed ballast (lamp not required to be provided).

--`,,`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

5.4.2.7.2 Incandescent Fixture

The incandescent lamp receptacle shall be mounted on the inside top of the cabinet near the front edge. The receptacle shall be rated to accommodate a 100 watt medium base lamp (lamp not required to be provided).

5.4.2.7.3 Lighting Fixture Switch

The **On-Off** switch for the lighting fixture shall be either of the following:

1. A toggle switch mounted on an inside control panel, or
2. A door actuated switch that turns the light **On** when the door is open and **Off** when the door is closed.

5.4.3 Communications Transient Suppression

A transient suppressor shall be provided for the system interface communications lines when used. This suppressor shall withstand a 100 ampere 10x700 microsecond waveform 20 times at 30 second intervals between surges without damage or degradation to the suppressor. The transient surge shall be applied both line to line and line to ground. Output voltage shall not exceed 8 volts line to line or 250 volts line to ground at any time during the test.

Because the severity of naturally occurring transients is highly variable communications transient suppression requirements may vary with the application. For further information on transient protection of traffic control equipment refer to NCHRP report 317. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

5.5 CONTROL CIRCUITS

5.5.1 Auto/Flash Switch

An **Auto/Flash** switch shall be accessible to an operator when the cabinet door is open. The switch shall be rated by its manufacturer for the voltages and currents that may be expected to be present in the part of the control circuit where it is used.

The switch positions shall be labeled **Auto** and **Flash**. In the **Auto** position, this switch does not affect the normal operation of the facilities. In the **Flash** position, the signal bus relay and flash transfer relays shall be de-energized, connecting the output(s) of the flasher to the appropriate field leads and interrupting the signal bus supply to the load switches.

5.5.2 Flash Transfer Control

1. The coil of the flash transfer relay(s) shall be deenergized for flashing operation.
2. The flash transfer relay(s) shall be located in close proximity to the load switches, flasher, and signal field terminals.
3. Flash transfer relay sockets shall mate with a Cinch-Jones P2408 or equivalent. They shall be wired and space provided to accept a relay as described in 6.4, Flash Transfer Relays.

5.5.3 Malfunction Management Unit

1. Type Selection

   The type select input to the MMU shall be connected to logic ground to select Type 16 (16 channel) operation.

2. Interlock

   The facilities shall be so constructed that the intersection will revert to flashing operation if the MMU is disconnected (see Figure 5-5).

3. Red Enable

   The **Red Enable** input to the MMU shall be connected to the **AC Line** side of the signal bus relay coil (see Figure 5-5).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4. 24-Volt Monitoring

   The MMU **24V Monitor I** input shall be connected to the +24 volt feed to the load switches. The **24V Monitor II** shall be used to monitor any other +24 volt supply(s) required for safe operation of the intersection.

   If only one +24 volt power source is used in the cabinet, **24V Monitor I** and **II** shall be connected together.

5. Controller Voltage Monitor

   When using a Type 1 CU the **MMU Controller Voltage Monitor** input shall be connected to the **CU Fault Monitor** output.

   If a Type 2 CU is used, connection to the **MMU Controller Voltage Monitor** input will depend on the controller input/output mode. If mode 0 is used the **MMU Controller Voltage Monitor** input shall be connected to the **CU Controller Voltage Monitor** output. For all other modes (1–7) the **CU Fault Monitor** output shall be used.

6. Restart

   Actuation of the **Start-Delay** shall remove power from the CU and power supply.

7. Stop Time

   Stop Time shall be applied to all rings of the CU whenever the MMU is in the Fault condition (see Figure 5-5).

8. Flash on Fault

   The MMU shall place the intersection into flashing operation when in the Fault condition (see Figure 5-5).

9. Load Switch Monitoring

   Each of the MMU channels required for the application shall be wired to monitor the green, yellow, and red outputs of the associated load switch position in the TF as shown in Table 5-14.

Table 5-14
MMU CHANNEL ASSIGNMENTS

MMU Channel	Load Switch
Channel 1	Load Switch 1
Channel 2	Load Switch 2
Channel 3	Load Switch 3
Channel 4	Load Switch 4
Channel 5	Load Switch 5
Channel 6	Load Switch 6
Channel 7	Load Switch 7
Channel 8	Load Switch 8
Channel 9	Load Switch 9
Channel 10	Load Switch 10
Channel 11	Load Switch 11
Channel 12	Load Switch 12
Channel 13	Load Switch 13
Channel 14	Load Switch 14
Channel 15	Load Switch 15
Channel 16	Load Switch 16

Current interrupting devices should not be placed between the point at which the load switch output is monitored and the field connection as this may prevent the MMU from detecting the absence of a field signal if the interrupting device opens. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

When the circuit connected to the sensing input of the MMU exhibits high impedance characteristics such as an unconnected load, burned out lamp, or dimmers, it may be necessary to place a low impedance device external to the MMU between the MMU input and **AC Line**. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

All unused Red/Don't Walk signal inputs shall be terminated to **AC Line**. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

10. Local Flash Status

    The **Local Flash Status** input to the MMU shall be connected to logic ground when the **Auto-Flash** switch is in the Flash position (see Figure 5-5).

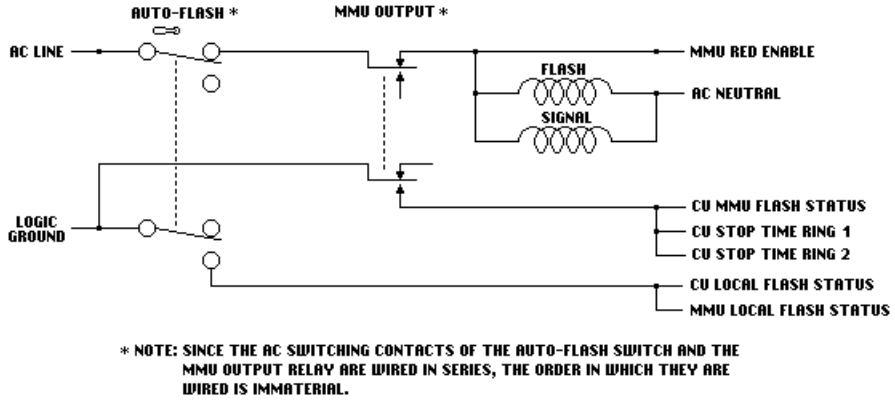


Figure 5-5
TERMINAL & FACILITIES WIRING

A T&F wired in accordance with this standard will provide a full Start-Up Flash period following the transfer of the Auto-Flash switch to the AUTO position or transfer of the MMU Output relay to the No Fault state when used with a CU and MMU developed in accordance with this standard.

Utilization of a CU or MMU developed in accordance with the TS 2-1992 in a T&F wired in accordance with this standard will NOT provide a Start-Up Flash period following the transfer of the Auto-Flash switch to the AUTO position or transfer of the MMU Output relay to the No Fault state.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Section 6
AUXILIARY DEVICES

This section defines the minimum requirements for auxiliary devices within the cabinet consisting of solid state load switches, solid state flashers, flash transfer relays, and inductive loop detector units.

6.1 DEFINITIONS

(Reserved)

6.2 THREE-CIRCUIT SOLID STATE LOAD SWITCHES

This section defines the solid state load switches which are connected between the **AC Line** power and the traffic signals. For the purpose of these standards, the term **Solid State** shall be construed to mean that the main current to the signal load is not switched by electromechanical relay contacts.

6.2.1 Physical Characteristics

1. The overall dimensions of the switch shall not exceed 222.25 mm (8.75 in.) from the surface of the connector, to the front of the unit including the handle or gripping device. The switch shall be no more than 44.45 mm (1.75 in.) in width and no more than 106.68 mm (4.20 in.) in height.
2. The switch shall intermate with a Beau-Vernitron type socket S-5412 or Cinch-Jones socket S-2412SB, or equivalent.
3. The switch shall be so constructed that its lower surface will be no more than 53.34 mm (2.100 in.) below the centerline of the connector.
4. The switch shall be so constructed that no part of it will extend more than 22.86 mm (0.900 in.) to the left and 27.94 mm (1.100 in.) to the right of the centerline of the connector as viewed from the front. See **Figure 5-2**.
5. Serviceable internal components of the load switch shall be readily accessible.
6. An enclosure suitably protected against corrosion shall be provided to enclose all electrical parts of the load switches.
7. The front panel of the load switch shall be provided with one indicator per input circuit to indicate the state of each input circuit of the load switch. The indicators shall be mounted as follows when oriented as normally mounted:
   Circuit A at the top.
   Circuit B in the middle.
   Circuit C at the bottom.
8. Material and Construction of Rigid Printed Circuit Assemblies
   a. Materials

      All printed circuit boards shall be made from NEMA (FR-4) glass-epoxy, flame retardant material, or equivalent. (See NEMA Standards Publication LI-1-1989, Industrial Laminated Thermosetting Products.) Circuit boards exceeding 50.8 mm (2 in.) in any dimension shall be at least 1.58 mm (1/16 in.) nominal thickness. Circuit boards not exceeding 50.8 mm (2 in.) in any dimension shall be at least 0.79 mm (1/32 in.) nominal thickness.

© NEMA --`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

b. Conductors

The walls of all plated-through holes shall have a minimum copper plating thickness of 0.0254 mm (0.001 in.). All circuit tracks shall have a conductivity equivalent to at least 0.0610 gm/cm^2 (2 oz/ft^2) of copper.

c. Component Identification

The unit shall be designed so that each component is identified by a circuit reference symbol. This identification shall be affixed to the printed circuit board(s), to the cover of the unit, or in an assembly drawing provided with the unit.

9. The switch shall be so constructed that personnel inserting or removing the load switch will not be exposed to parts having live voltage nor be required to insert their hands or fingers into the mounting rack.

6.2.2 General Electrical Characteristics

1. Switching capabilities shall be provided for three independent circuits in each load switch.
2. Connector pin assignments shall be as shown in Figure 6-1.

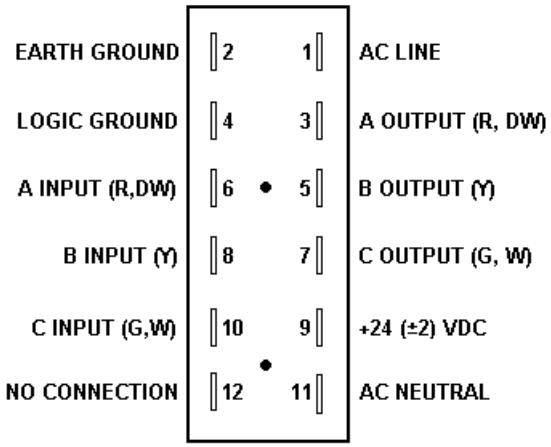


Figure 6-1
CONNECTOR PIN ASSIGNMENT

NOTES:
1. The terminal reference is a pin side view of the male connector.
2. Parenthetical notations associated with A, B, C inputs and outputs denote the normal usage of the termination with vehicle or pedestrian signals.
   R = **Red** Y = **Yellow** G = **Green**
   W = **Walk** DW = **Don't Walk**
3. Pin 4 Logic Ground is for special function use only, not to be used for normal switching circuit currents. During normal operation standard load switch functions shall not require a connection to this pin.

3. The switch input and direct current voltage input shall be so isolated from the power line that transients as described in 2.1.6 applied to the power line with a 25 watt lamp load shall not cause a destructive failure in the load switch, and shall not cause more than 0.5 volts to appear across a 10K ohm resistor connected across a switch input and the direct current voltage input. When the transients of 2.1.6.1 are applied to the load switch at a temperature of 21°C $\pm$ 6°C, they shall not cause the load switch to conduct, as measured by an oscilloscope.

© NEMA

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

4. The switch shall turn **On** within 10 degrees of the zero voltage point of the AC Line sinusoid on the first turn-on cycle. All subsequent cycles shall turn **On** within 5 degrees of the zero voltage point of the AC line sinusoid. The switch shall turn **On** within one half cycle following the application of the input signal. The switch shall turn **Off** within 5 degrees of the zero current point of the AC line sinusoid and within one half cycle following the removal of the input signal.
5. Each load switch shall have electrical isolation between all inputs (pins 6, 8, 9, and 10) and all outputs (pins 1, 3, 5, and 7) of at least 2000 volts DC and at least 100 megohms resistive.
6. **Logic Ground** shall not be connected to either **Earth Ground** or **AC Neutral** within the unit.
7. **Earth Ground** shall not be connected to either **Logic Ground** or **AC Neutral** within the unit.
8. All metal portions of the enclosure including the handle of the load switches shall be connected to **Earth Ground** within the unit.
9. The load switch shall perform all of its defined functions when supplied from a 24 $\pm$ 2 volt DC source.

6.2.3 Input Electrical Characteristics

1. All inputs shall be negative true logic which is referenced to the common of the +24 volt DC supply and which is characterized by the following:
   a. The transition zone of the input circuitry from the conducting state to the non-conducting state (and vice versa) shall occur between 6 and 16 volts.
   b. A voltage between 0 and 6 volts shall cause the output device to conduct.
   c. A voltage greater than 16 volts shall cause the output device not to conduct.
2. In absence of an input signal, the voltage at the input shall rise to the level of the +24 VDC supply when the input is connected to this supply through an external 10 K ohm pull-up resistor.
3. The load switch shall not draw more than 20 milliamperes from a +26 VDC supply unless more than one circuit is energized in which case it shall not draw more than 20 milliamperes times the number of circuits energized.
4. Each input circuit of the load switch shall have reverse polarity protection.

6.2.4 Output Electrical Characteristics

1. The output current from the load switch through a 1200 watt load when the load switch is in the OFF state shall not exceed 10 milliamperes peak at 135 volts RMS AC.
2. Each load switch output shall have a peak stand-off voltage of 500 volts or greater.
3. Each load switch output shall have a dv/dt rating of at least 100 volts per microsecond when measured at 21° C using the circuit in **Figure 2-3**.
4. Each switching circuit shall have a minimum rating of 10 amperes RMS for either a tungsten lamp load or power factor corrected gas tubing transformer loads (power factor greater than 0.8) over a voltage range of 89 to 135 volts RMS AC at 60 hertz. Additionally, each load switch shall be capable of switching currents as low as 100 milliamperes. The load switch shall be rated for 10 amperes continuous load divided between the circuits in any proportion, and additionally each circuit shall be capable of continuously conducting 10 amperes. These ratings shall be for operation in still air when the load switch is oriented as normally mounted.
5. Each load switch circuit shall be designed to switch a 1200 watt tungsten lamp load operating from a 120 volts RMS AC source for a minimum of 10 million operations.
6. Each load switch circuit shall be capable of withstanding a one second surge current of 40 amperes RMS (56.6 peak) at 60 hertz.
7. Each load switch circuit shall be capable of withstanding a one cycle surge current of 175 amperes RMS (247.5 peak) at 60 hertz while operating from a 120 volts RMS AC source.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.3 SOLID STATE FLASHERS

This section defines solid state flashers which are used to periodically interrupt a source of AC line power for the purpose of providing flashing traffic signals. For the purpose of these standards, the term **Solid State** shall be construed to mean that the main current to the signal load is not switched by electro-mechanical operated contacts.

6.3.1 Type of Flasher

Dual circuit, 15 amperes RMS per circuit.

6.3.2 Physical Characteristics

1. The overall dimensions of the flasher shall not exceed 222.25 mm (8.75 in.) from the front panel surface holding the mating connector, including the any handle or gripping device. The flasher shall be no more than 48.26 mm (1.9 in.) in width and no more than 106.68 mm (4.2 in.) high.
2. The flasher shall intermate with a Beau-Vernitron socket type S-5406 or Cinch-Jones socket S-406-SB, or equivalent.
3. The flasher shall be so constructed that its lower surface will be no more than 53.34 mm (2.100 in.) below the center line of the connector configuration.
4. The flasher shall be so constructed that no part of it will extend more than 22.86 mm (0.900 in.) to the left and 27.94 mm (1.100 in.) to the right of the centerline of the connector pin configuration as viewed from the front. See **Figure 5-3**.
5. Serviceable internal components of the flasher shall be readily accessible.
6. The flasher shall be so constructed that personnel inserting or removing the module will not be exposed to any part having live voltage nor be required to insert either their hands or fingers into the load rack.
7. An enclosure suitably protected against corrosion shall be provided to enclose all electrical parts of the flasher.
8. Material and Construction of Rigid Printed Circuit Assemblies

   a. Materials

      All printed circuit boards shall be made from NEMA (FR-4) glass-epoxy, or equivalent (see NEMA Standards Publication LI 1-1989, Industrial Laminated Thermosetting Products). Circuits boards exceeding 50.8 mm (2 in.) in any dimension shall be at least 1.59 mm (0.063 in.) nominal thickness. Circuit boards not exceeding 50.8 mm (2 in.) in any dimension shall be at least 0.79 mm (0.031 in.) nominal thickness.

   b. Conductors

      The walls of all plated through holes shall have a minimum copper plating thickness of 0.0254 mm (0.001 in.). All circuit tracks shall have a conductivity equivalent to at least 0.0610 gm/cm^2 (2 oz/ft^2) of copper. All electrical mating surfaces shall be made of non-corrosive material.

   c. Component Identification

      The unit shall be designed so that each component is identified by circuit reference symbol. This identification may be affixed to the printed circuit board(s), the cover of the unit, or in an assembly drawing provided with the unit.

9. All metal portions of the enclosure including the handle of the load switches shall be connected to **Earth Ground** within the unit.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.3.3 General Electrical Characteristics

Flashers shall have the following electrical characteristics:

1. The flashing output shall consist of two outputs each rated at 15 amperes RMS.
2. The rating of the output circuit shall be the minimum rating for a tungsten lamp or power factor corrected gas tubing transformer load over a voltage range of 60 to 135 volts RMS AC at 60 hertz and shall not be derated for operation over the ambient temperature range of -34° to +74° C (-30° to +165° F) and the humidity range as both outlined in Section 2 Environmental Requirements.
3. Input to the solid state flasher shall consist solely of the 60 hertz AC power source. This input shall supply the power for the output circuit and also provide power to the flasher logic. The flasher shall turn **On** within 10° of the zero voltage point of the AC line sinusoid on the first flash cycle (**On-Off** cycle). All subsequent cycles shall turn **On** within 5° of the zero voltage point. The flasher shall turn **Off** within 5 ° of the zero current point of the AC line sinusoid.
4. The **Flashing** voltage output shall provide not less than 50 nor more than 60 flashes per minute with an **On** period of 50 $\pm$ 5 percent.
5. The flasher output shall have a dv/dt rating of 100 volts per microsecond at 21°C (70°F), when tested as shown in **Figure 2-3**.
6. The flasher output shall have a peak stand-off voltage of 500 volts or greater at 21°C (70°F), when tested as shown in **Figure 2-3**.
7. The output current from the flasher through an 1800 watt load when the flasher is in the **Off** state shall not exceed a maximum of 10 milliamperes peak at 135 volts RMS AC.
8. The flasher shall be so designed that circuit #1 will be **On** when circuit #2 is **Off**, and vice versa. The maximum **Off** period when both circuit #1 and circuit #2 are **Off**, or the maximum period when both circuit #1 and circuit #2 are **On**, shall not exceed 17 milliseconds during the transition from **Off** to **On** and **On** to **Off**.
9. Connector pin assignments shall be as shown in Figure 6-2.

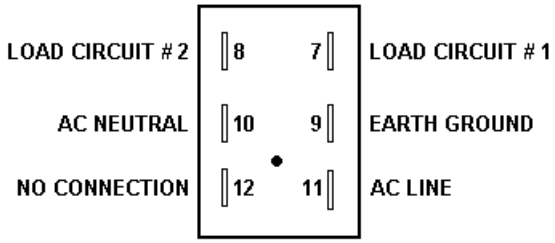


Figure 6-2
CONNECTOR PIN ASSIGNMENTS SOLID STATE FLASHER
(VIEWED—CONNECTOR END)

10. The front panel of the flasher shall provide two indicators to indicate the state of the output circuits of the flasher.
11. The flasher shall operate for a minimum of 10 million operations when switching an 1800 watt tungsten lamp operating from a 135 volts RMS AC source or an open circuit load.
12. Each flasher output circuit shall be capable of withstanding a one second surge current of 40 amperes RMS (56.6 peak) at 60 hertz.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

13. Each flasher output circuit shall be capable of withstanding a one cycle surge current of 175 amperes RMS (247.5 peak) at 60 hertz.

6.4 FLASH TRANSFER RELAYS

These standards define the minimum requirements for an interchangeable electromechanical flash transfer relay. This relay is intended to be used for transferring traffic signal circuits from the outputs of the load switches to the output(s) of a flasher.

6.4.1 Environmental Requirements

6.4.1.1 Temperature and Humidity

The relay shall maintain all of its defined functions over the temperature and humidity range of 2.1.5. Neither the protective case nor any other part shall deform when the relay is operated under full load at maximum temperature with 135 VAC continuously applied to the coil.

6.4.1.2 Vibration and Shock

The relay shall operate and maintain its physical integrity when subjected to the vibration and shock requirements of 2.1.9 and 2.1.10.

The relay contacts may momentarily change state when subjected to the vibration and shock defined above. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

6.4.1.3 Transients

The relay shall be capable of withstanding the high energy transient requirements of 2.1.8.

6.4.2 Mechanical Requirements

6.4.2.1 Enclosure

All electrical parts of the relay shall be enclosed in a transparent plastic case. This case shall protect the relay from dust, moisture, and other contamination. It shall be constructed so that the contacts and coil assembly may be viewed through the sides of the case. It shall be sufficiently rugged to permit the relay to be inserted and removed from its mating socket using the case as a handle.

6.4.2.2 Contacts And Connector

The relay shall be provided with two single-pole, double-throw (form C) contacts and mount on an eight pin spade plug base wired as shown in Figure 6-3. The spade plug base shall mate with a Cinch-Jones 2408SB socket or equivalent.

6.4.2.3 Dimensions

The relay shall not exceed the physical dimensions shown in Figure 6-3.

6.4.3 Electrical Requirements

6.4.3.1 Contact Rating

The contact points and contact arms shall be capable of operating for 30,000 cycles with 10 amperes of tungsten load per contact at 120 VAC.

6.4.3.2 Contact Material

Contact points shall be of fine silver, silver-alloy, or superior alternative material.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

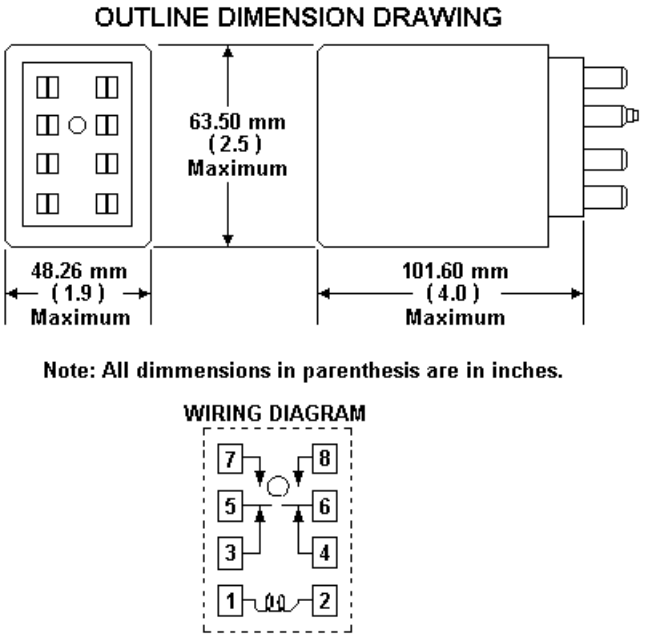


Figure 6-3
FLASH TRANSFER RELAY WIRING DIAGRAM

6.4.3.3 Coil Rating

The relay coil shall have a maximum power consumption of 10 volt-amperes at nominal line voltage and shall be designed for continuous duty from 89 to 135 VAC.

Drop out time shall not exceed 50 milliseconds after removal of power from the relay coil.

6.4.3.4 Insulation

The relay shall be capable of withstanding a voltage of 1500 volts RMS at 60 Hz applied between contacts and coil or frame. It shall be able to withstand a voltage of 600 volts RMS at 60 Hz applied between open contacts.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5 INDUCTIVE LOOP DETECTOR UNITS

Clause 6.5 responds to the need for a series of Inductive Loop Detector Units which provide inputs for traffic-actuated or traffic-responsive control, surveillance, or data collection systems. The Inductive Loop Detector Unit responds to the presence of vehicles on the roadway by relying upon the effect of the conductive mass of the vehicle on the alternating magnetic field of a loop. When a vehicle passes over the loop of wire embedded in the surface of the roadway, it reacts with the alternating magnetic field which is associated with that loop. On standard loops this reaction is a reduction in loop inductance.

These standards cover the performance and design requirements of interchangeable Inductive Loop Detector Units. A Detector Unit used with a sensor loop embedded in the surface of a roadway detects vehicles moving or standing in the detection zone of the sensor loop. The output of the Detector Unit may be used directly to provide an input to a vehicle-actuated traffic CU or provide inputs to traffic-responsive control and surveillance systems. Detector Units generate outputs indicative of vehicles passing through the sensor loop zone of detection. This output may be used for counting (volume) or for detecting presence time representative of the time that vehicles are in the sensor loop zone of detection (occupancy), or both. When two loops are placed in a lane, one downstream from the other, the time between the sequential responses of detectors attached to these loops may be used to measure speed.

6.5.1 Loop Detector Unit Definitions

6.5.1.1 Channel

Electronic circuitry which functions as a Loop Detector System.

6.5.1.2 Crosstalk

The adverse interaction of any channel of a Detector Unit with any other channel.

6.5.1.3 Detector Mode

A term used to describe the duration and conditions of the occurrence of a detector output.

6.5.1.4 Lead-In Cable

The electrical cable which serves to connect the sensor loop(s) to the input of the Detector Unit.

6.5.1.5 Loop Detector System

A vehicle detector system that senses a decrease in inductance of its sensor loop(s) during the passage or presence of a vehicle in the zone of detection of the sensor loop(s).

6.5.1.6 Loop Detector Unit

An electronic device which is capable of energizing the sensor loop(s), of monitoring the sensor loop(s) inductance, and of responding to a predetermined decrease in inductance with output(s) which indicates the passage or presence of vehicles in the zone(s) of detection.

6.5.1.7 Reset Channel

A command for the Detector Unit to calculate a new reference frequency (the frequency that the loop oscillates at when no vehicle is influencing the loop) for the channel being reset and to appropriately adjust other channel related parameters.

6.5.1.8 Reset Unit

A command for the Detector Unit to set all parameters to the states they would be set at if power had been applied at the moment the RESET command is received or released.

6.5.1.9 Sensor Loop

An electrical conductor arranged to encompass a portion of roadway to provide a zone of detection and designed such that the passage or presence of a vehicle in the zone causes a decrease in the inductance of the loop that can be sensed for detection purposes.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5.1.10 Vehicle Detector System

A system for indicating the presence or passage of vehicles.

6.5.1.11 Zone Of Detection

That area of the roadway within which a vehicle is detected by a vehicle detector system.

6.5.2 Functional Standards

6.5.2.1 Operation

The Detector Unit defined and described in this standard shall respond to changes in the inductance of the sensor loop/lead-in combination(s) connected to its loop input terminals. It shall develop a detection output when there is a sufficiently large decrease in the magnitude of the connected inductance.

The sensor loop(s) connected to the Detector Unit input terminals shall be located at the intended zone(s) of detection. The sensor loop(s) shall be connected to the Detector Unit by means of lead-in cable.

The sensor loop(s) shall be so configured that the presence of a vehicle in each zone of detection causes a sufficient decrease in inductance to cause an output response from the Detector Unit.

6.5.2.2 Configurations and Dimensions

6.5.2.2.1 Configurations

This standard covers Detector Unit configurations shown in Table 6-1.

Table 6-1
DETECTOR UNIT TYPES

Rack Mount Detector Unit Type	NEMA Detector Unit Designations	Delay/Extension Timing	Communication Port RX & TX
2 Channel	Type A	None	No
4 Channel	Type B	None	No
2 Channel	Type C	Included	No
4 Channel	Type D	Included	No
2 Channel	Type AC	None	Yes
4 Channel	Type BC	None	Yes
2 Channel	Type CC	Included	Yes
4 Channel	Type DC	Included	Yes

Each channel shall be provided with independent loop input terminals and shall deliver detection information on independent output terminals.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5.2.2.2 Dimensions

1. Two-channel card rack units shall be 28.96 mm (1.14 in.) max. W x 114.3 mm (4.5 in.) H x 177.8 mm (7.00 in.) D, excluding the handle as shown in Figure 6-4.

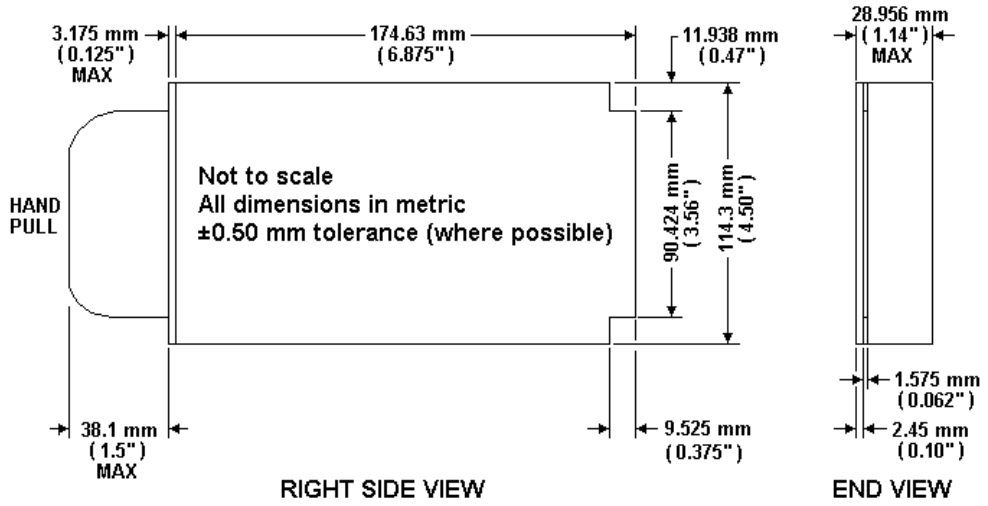


Figure 6-4
TWO CHANNEL CARD RACK UNIT

2. Four-channel card rack units shall be 59.44 mm (2.34 in.) max. W x 114.3 mm (4.5 in.) H x 177.8 mm (7.00 in.) D, excluding the handle as shown in Figure 6-5.

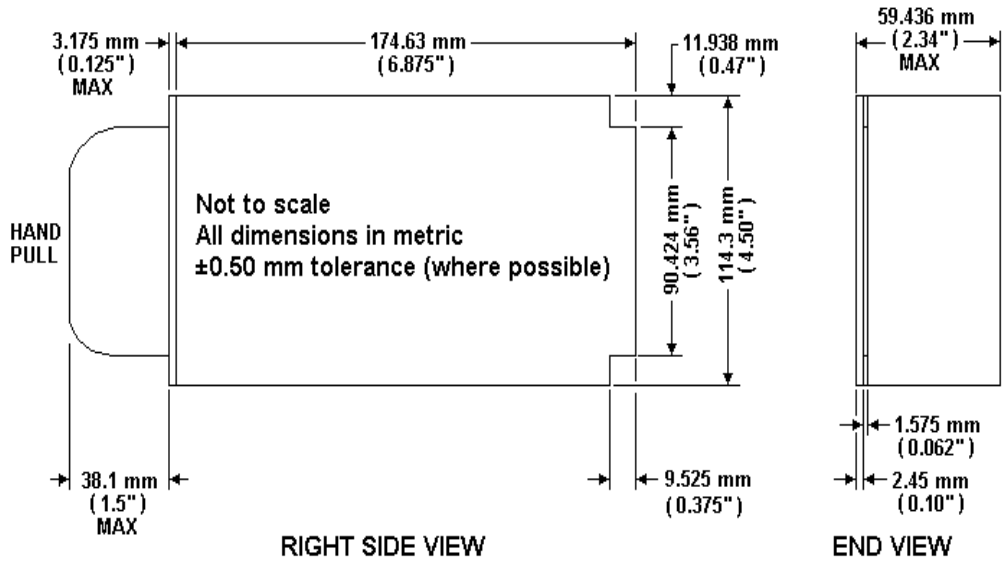


Figure 6-5
FOUR CHANNEL CARD RACK UNIT

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5.2.3 Accessibility

The Detector Unit shall be easily disassembled to gain access for maintenance. When thus disassembled, the Detector Unit shall be operational for trouble shooting.

6.5.2.4 Material and Construction of Rigid Printed Circuit Assemblies

6.5.2.4.1 Materials

All printed circuit boards shall be per **3.2.3.1**.

6.5.2.4.2 Component Identification

All components shall be identified per **3.2.3.3**.

6.5.2.5 Power Inputs

6.5.2.5.1 Detector Unit DC Supply Voltage

1. Voltage Range–The voltage range shall be 10.8 VDC minimum to 26.5 VDC maximum.
2. Ripple–The maximum supply ripple shall be 500 millivolts peak to peak.

This input supplies power. The current consumption shall not exceed 50 milliamperes per channel. The return for this input is **Logic Ground** as described in 6.5.2.6. This input shall not be connected within the unit to any loop input. The input shall draw a surge current not to exceed 5 amps at the time of power application to the input. The Detector Unit shall not be damaged by insertion to or removal from a powered Detector Rack.

6.5.2.5.2 Low Supply Voltage Automatic Reset

A **Reset Unit** condition shall be activated anytime the input DC supply voltage falls below that which is required for operation, as defined in this standard.

A **Reset Unit** condition shall not be activated when the DC Supply Input falls below 10 volts for less than 0.25 milliseconds.

6.5.2.6 Logic Ground

This input is the return for the Detector Unit DC Supply input. This point shall not be connected within the unit to **AC Neutral**, **Earth Ground**, or to any loop input terminal.

6.5.2.7 Earth Ground

The loop Detector Unit shall have a terminal for connection to the chassis of the unit. This input shall not be connected to **Logic Ground**, **AC Neutral**, or to any other point within the unit, except that it shall be permissible to use this input as a return for transient protection devices.

If the unit has a metallic case or front panel, the case and/or front panel shall be connected to **Earth Ground**.

6.5.2.8 DC Control Inputs

Control inputs shall have the following characteristics as measured from **Logic Ground**.

6.5.2.8.1 Low or Active State

A voltage between 0 and 8 volts shall be considered the **Low** or active state.

6.5.2.8.2 High or Inactive State

A voltage greater than 16 volts shall be considered the **High** or inactive state.

6.5.2.8.3 Transition Voltage Zone Of Input Circuitry

Transition zone of input circuitry from **Low** state to **High** state and vice versa shall occur between 8 and 16 volts.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5.2.8.4 External Transition Time

External transition from **Low** state to **High** state and vice versa shall be accomplished within 0.1 milliseconds.

6.5.2.8.5 Maximum Current

Over the voltage range 0 to 26 volts DC, the maximum current **In** or **Out** of any input control terminal shall be less than 10 milliamperes. The input circuitry shall be returned to the Detector Unit DC supply in such a manner that the removal of all connections to the input shall allow the voltage at the input terminal to rise to the **High** or inactive state. Rising to Detector Unit DC supply voltage is permitted.

6.5.2.8.6 Signal Recognition

Any input signal (including External Reset, Pin C) shall respond as defined in **3.3.5.1.3**.

All channels shall remain in a RESET UNIT or RESET CHANNEL condition, see 6.5.1.7 and 6.5.1.8, while Pin C is held in an Active State (**Low**) voltage.

6.5.2.8.7 Activation of Delay/Extension Feature

The application of a **Low** state voltage to a **Delay/Extension** input shall function to inhibit the delay timing function and/or enable the extend timing function.

This input is provided for downward compatibility. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

6.5.2.8.8 Activation of Detector Unit Address Feature

The application of a **Low** state voltage to a **Detector Unit Address** input shall activate the input, e.g. it is a logic **1**. Four address input pins shall provide for a maximum of 15 hard wired addresses. Address FF(hex) shall be a broadcast address.

6.5.2.9 Data Receive (RX) Input

The Data Receive input, RX, must have an input impedance 45 Kohm to 105 Kohm and an input capacitance less than 250 picofarads. This input impedance shall terminate to DC common. The input open circuit voltage shall be less than 0.9 VDC. The input shall be functional when voltages over the range of ±25 VDC are applied to it. The Transition Region is any voltage between a Mark and a Space.

6.5.2.9.1 Mark State (Binary 1)

During Mark, the RX input shall recognize as a Mark voltages less than 0.9 VDC.

6.5.2.9.2 Space State (Binary 0)

During Space, the RX input shall recognize as a Space voltages greater than 3.0 VDC.

6.5.2.9.3 Other States

The RX input shall not be damaged when connected to any voltage up to 26 VDC and:

1. Shall rise to >8.5 VDC when connected to +12 VDC through 30 Kohm.
2. Shall rise to >16 VDC when connected to +22 VDC through 11 Kohm.

6.5.2.9.4 Transient Withstand

The RX input shall not be damaged by application of the transients described in 2.1.7.1 through 2.1.7.5.

6.5.2.10 Loop Inputs

Two loop input terminals shall be provided for each sensor channel. These inputs shall be isolated (resistance > 10^6 and breakdown voltage >1000 VRMS) from **Logic Ground**, **AC Neutral**, and the control input and output circuits.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5.2.11 Loop/Lead in Electrical Properties

Each channel of the Detector Unit shall function in accordance with the specific requirements of this standard and in addition shall operate without significant degradation with any sensor loop/lead-in combination which exhibits the following electrical properties as measured at the Detector Unit terminals of the lead-in:

1. Inductance at 50 KHz – 50 to 1000 microhenries.
2. Q at 50 KHz–greater than 5.
3. Resistance to earth ground–greater than 1 megohm.
4. Field installation practices or Detector Unit design may require grounding the shield of the loop lead-in cable. Such grounding should be in accordance with the Detector Unit manufacturer's recommendation.

6.5.2.12 Test Loop Configurations

Sensor loop and lead-in combinations used to verify the performance requirements of this standard shall consist of the following combinations of 1.828 m x 1.828 m (6 ft. x 6 ft) three-turn loops and shielded lead-in cable as illustrated in Figure 6-6.

1. Single-loop 1.828 m x 1.828 m (6 ft. by 6 ft.), three turns, with 30.48 m (100 ft.) of lead-in (80–105 microhenries).
2. Single-loop 1.828 m x 1.828 m (6 ft. by 6 ft.), three turns, with 304.8 m (1,000 ft.) of lead-in (260–320 microhenries).
3. Four loops 1.828 m x 1.828 m (6 ft. by 6 ft.), three turns, in a row in the direction of travel and separated by 2.743 m (9 feet), series/parallel connected with 76.0 m (250 ft.) of lead-in (100–140 microhenries).

6.5.2.13 Test Vehicle Definition

Detector Units shall detect all vehicles which ordinarily traverse the public streets and highways and which are comprised of sufficient conductive material suitably located to permit recognition and response by the Detector System.

Vehicles are classified by this standard in accordance with the reduction in inductance resulting when they are centered in the single 1.828 m x 1.828 m (6 ft. x 6 ft.), three-turn-test loop with 30.48 (100 feet) of lead-in.

These minimum reductions are as follows:

1. Class 1: 0.13 percent (dL/L) or 0.12 microhenries (dL) inductance change with a single 1.83 m x 1.83 m (6 ft x 6 ft), three turn loop, with 30.48 m (100 ft) lead-in (small motorcycle).
2. Class 2: 0.32 percent (dL/L) or 0.3 microhenries (dL) inductance change with a single 1.83 m x 1.83 m (6 ft x 6 ft), three turn loop, with 30.48 m (100 ft) lead-in (large motorcycle).
3. Class 3: 3.2 percent (dL/L) or 3.0 microhenries (dL) inductance change with a single 1.83 m x 1.83 m (6 ft x 6 ft), three turn loop, with 30.48 m (100 ft) lead-in (automobile).

The maximum reduction caused by a class three vehicle shall be 5.4 percent (dL/L) or 5 microhenries (dL) inductance change with a single 1.83 m x 1.83 m (6 ft x 6 ft), three-turn loop with 30.48 m (100 ft) lead-in.

© NEMA

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

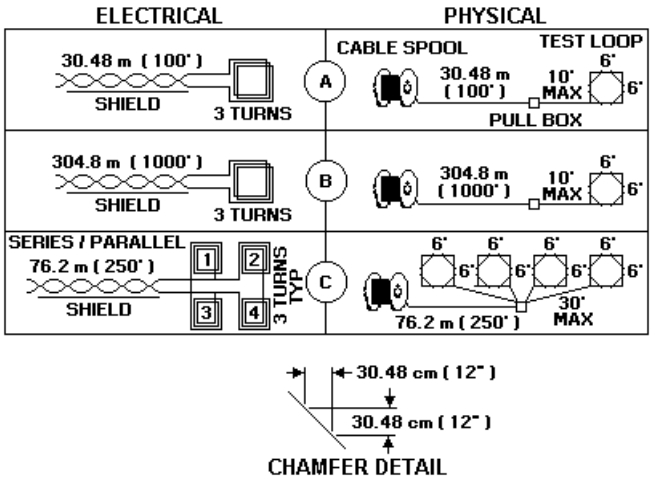


Figure 6-6
TEST LOOP CONFIGURATIONS

Construction–Loop dimension tolerances shall be ±50.8 mm (2 in.). Connections shall be soldered and waterproofed. Loops shall be installed in a non-reinforced pavement and located at least 0.914 m (3 feet) from any conductive material. Lead-in cable shall be spooled. Loop leads shall exit at one corner of the loop structures. All loop corners shall be chamfered 0.305m (12 in.).

Loop Wire–Each loop shall be three turns of AWG #14 cross-linked polyethylene insulated, stranded copper wire, such as IMSA (International Municipal Signal Association) Specification 51-3, 1984, or equivalent. Loop inductance shall be between 60–80 microhenries.

Lead-in Wire–The lead-in wire shall be AWG #14 twisted pair, aluminum polyester shield, polyethylene insulation, polyethylene jacket, inductance between 20 uH and 24 uH per 30.48 m (100 feet), such as IMSA Specification 50-2, 1984, or equivalent. For standardized test purposes, the shield shall be insulated from ground.

Field installation practices or Detector Unit design may require grounding the shield of the loop lead-in cable. Such grounding should be in accordance with the Detector Unit manufacturer's recommendation. (Authorized Engineering Information).

Sawslot–The conductors shall be placed at the bottom of a 38.1 mm ± 6.35 mm (1-1/2" ±1/4 in.) deep by 6.35 mm (1/4 in.) wide sawslot. Pavement sawslot shall be filled with a suitable polyurethane or equivalent sealant.

6.5.2.14 Sensitivity

The Detector Unit shall be capable of detecting any of the vehicles defined in 6.5.2.13 on any of the test loops defined in 6.5.2.12.

6.5.2.15 Sensitivity Control

When detecting test vehicles as described in 6.5.2.13 and operating on any of the test loop configurations described in 6.5.2.12, each channel of the Detector Unit shall include means to adjust the sensitivity such that it shall not produce an output when the nearest point of any test vehicle of 6.5.2.13 is 0.914 m (36 in.) or more outside the loop(s) perimeter. A minimum of three sensitivity selections shall be provided for each detection channel.

6.5.2.16 Approach Speed

The Detector Unit shall detect any vehicle described in 6.5.2.13. over any of the single loops described in 6.5.2.12 traveling within the speed range of 8.045 km to 128.72 km (5 to 80 miles) per hour.

The Detector Unit shall detect any vehicle described in 6.5.2.13 over all of the loops of the four loop configurations described in 6.5.2.12 traveling within the speed range of 8.045 km to 64.36 km (5 to 40 miles) per hour.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

All channels of a multichannel Detector Unit shall be operating at the same sensitivity and connected to equivalent inductances for the purpose of these tests.

6.5.2.17 Modes of Operation

Each Detector Unit channel shall be capable of functioning in the following two front panel selectable modes:

6.5.2.17.1 Presence

When a Class 2 vehicle defined in 6.5.2.13, or larger vehicle occupies the center of any test loops described in 6.5.2.12, the Detector Unit shall be capable of maintaining a detection output for a minimum of 3 minutes.

6.5.2.17.2 Pulse

A detection output between 100 and 150 milliseconds shall be initiated when a vehicle enters the sensor loop zone of detection.

If this vehicle remains in the zone of detection, the Detector Unit shall become responsive within a maximum of 3 seconds to additional test vehicles entering the zone of detection. The Detector Unit shall produce one and only one output pulse for a test vehicle traveling at 16.09 km (10 miles) per hour across the zone of detection of the single sensor loops defined in 6.5.2.12.

6.5.2.18 Recovery from Sustained Occupancy

When operating in the presence mode, and following an occupancy of any duration, the Detector Unit shall recover to normal operation with at least 90 percent of its selected sensitivity within five seconds after the zone of detection is vacated.

6.5.2.19 Response Time

When operating in the presence mode, the Detector Unit shall be capable of being set to produce an output in response to a step decrease in inductance equivalent to the minimum decrease from a class one vehicle as defined in 6.5.2.13 within not more than 100 milliseconds when tested on either of the single loop test configurations described in 6.5.2.12. In response to step return to the original inductance, the Detector Unit shall terminate its output within no more than 100 milliseconds.

6.5.2.19.1 Variation in Response Time

The difference between the minimum measured response time and the maximum measured response time for input changes in either direction, over any number of tests, to an input change equivalent to a Class 1 vehicle shall not exceed 10 milliseconds per channel multiplied by the number of active channels. The Detector Unit must be set to the proper sensitivity to detect a Class 1 vehicle.

The difference between the minimum measured response time and the maximum measured response time for input changes in either direction, over any number of tests, to an input change equivalent to a Class 3 vehicle shall not exceed 5 milliseconds per channel multiplied by the number of active channels. The Detector Unit must be set to the proper sensitivity to detect a Class 3 vehicle.

All channels of a multichannel Detector Unit which are ON shall be operating at the same sensitivity and connected to equivalent inductances for the purpose of these tests.

For certain specific surveillance applications involving vehicle speeds in excess of 72.405 km (45 miles) per hour, a more precise response time will be required. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

6.5.2.20 Tuning

Each Detector Unit channel shall include means for accommodating the range of sensor loop/lead-in inductance.

The unit shall tune automatically upon the application of power. It shall operate with at least its minimum sensitivity within 2 seconds after application of power, and at 90 percent of its selected sensitivity within 5 seconds after application of power.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

6.5.2.21 Self-Tracking

The Detector Unit shall automatically accommodate those after-tuning changes in the loop/lead-in electrical characteristics as might reasonably be expected to occur in undamaged loops, properly installed in sound pavement and exhibiting the electrical properties outlined in 6.5.2.11, without producing a false output or change in sensitivity.

6.5.2.22 Recovery From Reset

After any reset, Reset Unit or Reset Channel, the Detector Unit shall operate with at least its minimum sensitivity within 2 seconds after the removal of the reset condition, and at 90 percent of its selected sensitivity within 5 seconds after the removal of the reset condition.

6.5.2.23 Crosstalk Avoidance

Each Detector Unit channel shall include means to prevent that channel from adversely interacting with any other channel. The means to prevent such interaction shall be either inherent, automatic, or manual switch.

6.5.2.24 Delay/Extension

Each channel of a unit with delay/extension shall have at least three modes of operation–delay, extension, and normal (neither delay nor extension). Channels 1 and 2 of four-channel Detector Units shall be the channels to include the delay/extension feature. Delay and extension timing shall be setable on a per channel basis with the timing programmed independently.

6.5.2.24.1 Delay

When selected, the output is delayed for the time set. If the vehicle departs before the time set, an output does not occur and the timer is reset. If a vehicle is present and the delay timer is active, when the delay inhibit is applied, the output shall become active. See Figure 6-7. This delay timing is controlled by the **Delay/Extension** input defined in 6.5.2.8.7.

The delay time shall be adjustable over the range from 0 to 30 seconds. The setability shall be within one second in the 0 to 15 second range and within two seconds in the 16 to 30 second range. The accuracy shall be $\pm$ 1/2 second or $\pm$ 5 percent of the setting, whichever is greater. When the **Delay/Extension** input is active, the delay shall be zero (0 to 0.1 second).

6.5.2.24.2 Extension

When selected, the output is extended after the vehicle departs the zone of detection for the time set. If a new vehicle arrives before the extension timer times out, the timer is reset, the output is maintained, and the timer resumes timing when the vehicle departs. See Figure 6-8. This extension timing is controlled by the **Delay/Extension** input defined in 6.5.2.8.7.

The extension time shall be adjustable in the range from 0 to 7-1/2 seconds. The setability shall be within 1/2 second. The accuracy shall be $\pm$ 1/2 second. When the **Delay/Extension** input is inactive, the extension shall be zero (0 to 0.1 second).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

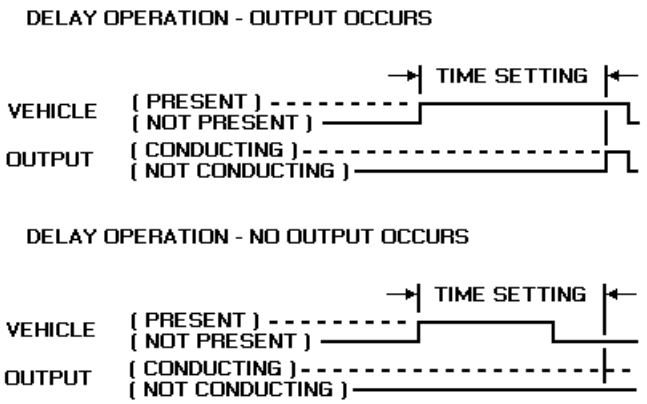


Figure 6-7
DELAY OPERATION

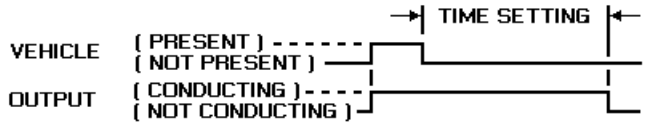


Figure 6-8
EXTENSION OPERATION

6.5.2.25 Controls and Indicators

All controls and indicators necessary for the operation of the Detector Unit shall be located on the front panel of the unit except as noted below. Multiple functions combined in a single control shall be permitted. The controls and indicators shall include, but are not limited to:

1. Output Indicator—Means to visually indicate the output state of each channel. Each channel shall have a separate indicator.
2. Sensitivity Control—Means to permit selection of the sensitivity of each channel as described in 6.5.2.15.
3. Reset—(Reset Unit or Reset Channel or both) A control which unconditionally causes the Detector Unit or detection channel to retune to a non-vehicle present condition.
4. Mode Selector—Shall provide for selection of pulse or presence mode operation of each channel. Card mounting of this control shall be permitted where actuation does not require disassembly.
5. Crosstalk Control—As required, shall provide means to prevent interaction of channels as described in 6.5.2.23.
6. Delay/Extension Selection Control—The type C, D, CC, and DC Detector Units shall have either a control or combination of controls to allow for the selection of one of at least three operating modes–delay, extension, and normal (neither delay nor extension). It shall be permissible to have the normal mode selected by either setting a three position selector switch to the normal position or setting the

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

delay/extension timing control to zero. Card mounting of the control(s) shall be permitted where actuation does not require disassembly.

7. Delay/Extension Timing Control—The type C, D, CC, and DC Detector Units shall provide a means to permit setting of the time duration of the delay/extension period for each channel as described in 6.5.2.24. Card mounting of this control shall be permitted where actuation does not require disassembly.
8. Enable/disable—Means to turn ON (enable) or OFF (disable) a channel or number of channels on a Detector Unit.

6.5.2.26 Outputs

6.5.2.26.1 Solid State Channel Detection Outputs

The output interface of each channel shall be an independent, isolated, solid-state output. Each output device shall have the following characteristics:

1. Output Solid-State Device—The output shall be conducting when a vehicle is detected or when the loop circuit is in a failed state (i.e. open loop or shorted loop). The channel Disabled (OFF) condition shall have the output in the non-conducting state. During a Reset (Reset Unit or Reset Channel) condition the output shall be in the conducting state.
2. DC Supply Voltage Failure Condition—The output shall be conducting when it is terminated to a NEMA defined input, indicating a detection output condition.
3. Output Circuit Isolation—The isolation between each output device terminal pair and all other terminals shall exceed:
   a. Resistance $>10^6$ ohms
   b. Breakdown >1000 V rms
4. Output Rating—The output shall conduct a minimum of 20 milliamperes with a maximum 3.5 volt drop across the output terminals in the conducting state. The output shall conduct a maximum of 500 microamperes with any voltage between 0 and 26 VDC applied across the output terminals in the non-conductive state.
5. Transition Time—When switching to or from a steady state current in the range of 2.4 to 20 milliamperes, the transition time from 8 to 16 volts and vice versa shall be 0.1 milliseconds or less. The circuit(s) to which the output is connected is defined in **3.3.5.1.3**.
6. Maximum Voltage—When in the non-conducting state, the output shall tolerate a voltage as high as 30 VDC without damage.

6.5.2.26.2 Channel Status outputs

Each Detector Unit channel shall provide a channel status output. The channel status output shall be a solid state device with the following characteristics:

1. Output Solid State Device—The output shall be conducting when the channel is operating properly. The channel Disabled (OFF) condition shall have the output in the non-conductive state. During a Reset (Reset Unit or Reset Channel) condition the output shall be in the non-conducting state.
2. DC Supply Voltage Failure Condition—Output device is nonconductive, indicating a fault condition.
3. Status Outputs shall be referenced to logic ground.
4. Output Rating—The output shall conduct a minimum of 20 milliamperes with a maximum 3.5 volt drop across the output terminals in the conducting state. The output shall conduct a maximum of 100 microamperes with any voltage between 0 and 26 VDC applied across the output terminals in the non-conductive state.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

5. Transition Time—When switching to or from a steady state current in the range of 2.4 to 20 milliamperes, the transition time from 8 to 16 volts and vice versa shall be 0.1 milliseconds or less. The circuit(s) to which the output is connected is defined in 3.3.5.1.3.
6. Maximum Voltage—When in the non-conducting state, the output shall tolerate a voltage as high as 30 VDC without damage.

6.5.2.26.3 Channel Status Reporting

The Channel Status Output shall provide for the communication of eight distinct status states as defined below:

1. Normal operation (Detector Unit and loop OK).
2. Detector Unit failure (watch dog time-out, channel currently in RESET, or channel disabled).
3. Open loop (An open loop may be reported when the terminal inductance is >1000 microhenries and <2500 microhenries. The open loop shall be reported when the terminal inductance is >2500 microhenries).
4. Shorted loop (A shorted loop may be reported when the terminal inductance is <50 microhenries and >20 microhenries. A shorted loop shall be reported when the terminal inductance is <20 microhenries).
5. Excessive inductance change ($\pm$25%).
6. Reserved.
7. Reserved.
8. Reserved.

Pulse width modulation shall be utilized to encode the eight possible states as described below:

1. Continuous **Low** or **On** state.
2. Continuous **High** or **Off** state.
3. 50 milliseconds **Off** time.
4. 100 milliseconds **Off** time.
5. 150 milliseconds **Off** time.
6. 200 milliseconds **Off** time.
7. 250 milliseconds **Off** time.
8. 300 milliseconds **Off** time.

The tolerance for all times listed above shall be $\pm$ 10 milliseconds; the **On** time between pulses shall be 50 milliseconds $\pm$ 10 milliseconds.

The Channel Status Output shall reflect the current fault status of the channel (i.e., the fault status shall be self clearing in the event that a fault condition clears).

The Channel Status Output shall maintain an output state, other than a condition generated during a Reset, for a minimum of 5 seconds. The Channel Detection Output shall maintain the conducting state during a fault condition only while the fault condition exists.

The Channel Status Output shall be in State 2 during RESET. Once the RESET is complete and the Detector Unit resumes normal operation, the channel status output shall return to State 1.

The Channel Status Output shall be in State 2 for channels that are disabled (OFF). The Channel Detection Output shall maintain the non-conductive state (State 2) for channels that are disabled.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The last channel failure status shall be stored in memory for future reference. Enunciation of the last failure status shall be accomplished through the use of the front panel indicators. If power is removed or the Reset is activated, the last channel status information shall be cleared.

The particular method employed to enunciate past failure status is not specified and will be manufacturer specific. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

6.5.2.26.4 Data Transmit Output (TX)

This output shall have 3 states: Mark, Space, and High Impedance. The output shall be in the High Impedance state except when transmitting to the BIU. The transmitter output shall go from the High Impedance state to the Mark state until the first Start Bit is sent. The Transition Region shall be defined as any voltage between a Mark and a Space.

6.5.2.26.4.1 Mark State (Binary 1)

During Mark, the TX output shall be less than 0.5 VDC when sinking 4 milliamps current.

6.5.2.26.4.2 Space State (Binary 0)

During Space, the TX output shall be greater than 3.5 VDC when sourcing 4 milliamps current.

6.5.2.26.4.3 High Impedance State

The TX output shall have an impedance greater that 1 Megohm in the High Impedance state. When connected to the following loads, the TX output in the High Impedance state:

1. Shall be >8.5 VDC when connected to +12 VDC through 30 Kohm.
2. Shall be >16 VDC when connected to +22 VDC through 11 Kohm.

6.5.2.26.4.4 Output Impedance During Power Off

When power is OFF, the output impedance shall be greater that 300 ohms when measured with an applied voltage not greater than 2 volts in magnitude to circuit common.

6.5.2.26.4.5 TX Output Shorts

The TX output shall not be damaged under these situations:

1. The TX output shall be capable of withstanding a continuous short to DC common.
2. The TX output shall be capable of withstanding a continuous short to +26 VDC through 600 ohms.

6.5.2.26.4.6 Rise/Fall Time

The transition time from the Space to the Mark voltage or from the Mark to the Space voltage shall be less than 2.5 microseconds or 4% of a bit time, whichever is less. This shall apply with 3750 picofarads attached to the TX output. There shall be no reversal of the direction of voltage change while the signal is in the Transition Region. The Transition Region shall not be reentered until the next change of signal condition.

6.5.2.26.4.7 Transient Withstand

The TX output shall not be damaged by application of the transients described in **2.1.7**.1 through **2.1.7**.5.

6.5.2.27 Communication Port Functional Requirements

The protocol for this port is under definition.

Inductive Loop Detector Unit types AC, BC, CC, and DC have this communication port.

6.5.2.27.1 Communication Port Electrical Requirements

This port, RX and TX and DC Common, is an unbalanced, +5 volt nominal, standard NRZ (Mark/Space) format, asynchronous serial communication port. For compatibility with systems currently in use, when TX is shorted to the Ch 2(+) Output and when RX is shorted to the Ch 4(+) Output, TX and RX must not

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

interfere with Ch 2(+) or Ch 4(+) operation See 6.5.2.9 for RX specification details and 6.5.2.26.4 for TX specification details.

6.5.2.27.2 Baud Rate

The port shall be capable of operation at a baud rate of 9600 bps ±1%. The width of 1 bit shall be the reciprocal of the baud rate.

6.5.2.27.3 Communication Parameters

The standard NRZ (Mark/Space) format shall be used. Further specifications are under definition.

6.5.2.27.4 Slot Addresses

The address of a Detector Unit slot is "hard-wired" at each Detector Rack connector. A logic 1 shall be created by wiring an address pin to DC Common. Open or +24VDC shall be a logic 0. Slot 1 shall be Address 0 and Slot 15 shall be Address 14.

6.5.2.28 Electrical Connections

6.5.2.28.1 Connector Description

Two and four channel card rack units shall mate with a 44 terminal, double row, 3.2 mm (0.156 in.) contact spacing, Cinch Jones card edge connection 50-44A-30M, or equivalent.

6.5.2.28.2 Connector Terminations

Input / Output connector pin terminations shall be as shown in Table 6-2.

6.5.2.28.3 Type A Two Channel Without Delay / Extension Timing

The following pins shall be inactive: P, R, S, T, U, V, Y, Z, 1, 2, 13, 14, 16, 17, 18, and 22.

6.5.2.28.4 Type B Four Channel Without Delay / Extension Timing

The following pins shall be inactive: 1 and 2.

6.5.2.28.5 Type C Two Channel With Delay / Extension Timing

The following pins shall be inactive: P, R, S, T, U, V, Y, Z, 13, 14, 16, 17, 18, and 22.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Table 6-2
CONNECTOR TERMINATIONS

Pin	Function	Pin	Function
A	Logic Ground	1	Channel 1 Delay/Extension Input
B	Detector Unit DC Supply	2	Channel 2 Delay/Extension Input
C	External Reset	3	Detector Unit Address Bit #3
D	Channel 1 Loop Input	4	Channel 1 Redundant Loop Input (Optional)
E	Channel 1 Loop Input	5	Channel 1 Redundant Loop Input (Optional)
F	Channel 1 Output (+)	6	Detector Unit Address Bit #0
H	Channel 1 Output (-)	7	Channel 1 Status Output
J	Channel 2 Loop Input	8	Channel 2 Redundant Loop Input (Optional)
K	Channel 2 Loop Input	9	Channel 2 Redundant Loop Input (Optional)
L	Chassis Ground	10	Detector Unit Address Bit #1
M	Reserved (AC Neutral)	11	Reserved (AC Neutral)
N	Reserved (AC Line)	12	Reserved (AC Line)
P	Channel 3 Loop Input	13	Channel 3 Redundant Loop Input (Optional)
R	Channel 3 Loop Input	14	Channel 3 Redundant Loop Input (Optional)
S	Channel 3 Output (+)	15	Detector Unit Address Bit #2
T	Channel 3 Output (-)	16	Channel 3 Status Output
U	Channel 4 Loop Input	17	Channel 4 Redundant Loop Input (Optional)
V	Channel 4 Loop Input	18	Channel 4 Redundant Loop Input (Optional)
W	Channel 2 Output (+)	19	Data Transmit Output (TX)
X	Channel 2 Output (-)	20	Channel 2 Status Output
Y	Channel 4 Output (+)	21	Data Receive Input (RX)
Z	Channel 4 Output (-)	22	Channel 4 Status Output

Polarization keys shall be located at three positions:

Between B/2 and C/3
Between M/11 and N/12
Between E/5 and F/6

Pins 3, 6, 10, and 15 are address pins for Type AC, BC, CC and DC Inductive Loop Detector Units. When one of these Detector Unit types are installed, it will be assigned an address associated with the Detector Unit position in the Detector Rack.

Pins 19 and 21 are the TX output and RX input for communication with the Detector Unit. The communication protocol is under definition. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Section 7
CABINETS

This section defines the physical and functional requirements of cabinets which fully conform to this standard publication.

7.1 DEFINITIONS

These definitions define the nomenclature frequently used in this part of the Standard Publication.

The abbreviations used in this section are defined as follows:

ASTM—American Society for Testing and Materials

7.2 MATERIALS

Cabinets shall be of either a ferrous material or of an aluminum alloy.

7.2.1 Cabinets of Ferrous Material

Cabinets shall be fabricated of carbon sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 1.85 millimeters (0.073 in.), minimum. The material shall meet the requirements in ASTM Specification No. A-245-48T (paragraph4) or have a heat treated zinc coating of 0.015 mm (0.0006 in.) minimum thickness on both sides. All exterior seams shall meet the requirements for Type 4 enclosures according to NEMA Standards Publication 250-1991.

7.2.2 Cabinets of Aluminum Alloy

Cabinets shall be fabricated of either sheet aluminum or cast aluminum.

7.2.2.1 Sheet Aluminum

Cabinets shall be fabricated from 3.175 mm (0.125 in.) minimum thickness aluminum alloy sheet meeting the requirements in ASTM Specification No. 5052-H32 or equivalent. All exterior seams shall meet the requirements for Type 4 enclosures according to NEMA Standards Publication 250-1991.

7.2.2.2 Cast Aluminum

Cabinets shall be fabricated from aluminum alloy meeting the requirements in ASTM Specification No. 356-75 or equivalent. Flat cast surfaces exceeding 30.48 cm (12 in.) in both directions shall have a thickness of 6.35 mm (0.25 in.), minimum. Flat cast surfaces not exceeding 30.48 cm (12 in.) in both directions shall have a thickness of 4.75 mm (0.187 in.).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7.3 CABINET DIMENSIONS

The outline dimensions of cabinets shall be as shown in Table 7-1.

Table 7-1
OUTLINE DIMENSIONS

Size	Width	Height	Depth
1	40.64 (16)	60.96 (24)	30.48 (12)
2	50.80 (20)	81.28 (32)	35.56 (14)
3	60.96 (24)	101.60 (40)	38.10 (15)
4	60.96 (24)	116.84 (46)	40.64 (16)
5	76.20 (30)	121.92 (48)	40.64 (16)
6	111.76 (44)	132.08 (52)	60.96 (24)
7	111.76 (44)	182.88 (72)	60.96 (24)

All dimensions are in centimeters (inches). Tolerance on all dimensions is +10%/-0%. These are outside dimensions exclusive of hinges, handle, overhangs, vents, and adapters. Cabinet heights are measured to the lowest point of the top surface of the cabinet.

7.4 TOP SURFACE CONSTRUCTION

The cabinet shall be manufactured so as to prevent the accumulation of water on its top surface.

7.5 DOORS

7.5.1 Main Cabinet Door

The cabinet shall have a hinged main door which permits access to all equipment within the cabinet and visual inspection of all indications and controls. Doors shall be hinged on the right side of the cabinet as viewed from the outside facing the cabinet door opening.

7.5.2 Hinges

Door hinges, pins, and bolts shall be made of stainless steel; except that hinges on aluminum cabinets may be aluminum with stainless steel hinge pins. The hinge pins and mounting shall be tamperproof.

7.5.3 Door Stop

In Size 3 and larger cabinets, the cabinet door shall be provided with a door stop which holds the door open at the 90° ($\pm 10^{o}$) and 180° ($\pm 10^{o}$) positions. A means shall be provided to minimize the accidental release of the door stop. The stop-and-catch arrangement shall be capable of holding the door open at 90° ($\pm 10^{o}$) with a load of 73.2 Kilograms per square meter (15 pounds per square foot) applied uniformly over the face of the door.

7.5.4 Latches and Locking Mechanism

7.5.4.1 Latching

A three-point latch is required on the main door of Size 3, or larger, cabinets. The latching means shall be operable without the use of tools.

7.5.4.2 Rotation of Handle

The main door handle shall rotate from the locked position such that the handle does not extend beyond the perimeter of the main door at anytime. The operation of the handle shall not interfere with the key, police door, or any other cabinet mechanism or projection.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7.5.4.3 LOCKS

All cabinets shall be provided with a main door lock, Corbin No. 15481RS, or equivalent, constructed of brass or stainless steel which shall operate with a traffic industry conventional No. 2 key, Corbin No. 1R6380, or equivalent. Two keys shall be furnished with each cabinet. When in the locked position, the lock shall prevent the movement of latching mechanism.

7.5.4.4 Provisions for Padlock

Cabinets with three-point latches shall be provided with a means of externally padlocking the latching mechanism. A lock with a 9.525 mm (0.375 in.) diameter shackle shall be accommodated.

7.5.5 Door Opening

The main door opening of all cabinets shall be at least 80 percent of the area of the side which the door closes, exclusive of the area for plenums.

7.5.6 Gasketing

Gasketing shall be provided on all door openings and shall be dust-tight. Gaskets shall be attached with a permanent adhesive bond. The mating surface of the gasketing shall be covered with a silicone lubricant to prevent sticking to the mating surface.

7.5.7 Police Compartment

7.5.7.1 Door

A hinged police compartment door shall be provided on the outside face of the main cabinet door. The door shall permit access to a switch panel, but shall not allow access to exposed electrical terminals or other equipment within the cabinet.

7.5.7.2 Locks

The police compartment door shall be provided with a lock which can be operated by a police key, Corbin Type Blank No. 04266 or equivalent. Two keys shall be furnished with each cabinet.

7.5.7.3 Compartment Size

The volume of the police panel compartment with the door closed shall be 1147 cubic centimeters (70 cubic inches), minimum. Minimum internal dimensions shall be 12.70 cm (5 in.) high, 25.40 cm (10 in.) wide and 7.62 cm (3 in.) deep.

7.6 SHELVES

The cabinet shall be provided with a sufficient number and sizes of substantial metal shelves or brackets to support the controller unit and auxiliary equipment. The equipment and shelves shall be arranged so that it is possible to remove any piece of auxiliary equipment from the cabinet without removing any other piece of auxiliary equipment.

7.6.1 Positioning

Size 3, 4, and 5 cabinets shall have provision for positioning shelves to within 30.48 cm (12 in.) of the bottom of the cabinet and to within 20.32 cm (8 in.) of the top of the cabinet in increments of not more than 5.08 cm (2 in.).

Size 6 and 7 cabinets shall have provisions for positioning shelves within 60.96 cm (24 in.) of the bottom of the cabinet and to within 20.32 cm (8 in.) of the top of the cabinet in increments of not more than 5.08 cm (2 in.).

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7.7 FINISH AND SURFACE PREPARATION

7.7.1 Steel Cabinets

7.7.1.1 Preparation

The surface of the cabinet shall be suitably prepared prior to painting. If the surface is damaged, the affected area shall be repaired prior to painting.

7.7.1.2 Prime Coat

If a primer coat is used, at least one application of a suitable primer paint shall be applied to the interior and exterior surfaces of the cabinet. If the primed surface is scratched or damaged, the affected area shall be reprimed prior to the application of the finish coat.

7.7.1.3 Interior Surfaces

At least one application of a suitable exterior grade of paint shall be applied to the interior surfaces of the cabinet.

7.7.1.4 Exterior Surfaces

At least one application of a suitable exterior grade paint shall be applied to the exterior surfaces of the cabinet.

7.7.2 Aluminum Cabinets

7.7.2.1 Preparation: Painted Cabinets

The surfaces of the cabinet shall be suitably prepared prior to painting. If the surface is damaged, the affected area shall be repaired prior to painting.

7.7.2.2 Prime Coat

If a primer paint is used, at least one application of a suitable primer paint shall be applied to the surfaces to be painted. If the primed surface is scratched or damaged, the affected area shall be reprimed prior to the application of the finish coat.

7.7.2.3 Interior Surfaces

If interior surfaces are painted, at least one application of a suitable exterior grade paint shall be applied to the interior surfaces of the cabinet.

7.7.2.4 Exterior Surfaces

At least one application of a suitable exterior grade paint shall be applied to the exterior surfaces of the cabinet.

7.7.3 Unpainted Aluminum Cabinets

Unpainted aluminum cabinets shall be fabricated from mill finish material and shall be cleaned with appropriate methods that will remove oil film, weld black, mill ink marks and render the surface clean, smooth, and non-sticky to the touch.

7.8 CABINET MOUNTING

7.8.1 Pole-Mounted Cabinets

Cabinets intended for side of pole mounting shall be provided with the hardware necessary to permit mounting to a 30.48 cm (12 in.) outside diameter pole.

7.8.2 Pedestal-Mounted Cabinets

Cabinets intended for pedestal mounting shall be provided with the hardware necessary to permit post top mounting on a 11.43 cm (4.5 in.) outside diameter pedestal pole.

--`,,`,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7.8.3 Base-Mounted Cabinets

7.8.3.1 Sizes 3, 4, and 5

When a Size 3, 4, or 5 cabinet is to be base-mounted, either the cabinet or its base adapter shall be constructed so that it can be mounted on the foundation shown in Figure 7-1.

Anchor bolts should extend 6.35 cm ± 1.27 cm (2.5 in. ± 0.5 in.) above the plane of the mounting foundation. Conduit should not extend more than 7.62 cm (3 in.) above the plane of the mounting foundation. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

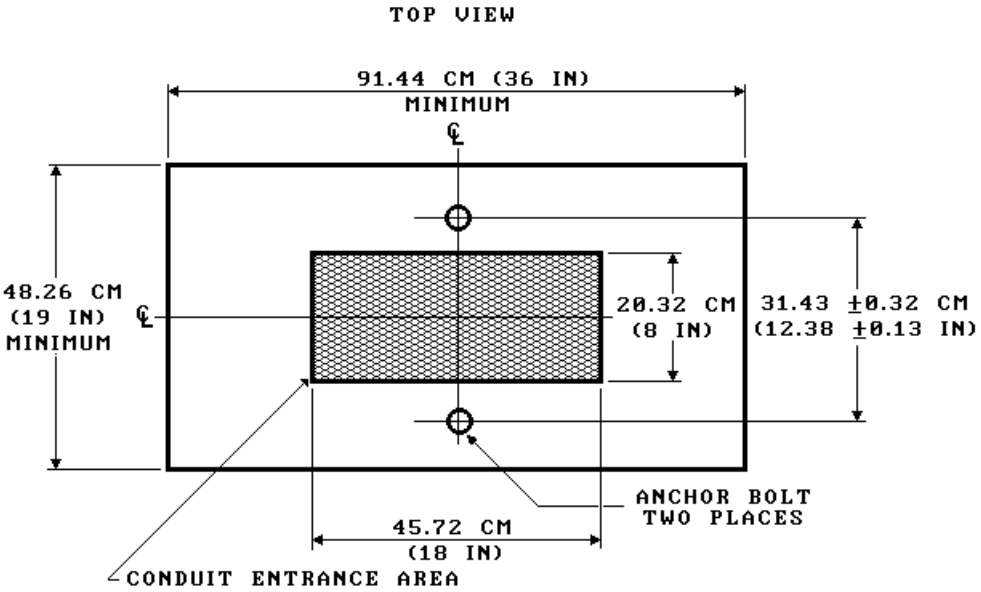


Figure 7-1
FOUNDATION FOR SIZES 3, 4, AND 5 BASE-MOUNTED CABINETS

7.8.3.2 Sizes 6 and 7

Size 6 and 7 cabinets shall be so constructed that they can be mounted on the foundation shown in Figure 7-2.

Anchor bolts should extend 6.35 cm ± 1.27 cm (2.5 in. ± 0.5 in.) above the plane of the mounting foundation. Conduit should not extend more than 7.62 cm (3 in.) above the plane of the mounting foundation. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

7.8.4 Anchor Bolts

Anchor bolts for base-mounted cabinets shall be 19.05 mm (0.75 in.) in diameter, 40.64 cm (16 in.) long, with a 90-degree bend with a 5.08 cm (2 in.) leg; overall length of 45.72 cm (18 in.). The end opposite the leg shall be threaded for at least 7.62 cm (3 in.) with a 3/4 UNC-10 thread. Anchor bolts shall be steel with hot-dipped galvanized or zinc plate surface treatment.

Each anchor bolt shall be furnished with two 3/4-10 plated steel nuts and one 1/4-inch plated flat washer.

Two anchor bolts shall be provided for each Size 3, 4, or 5 cabinet intended for base mounting. Four anchor bolts shall be provided for Size 6 and 7 cabinets.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7.9 CABINET VENTILATION

7.9.1 Fan or Cooling System Design

Each cabinet shall be provided with a fan rated at 2.832 cubic meters per minute (100 cubic feet per minute), minimum.

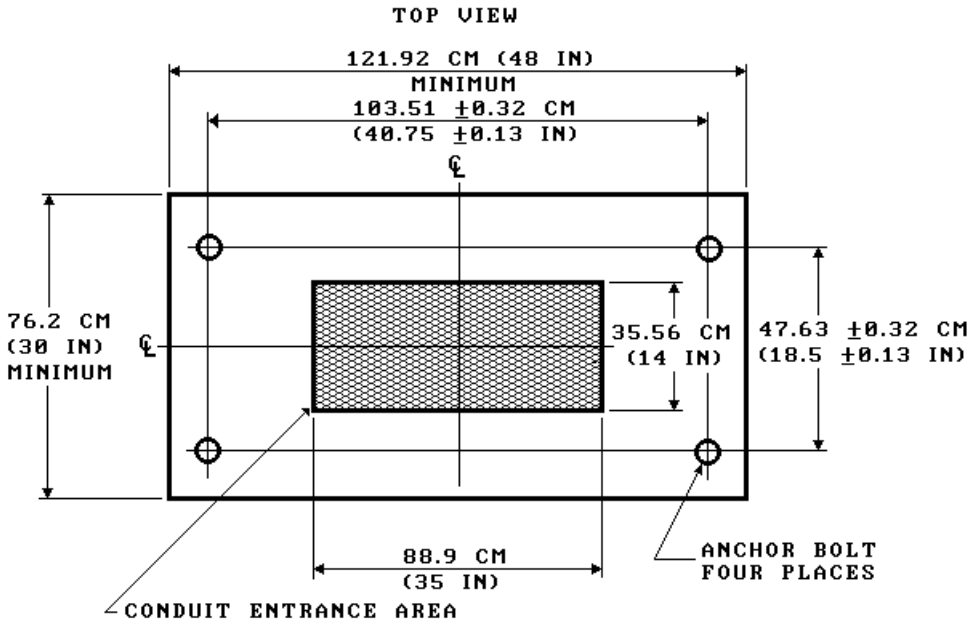


Figure 7-2
FOUNDATION FOR SIZE 6 AND 7 BASE-MOUNTED CABINETS

7.9.2 Fan or Cooling System Operation

7.9.2.1 OPERATING CONDITIONS

The fan or cooling system shall be capable of operating continuously for a minimum of 6,000 hours in a +50°C (+122°F) environment without the need for after-installation maintenance, excluding filter cleaning or replacement.

7.9.2.2 Fan or Cooling System Controls

Each cabinet shall be provided with a thermostat to control the operation of the fan or cooling system. The thermostat turn-on point shall be manually adjustable from +33°C (+91°F) to +45°C (+113°F), with a differential of not more than +6°C (+11°F) between automatic turn-on and turn-off. The thermostat shall be located on the inside of the top portion of the cabinet not lower than 15.24 cm (6 in.) from the top of the cabinet.

7.9.2.3 Filter

Each cabinet shall be provided with a device to filter the incoming air.

Size 1, 2, 3, and 4 cabinets shall have a replaceable filter.

Size 5, 6, and 7 cabinets shall have a replaceable filter with the following dimensions: width–40.64 cm (16 in.), height–30.48 cm (12 in.), thickness–2.54 cm (1 in.).

--`,,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Section 8
BUS INTERFACE UNIT

8.1 GENERAL

The BIU performs the interface between Port 1 at the CU and the TF, Loop Detector Rack(s), and other devices. Its functions include controlling load switch outputs, Detector Resets, communicating with Inductive Loop Detectors and other devices (BIU2), and the conditioning and conversion of TF and Loop Detector call inputs for the CU.

8.2 PHYSICAL

8.2.1 Material

All ferrous metal parts shall be protected against corrosion. All materials shall be moisture and fungus resistant.

8.2.2 Printed Circuits

Printed circuits shall meet the requirements of 3.2.3.

8.2.3 Dimensions

The BIU shall be 59.436 mm (2.34 in.) W x 114.3 mm (4.50 in.) H x 165.1 mm (6.50 in.) D as illustrated in Figure 8-1.

The BIU assembly shall slide freely into two card guides, each having a nominal slot width of 1.905 mm (.075 in.) and a maximum slot depth of 3.175 mm (.125 in.). The edges of the BIU assembly shall be clear of protrusions on both sides for an area of 3.175 mm (.125 in.) in height for the entire length of the assembly. The nominal thickness of the edges of the BIU assembly shall be 1.575 mm (.062 in.) $\pm$ 0.203 mm (.008 in.).

8.3 CONFIGURATIONS

This standard covers Bus Interface Unit configurations as shown in Table 8-1. The BIU type shall be shown on the front panel of the BIU.

Table 8-1
BIU TYPES

NEMA BIU Designation	Rack Communication Port RX & TX
BIU	No
BIU2	Yes

The two BIU types are not keyed differently. It is up to the user to ensure the correct BIU type required for the user's application is inserted into the rack. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

8.4 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

The BIU shall perform its specified functions under the conditions set forth in Section 2, Environmental Requirements.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS

The BIU shall require a nominal supply voltage of 24 VDC ± 2 VDC. A voltage of 16 VDC or less shall be considered loss of power and a voltage of 18 VDC or more shall be considered adequate for operation. The BIU shall not require more than 200 milliamperes over the voltage range of 16 to 30 VDC, and the power surge shall be limited to a maximum of 1.25 amperes from initial application of DC power.

The BIU shall not be damaged by insertion to or removal from a powered BIU Rack or Detector Rack.

8.5.1 Initialization

1. Upon application of DC power, the BIU shall be fully functional within 100 milliseconds, maximum. The initialized state of the BIU shall set all outputs to the 24 volt level.
2. During the loss of DC power to the BIU for 700 milliseconds or less, the BIU shall maintain the state of its outputs.
3. If DC power is restored to the BIU within 700 milliseconds following the loss of DC power, the BIU shall maintain the state of its outputs until they are updated by valid Port 1 activity.

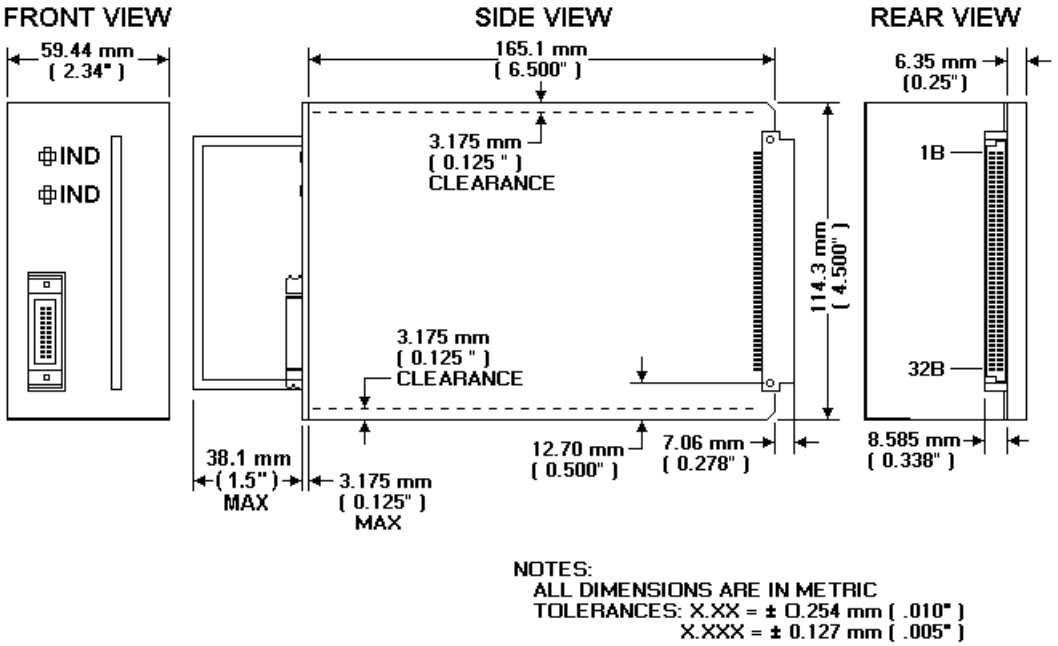


Figure 8-1
BUS INTERFACE UNIT

4. Following the loss of DC power to the BIU for more than 700 milliseconds and less than 1.5 seconds, the BIU shall maintain the state of its outputs (8.5.1.3) or shall turn off all of its outputs and reinitialize all internal operations (8.5.1.5) upon restoration of DC power.
5. Following the loss of DC power to the BIU for 1.5 seconds or greater, the BIU shall turn off all of its outputs and reinitialize all internal operations upon restoration of DC power.
6. Upon detection of loss of power, the BIU shall cease Port 1 Communications.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.6 INDICATORS

The BIU shall have two status indicators to represent adequate supply voltage, internal operations, and valid communications.

8.6.1 Power On Indicator

This indicator shall illuminate when the applied DC voltage is considered adequate as described in 8.5 and the BIU internal logic is operating properly. This indicator shall be OFF if either of these conditions are false.

8.6.2 Port 1 Indicator

This indicator shall illuminate for a duration not less than 20 milliseconds and not more than 50 milliseconds each time the BIU transmits on its Port 1 output.

8.6.3 Rack TX Indicator (BIU2 Only)

This indicator shall illuminate for a duration not less than 20 milliseconds and not more than 50 milliseconds each time the BIU transmits on its rack TX output.

8.7 BIU-TO-RACK COMMUNICATION PORT FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS (BIU2 ONLY)

The protocol for this communication port is under definition.

8.7.1 Communication Port Electrical Requirements

This port (RX and TX and DC Common) is an unbalanced, +5 volt nominal, NRZ (Non-Return To Zero) format, asynchronous serial communication port. See BIU Data Receive Input (RX) 8.8.5.5 for RX specification details and Data Transmit Output (TX) in 8.8.4.1 for TX specification details.

8.7.2 Baud Rate

The port shall be capable of operation at a baud rate of 9600 bps ±1%. The width of 1 bit shall be the reciprocal of the baud rate.

8.8 INTERFACE REQUIREMENTS

8.8.1 Port 1 Communications

Defined in 3.3.1.

8.8.2 Port 1 Connector

The Port 1 connector shall be a 15 pin metal shell “D” sub miniature type. The connector shall utilize female contacts with 15 millionths of an inch minimum gold plating in the mating area. The connector shall be equipped with latching blocks. The connector shall intermate with a 15 pin D type connector, Amp Incorporated part number 205206-1, or equivalent, which is equipped with spring latches, Amp Incorporated part number 745012-1, or equivalent.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.8.2.1 Port 1 Connector Pin Assignments

Pin	Function
1	Rx Data +
2	Logic Ground
3	Rx Clock +
4	Logic Ground
5	Tx Data +
6	Logic Ground
7	Tx Clock +
8	Logic Ground
9	Rx Data -
10	Not Used
11	Rx Clock -
12	Earth Ground
13	Tx Data -
14	Reserved
15	Tx Clock -

NOTE—Tx pins at the BIU = Rx pins at the CU; Rx pins at the BIU = Tx pins at the CU.

8.8.3 Card Rack Connector

The BIU card rack connector shall be a male 64 pin DIN 41612 type B series. The connector shall be centered at the edge of the circuit board and oriented with pin 1 located at the top of the unit. The circuit board edge shall align with the connector per DIN 41612.

8.8.3.1 Connector Pin Assignments for BIU Type BIU

Pin	Row A Function	Row B Function
1	+24 VDC IN	+24 VDC IN
2	Output 1	Output 2
3	Output 3	Output 4
4	Output 5	Output 6
5	Output 7	Output 8
6	Output 9	Output 10
7	Output 11	Output 12
8	Output 13	Output 14
9	Output 15	Input / Output 1
10	Input / Output 2	Input / Output 3
11	Input / Output 4	Input / Output 5
12	Input / Output 6	Input / Output 7
13	Input / Output 8	Input / Output 9
14	Input / Output 10	Input / Output 11
15	Input / Output 12	Input / Output 13
16	Input / Output 14	Input / Output 15
17	Input / Output 16	Input / Output 17
18	Input / Output 18	Input / Output 19
19	Input / Output 20	Input / Output 21
20	Input / Output 22	Input / Output 23
21	Input / Output 24	Input 1
22	Input 2	Input 3
23	Input 4	Input 5
24	Input 6	Input 7
25	Input 8	Opto Input 1
26	Opto Input 2	Opto Input 3
27	Opto Input 4	Opto Common
28	Address Select 0	Address Select 1
29	Address Select 2	Address Select 3
30	Reserved	Reserved
31	Earth Ground	Line Frequency Reference
32	Logic Ground	Logic Ground

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

8.8.3.2 Connector Pin Assignments for BIU Type BIU2

Pin	Row A Function	Row B Function
1	+24 VDC IN	+24 VDC IN
2	Output 1	Output 2
3	Output 3	Output 4
4	Output 5	Output 6
5	Output 7	Output 8
6	Output 9	Output 10
7	Output 11	Output 12
8	Output 13	Output 14
9	Output 15	Input / Output 1
10	Input / Output 2	Input / Output 3
11	Input / Output 4	Input / Output 5
12	Input / Output 6	Input / Output 7
13	Input / Output 8	Input / Output 9
14	Input / Output 10	Input / Output 11
15	Input / Output 12	Input / Output 13
16	Input / Output 14	Input / Output 15
17	Input / Output 16	Input / Output 17
18	Input / Output 18	Input / Output 19
19	Input / Output 20	Input / Output 21
20	Input / Output 22	Input / Output 23
21	Input / Output 24	Input 1
22	Input 2	Input 3
23	Input 4	Input 5
24	Input 6	Input 7
25	Input 8	Opto Input 1
26	Opto Input 2	Opto Input 3
27	Opto Input 4	Opto Common
28	Address Select 0	Address Select 1
29	Address Select 2	Address Select 3
30	Data Transmit Output (TX)	Data Receive Input (RX)
31	Earth Ground	Line Frequency Reference
32	Logic Ground	Logic Ground

8.8.4 Outputs

BIU pins labeled Output (n) and Input / Output (n) shall provide output from the BIU to the TF and Detector Racks as programmed in the respective Command Frame (3.3.1.4). The **On** (**Low**) state for an output shall require a logic **1** bit in the respective Command Frame, and the **Off** (**High**) state for an output shall require a logic **0** bit in the respective Command Frame.

Output characteristics shall be as follows:

1. The **Low** (operate) voltage shall be between 0 and 4 volts.
2. Current sinking capability in the **Low** state (**True**) shall be at least 50 milliamperes.
3. With an external impedance of 100k ohms or greater, the transition from 4 to 16 volts (and vice versa) shall be accomplished within 0.1 millisecond.
4. The **High** state (**False**) impedance shall not exceed 11 K ohms to the +24 VDC input to the BIU.
5. Any external steady-state voltage applied to an output terminal shall not exceed +30 volts DC, nor shall it cause flow of more than 3 milliamperes into the terminal, when the output is in the **High** state.
6. Any valid **True** output signal, except Load Switch Driver outputs when Dimming is enabled (3.3.1.4), shall dwell in this state for at least 50 milliseconds.
7. For the purpose of synchronizing all outputs of TF BIUs, Command Frames shall be transferred to the BIU output pins only upon receipt of a Type 18 Frame. The Type 18 Frame is received simultaneously by all BIUs. All TF BIUs shall update their outputs within 20 milliseconds after the receipt of the Type 18 Frame.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8.8.4.1 Data Transmit Output (TX) for BIU Type BIU2

This output shall have 2 states: Mark and Space. The state shall be a Mark when no data transmissions are taking place. The Transition Region shall be defined as any voltage between a Mark and a Space.

8.8.4.1.1 Mark State (Binary 1)

During Mark, the TX output shall be less than 0.5 VDC when sinking 4 milliamps DC current.

8.8.4.1.2 Space State (Binary 0)

During Space, the TX output shall be greater than 3.5 VDC when sourcing 4 milliamps DC current.

8.8.4.1.3 Output Impedance During Power Off

When power is OFF, the output impedance shall be greater than 300 ohms when measured with an applied voltage not greater than 2 volts in magnitude to circuit common.

8.8.4.1.4 TX Output Shorts

The TX output shall not be damaged when shorted to DC Common or + 5 VDC:

1. The TX output shall be capable of withstanding a continuous short to DC common.
2. The TX output shall be capable of withstanding a continuous short to +5 VDC.

8.8.4.1.5 Rise/Fall Time

The transition time from the Space to the Mark voltage or from the Mark to the Space voltage shall be less than 2.5 microseconds or 4% of the bit time, whichever is less. This shall apply with 3750 picofarads attached to the TX output. There shall be no reversal of the direction of voltage change while the signal is in the Transition Region. The Transition Region shall not be reentered until the next change of signal condition.

8.8.4.1.6 Transient Withstand

The TX output shall not be damaged by application of the transients described in 2.1.7.1 through 2.1.7.5.

8.8.5 Inputs

Type 138–141 Frames from a BIU shall report logic **0** bits for **False** (24V) inputs, and shall report logic **1** bits for **True** (ground) inputs. Opto Inputs 1 through 4 shall report logic 0 bits when inactive, and shall report logic 1 bits when active.

BIU Response Frame frequency is discussed in 3.3.1.5. The states of the inputs reported by the BIU shall be the states of those inputs at the time the Positive Acknowledge Frame is prepared for sending.

Input signal recognition times allow more than 1 valid BIU input state between BIU input Response Frame. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

8.8.5.1 Opto Common

The **Opto Common** input is the common reference pin for four Optically Isolated Inputs.

8.8.5.2 Opto Inputs

The **Opto** inputs are intended to provide optical isolation for Pedestrian Detector and Remote Interconnect Inputs. The **Opto** inputs are intended to connect through external 27 K ohm, 1 Watt resistors for 120 VAC operation, and are intended for direct connection to 12 VAC from the cabinet power supply for Pedestrian Detector applications. These inputs may alternatively be used for low-true DC applications when the **Opto Common** pin is connected to the 24 volt supply. (Authorized Engineering Information.)

1. The **Opto** inputs shall provide electrical isolation of 10 megohms minimum resistance and 1000 VAC RMS minimum breakdown to all connector pins except the **Opto Common** pin.
2. These inputs shall exhibit a nominal impedance to the **Opto Common** pin of 5000 ohms $\pm$ 10%, and shall require 2.4 milliamperes $\pm$ 10% from a nominal 12 VAC supply.

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3. The **Opto** inputs shall not recognize 3 VAC RMS or less relative to the common input.
4. The **Opto** inputs shall recognize 6 VAC RMS or more relative to the common input.
5. Any steady state voltage applied between an **Opto** input and the **Opto Common** shall not exceed 35 VAC RMS.
6. **Opto** inputs shall not be acknowledged when active for 25 milliseconds or less, and shall be acknowledged when active for 50 milliseconds or more.
7. The **Opto** inputs to the BIU shall conform to 3.3.5.1.2 for voltage transient immunity.

8.8.5.3 Line Frequency Reference

The **Line Frequency Reference** input pin receives a square wave signal from the cabinet power supply for the purpose of synchronizing BIU outputs with the AC line.

Electrical characteristics for this input shall be as follows:

1. A voltage between 0 and 8 volts shall be considered the **Low** state, and shall occur when the AC line is in the positive half cycle.
2. A voltage between 16 and 26 volts shall be considered the **High** state, and shall occur when the AC line is in the negative half cycle.
3. The **Line Frequency Reference** input shall exhibit a nominal impedance of 10 K ohms $\pm$ 10% to the +24 VDC input, and shall not have more than 1000 picofarads of load capacitance.
4. The rise and fall time of the signal connected to this input shall not exceed 50 microseconds.

T&F BIUs shall exclude dimming operation when no transition occurs in the **Line Frequency Reference** input between Frame 18 transfers.

8.8.5.4 24 Volt Signal Inputs

The 24 Volt Signal Inputs to the BIU shall conform to 3.3.5.1.2 for Transient Immunity, and shall conform to 3.3.5.1.3 for electrical characteristics.

8.8.5.4.1 Address Select Inputs

The **Address Select** input bits define the logical position of each BIU. The pins are left open or floating for a logical **False**, and are connected to **Logic Ground** for a logical **True**. There shall be 16 unique address positions selected with a binary code, using bit 0 as least significant and bit 3 as most significant. Address bit connections are illustrated in Section 5, TF.

8.8.5.4.2 Function Inputs

When the **Address Select 3** input to the BIU is inactive, the BIU pins labeled Input (n) and Input/Output (n) shall provide input to the BIU from the TF as required in 5.3.1.2.

When the **Address Select 3** input to the BIU is active (activating Detector Mode), the Function Input timing shall accommodate Loop Detector Calls and channel status as follows:

1. A Detector Call signal dwelling in a defined logic state for less than 0.25 milliseconds shall not be recognized.
2. A Detector Call signal dwelling in a defined logic state for 1 millisecond or more shall be recognized.
3. Each Call input shall activate a time stamp feature within the BIU to enable accurate pulse width measurement. Details on this time stamp may be found in 3.3.1.4.2.f.
4. Detector Channel Status shall be derived from pulse width modulation encoding. These shall conform to the eight status states as outlined in 6.5.2.26.3.
5. The BIU shall have sufficient buffering to accumulate multiple states of Detector Channel Status between the once-per-second polls. Channel Status pulse width sequences already in process at the

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

time of Type 152–155 Frames shall not be missed or truncated due to asynchronous polling, but shall be sent in the next poll.

8.8.5.5 Data Receive Input (RX) for BIU Type BIU2

The data receive input, RX, shall have an input impedance 3 Kohm to 7 Kohm and an input capacitance less than 250 picofarads. This input impedance shall terminate to DC common. The input's open circuit voltage shall be less than 0.9 VDC. This input shall be functional when voltages over the range of ±25 VDC are applied to it. The Transition Region is any voltage between a Mark and a Space.

8.8.5.5.1 Mark State (Binary 1)

During Mark, the RX input shall recognize as a Mark voltages less than 0.9 VDC.

8.8.5.5.2 Space State (Binary 0)

During Space, the RX input shall recognize as a Space voltages greater than 3.0 VDC.

8.8.5.5.3 Transient Withstand

The RX input shall not be damaged by application of the transients described in 2.1.7.1 through 2.1.7.5.

8.8.5.6 +24 VDC Input

The **+24 VDC** input connects to the cabinet power supply 24 volt output to the BIU.

8.8.5.7 Earth Ground

The **Earth Ground** input connects only to exposed electrically conductive panels or covers on the BIU. This input connects to **Earth Ground** in the TF, and shall not connect to **Logic Ground** within the BIU.

8.8.5.8 Logic Ground

This pin supplies the current return path to the power supply and all 24 volt inputs and outputs, and shall not connect to **Earth Ground** within the BIU.

--`,,```-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

© NEMA

Copyright National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Provided by IHS under license with NEMA
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale